

The GFDL-CM4X climate model hierarchy, Part II: case studies

Stephen M Griffies¹, Alistair Adcroft², Rebecca Lynn Beadling³, Mitchell Bushuk⁴, Chiung-Yin Chang², Henri Francois Drake⁵, Raphael Dussin⁶, Robert W. Hallberg⁷, William Hurlin⁸, Hemant Khatri⁹, John P Krasting¹⁰, Matthew Lobo², Graeme MacGilchrist¹¹, Brandon G Reich¹, Aakash Sane², Olga V. Sergienko¹², Maike Sonnewald¹³, Jacob M. Steinberg¹⁰, Jan-Erik Tesdal², Matthew D Thomas¹⁴, Katherine Elise Turner¹⁵, Marshall L Ward¹⁶, Michael Winton⁴, Niki Zadeh⁸, Laure Zanna¹⁷, Rong Zhang⁴, Wenda Zhang², and Ming Zhao⁴

¹NOAA Geophysical Fluid Dynamics Laboratory

²Princeton University

³Temple University

⁴GFDL/NOAA

⁵University of California Irvine

⁶National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration

⁷NOAA/Geophysical Fluid Dynamics Laboratory

⁸NOAA/GFDL

⁹University of Liverpool

¹⁰Geophysical Fluid Dynamics Laboratory

¹¹University of St Andrews

¹²AOS, Princeton University/GFDL

¹³University of California, Davis

¹⁴Centre for Environment, Fisheries and Aquaculture Science

¹⁵University of Arizona

¹⁶Australian National University

¹⁷New York University

November 28, 2024

Abstract

This paper is Part II of a two-part paper that documents the CM4X (Climate Model version 4X) hierarchy of coupled climate models developed at the Geophysical Fluid Dynamics Laboratory (GFDL). Part I of this paper is presented in [\citeA{CM4X-partI}](#). Here we present a suite of case studies that examine ocean and sea ice features that are targeted for further research, which include sea level, eastern boundary upwelling, Arctic and Southern Ocean sea ice, Southern Ocean circulation, and North Atlantic circulation. The case studies are based on experiments that follow the protocol of version 6 from the Coupled Model Intercomparison Project (CMIP6). The analysis reveals a systematic improvement in the simulation fidelity of CM4X relative to its CM4.0 predecessor, as well as an improvement when refining the ocean/sea ice horizontal grid spacing from the 0.25° of CM4X-p25 to the 0.125° of CM4X-p125. Even so, there remain many outstanding biases, thus pointing to the need for further grid refinements, enhancements to numerical methods, and/or advances in parameterizations, each of which target long-standing model biases and limitations.

The GFDL-CM4X climate model hierarchy, Part II: case studies

Stephen M. Griffies^{1,2}, Alistair Adcroft², Rebecca L. Beadling³, Mitchell Bushuk¹, Chiung-Yin Chang², Henri F. Drake⁴, Raphael Dussin¹, Robert W. Hallberg^{1,2}, William J. Hurlin¹, Hemant Khatri⁵, John P. Krasting¹, Matthew Lobo², Graeme A. MacGilchrist⁶, Brandon G. Reichl¹, Aakash Sane², Olga Sergienko², Maike Sonnewald⁷, Jacob M. Steinberg¹, Jan-Erik Tesdal², Matthew Thomas⁸, Katherine E. Turner², Marshall L. Ward¹, Michael Winton¹, Niki Zadeh¹, Laure Zanna⁹, Rong Zhang^{1,2}, Wenda Zhang², Ming Zhao¹

¹NOAA Geophysical Fluid Dynamics Laboratory, Princeton, USA

²Princeton University Atmospheric and Oceanic Sciences Program, Princeton, USA

³Department of Earth and Environmental Science, Temple University, Philadelphia, USA

⁴Department of Earth System Science, University of California, Irvine, USA

⁵Department of Earth, Ocean and Ecological Sciences, University of Liverpool, UK

⁶School of Earth and Environmental Sciences, University of St. Andrews, UK

⁷Computer Science Department, University of California, Davis, USA

⁸Centre for Environment Fisheries and Aquaculture Science, Suffolk, UK

⁹Courant Institute of Mathematical Sciences, New York University, New York, USA

November 23, 2024

Key Points:

- We present case studies of selected features of the GFDL-CM4X climate model from CMIP6 piControl, historical, and SSP5-8.5 simulations.
- Case studies include sea level, eastern boundary upwelling, sea ice, Southern Ocean circulation, and North Atlantic Ocean circulation.
- Refining ocean grid spacing from 0.25° to 0.125° has systematic improvements across a number of climate relevant features.

Corresponding author: Stephen Griffies, Stephen.M.Griffies@gmail.com

28 **Abstract**

29 This paper is Part II of a two-part paper that documents the CM4X (Climate Model
 30 version 4X) hierarchy of coupled climate models developed at the Geophysical Fluid Dy-
 31 namics Laboratory (GFDL). Part I of this paper is presented in Griffies et al. (2024).
 32 Here we present a suite of case studies that examine ocean and sea ice features that are
 33 targeted for further research, which include sea level, eastern boundary upwelling, Arc-
 34 tic and Southern Ocean sea ice, Southern Ocean circulation, and North Atlantic circula-
 35 tion. The case studies are based on experiments that follow the protocol of version 6
 36 from the Coupled Model Intercomparison Project (CMIP6). The analysis reveals a sys-
 37 tematic improvement in the simulation fidelity of CM4X relative to its CM4.0 predeces-
 38 sor, as well as an improvement when refining the ocean/sea ice horizontal grid spacing
 39 from the 0.25° of CM4X-p25 to the 0.125° of CM4X-p125. Even so, there remain many
 40 outstanding biases, thus pointing to the need for further grid refinements, enhancements
 41 to numerical methods, and/or advances in parameterizations, each of which target long-
 42 standing model biases and limitations.

43 **Plain Language Summary**

44 We examine simulations from a new climate model hierarchy, referred to as CM4X
 45 (Climate Model version 4X). The finer grid component of the hierarchy, CM4X-p125,
 46 outshines its coarser sibling, CM4X-p25, for certain processes of interest for climate stud-
 47 ies, though in others the results are not dramatically distinct. Each case study reveals
 48 the advances made by moving from the predecessor CM4.0 climate model to finer grid
 49 spacing in either the atmosphere or ocean. Even so, there remain many unresolved prob-
 50 lems that help to guide further research and development goals and strategies.

51 **1 Introduction and content of this paper**

52 This paper is Part II of a two-part paper that documents the CM4X hierarchy of
 53 coupled climate models, with Part I presented in Griffies et al. (2024). We developed
 54 CM4X to support research into the ocean and sea ice components of the earth climate
 55 system, with CM4X comprised of two coupled climate models, CM4X-p25 and CM4X-
 56 p125. These two models are identically configured, except for their ocean (and sea ice)
 57 horizontal grid spacing and bottom topography. In Part I from Griffies et al. (2024), we
 58 documented the remarkable thermal equilibration properties of CM4X-p125, and pro-
 59 posed the *mesoscale dominance hypothesis* to help explain the behavior. In the present
 60 paper, we work through a suite of case studies that focus on areas of planned research
 61 with CM4X.

62 As detailed in Section 3.1 of Griffies et al. (2024), we present results from follow-
 63 ing CMIP6 (Eyring et al., 2016) simulations.

- 64 • piControl: Pre-industrial control with radiative forcing fixed at year 1850. This
 65 experiment illustrates how the models drift from their initial conditions, taken from
 66 the early 21st century, and approach thermal equilibrium under pre-industrial forc-
 67 ing.
- 68 • Historical: 01January of year 101 from the piControl is used to initialize a histor-
 69 ical simulation that is run from 1850 to 2014. In this historical simulation, we did
 70 not account for temporal evolution in vegetation, land use, or CO2 fertilization.
- 71 • SSP5-8.5: 01January of year 2015 provides the initial condition for the CMIP6 SSP5-
 72 8.5 scenario experiment, which allows us to study how the CM4X models simu-
 73 late climate change through to 2100.

74 The case studies exemplify aspects of the science going into the model and the science
 75 emerging from the model simulations. The presentation generally follows a “show and
 76 tell” approach given that our primary aim in this paper is to document features of the
 77 new CM4X hierarchy, with many of these features to be more thoroughly examined in
 78 future studies.

79 We begin in Section 2 with a study of the global thermosteric sea level along with
 80 statistical patterns of dynamic sea level. This analysis reveals that the historical ther-
 81 mosteric sea level in the CM4X models is somewhat improved relative to CM4.0, and
 82 yet the patterns of sea level skewness in CM4.0 and CM4X remain in poor agreement
 83 in comparison to ocean reanalysis. In Section 3 we examine properties of the eastern bound-
 84 ary upwelling zones, which are regions of particular importance for biogeochemistry. Here
 85 we find an advance arises from the refined atmospheric model grid used in CM4X rel-
 86 ative to CM4.0 (see Section A1 of Griffies et al. (2024)), thus improving the fidelity of
 87 coastal wind patterns key to upwelling. Even so, long-standing biases in the low level
 88 clouds means that the upwelling zones remain far too warm relative to observations. Sec-
 89 tion 4 studies the Arctic Ocean and Southern Ocean sea ice properties, revealing again
 90 that the CM4X model represents an advance over the CM4.0 model, though with many
 91 longstanding biases remaining.

92 In Section 5 we study properties of the Southern Ocean simulation, with some fo-
 93 cus on the region near Antarctica given its importance to ongoing studies of ice shelf melt.
 94 A particularly encouraging feature of both CM4X-p25 and CM4X-p125 concerns the ab-
 95 sence of the unphysically large open ocean polynyas that plagued CM4.0 (Held et al.,
 96 2019) and its earth system model cousin ESM4.1 (Dunne et al., 2020). As a result, CM4X
 97 provides a versatile tool for performing perturbation experiments to examine, say, the
 98 role of fresh water melt around Antarctica such as in Beadling et al. (2022) and Tesdal
 99 et al. (2023), including examining the role of the ocean in the SST pattern effect (Armour
 100 et al., 2013; Andrews et al., 2018). We complete the case studies in Section 6 with a fo-
 101 cus on the North Atlantic circulation, considering both horizontal and overturning cir-
 102 culation features in the middle and high latitudes. The CM4X simulations show some
 103 advances over CM4.0 in the overturning and supolar gyre properties, and yet there re-
 104 main nontrivial biases in the overturning depth and attendant overflows (model is too
 105 shallow), as well as biases in the Gulf Stream structure (simulated jet does not penetrate
 106 far enough from the coast). We close the paper in Section 7 with concluding remarks on
 107 strategies for future ocean climate model development that are motivated by results from
 108 the CM4X model hierarchy.

109 2 Thermosteric and dynamic sea level

110 In this section we consider two aspects of sea level: global mean thermosteric sea
 111 level and patterns of dynamic sea level.

112 2.1 Global mean thermosteric sea level

113 Changes to global mean thermosteric sea level occur with seawater density changes
 114 affected by temperature changes. Although seawater density is a highly nonlinear func-
 115 tion of temperature, salinity, and pressure, we expect the time series for thermosteric sea
 116 level to reflect that for global mean temperature, with Figure 1 supporting this expec-
 117 tation. To generate this figure, we computed thermosteric sea level according to Section
 118 H9.5 of Griffies et al. (2016) (CMIP variable *zostoga*), using software described in Krasting
 119 et al. (2024) and with full-depth monthly mean fields. Notably, the CM4.0 piControl drift
 120 is larger than CM4X-p25, whereas there is negligible drift in CM4X-p125.

121 Figure 1 suggests that differences between CM4X-p25 and CM4X-p125 are mostly
 122 due to the difference in drift seen in the piControl runs. Removing a linear trend com-

ACRONYM	MEANING	CITATION OR SECTION
AM4	GFDL Atmospheric Model 4.0	Zhao et al. (2018b, 2018a)
CM2-O	GFDL climate model hierarchy 2.0	Delworth et al. (2006), Griffies et al. (2015)
C96	AM4 with cubed-sphere (≈ 100 km)	Zhao et al. (2018b, 2018a)
C192	AM4 with cubed-sphere (≈ 50 km) in CM4X	Zhao (2020)
CMIP6	Coupled Model Intercomparison Project 6	Eyring et al. (2016)
CM4.0	GFDL Climate Model 4.0 (0.25° ocn & C96 atm)	Held et al. (2019)
CM4X	GFDL Climate Model hierarchy	this paper
CM4X-p25	CM4X w/ 0.25° ocn and C192 atm	this paper
CM4X-p125	CM4X with 0.125° ocn and C192 atm	this paper
CM4X-p25-C96	CM4X with 0.25° ocn and C96 atm	3
ESM4.1	GFDL Earth System Model 4.1	Dunne et al. (2020)
GFDL	Geophysical Fluid Dynamics Laboratory	–
MOM6	Modular Ocean Model version 6	Adcroft et al. (2019), Griffies et al. (2020)
NWA12	NorthWest Atlantic 1/12° model	6.1 and Ross et al. (2023)
OM4.0	GFDL Ocean/Sea-ice Model 4.0 (0.25°)	Adcroft et al. (2019)
SIS2	Sea Ice Simulator version 2	Delworth et al. (2006), Adcroft et al. (2019)
AABW	Antarctic Bottom Water	5
AAIW	Antarctic Intermediate Water	5
ACC	Antarctic Circumpolar Current	5
AIS	Antarctic Ice Shelf	5
AMOC	Atlantic Meridional Overturning Circulation	6
ASC	Antarctic Slope Current	5
CDW	Circumpolar Deep Water	5
EBUS	eastern boundary upwelling system	3
DSW	Dense Shelf Water	5
NADW	North Atlantic Deep Water	6
MKE	mean kinetic energy	6.1
MLD	mixed layer depth	6
OSNAP	Overturning in the North Atlantic Subpolar Program	6
RAPID	Rapid Climate Change Programme	6
RMSE	root-mean-square error	4
SAMW	Sub-Antarctic Mode Water	5
SIC	Sea Ice Concentration	4
SIE	Sea Ice Extent	4
SIT	Sea Ice Thickness	4
SIV	Sea Ice Volume	4
WMT	watermass transformation	5.2 and 6.4

Table 1. Acronyms used in this paper, their meaning, and relevant citation or section. The upper portion refers to model related acronyms and the lower portion to oceanographic and statistical related acronyms.

123 puted from the piControl leads to very similar global thermal expansion in the histor-
 124 ical and SSP5-8.5 simulations (Figure 2). Evidently, the nonlinear effects noted by Hallberg
 125 et al. (2013) are not revealed by these two simulations, presumably since their piCon-
 126 trol states have not drifted too far apart after 100 years.

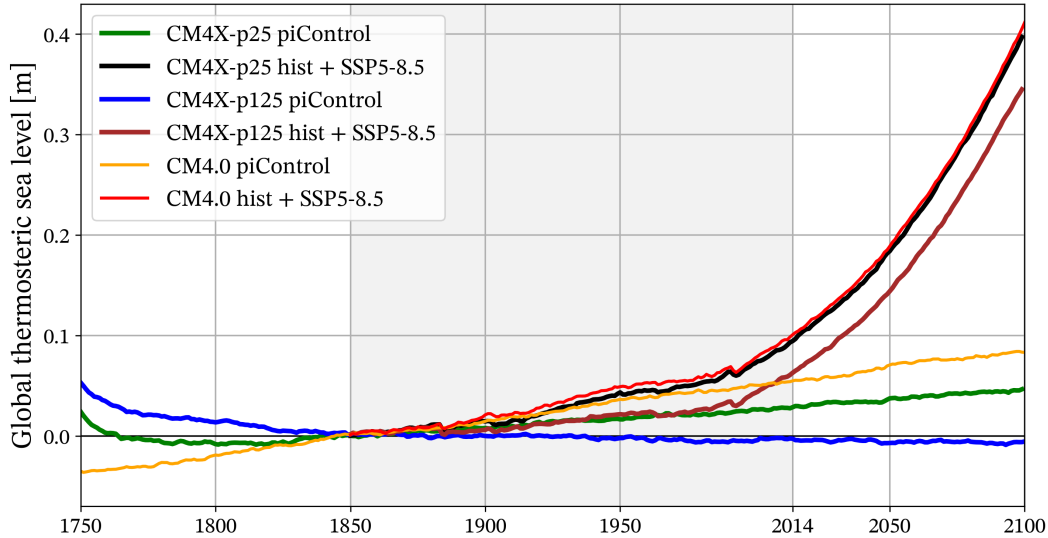


Figure 1. Global thermosteric sea level in piControl, historical (1850-2014), and SSP5-8.5 (2014-2100) simulations using CM4X and CM4.0 climate models. Historical simulations for CM4X-p25 and CM4X-p125 branch from the corresponding piControl at year 101, whereas CM4.0 is branched from its piControl at year 251. This different branching explains why the CM4.0 piControl does not line up with the CM4X piControls. Furthermore, CM4.0’s later branching means that its initial cooling phase seen in Part I (Griffies et al., 2024) is outside of the time range of this figure, so that the CM4.0 piControl exhibits a nearly linear drift throughout.

127 During the 20th and early 21st centuries, the observed global-mean sea level ex-
 128 hibited significant increases, with thermosteric rise becoming increasingly significant in
 129 recent decades (Frederikse et al., 2020). Figure 2 shows changes relative to the year 2002-
 130 2018 time mean, plotted over the historical simulations (from year 1850 through 2014)
 131 and eight years of the SSP5-8.5 projection (years 2015 to 2022). We accounted for model
 132 drift by removing the long term linear trend in the corresponding piControl run from
 133 each historical + SSP5-8.5 time series. We also compare model results to multiple ob-
 134 servation based analyses.

135 In Figure 2 we see that CM4.0 shows a nearly flat thermosteric sea level during 1940–1990,
 136 with similar behavior found for many other CMIP6 models discussed by Jevrejeva et al.
 137 (2021). In contrast, the CM4X simulations better align with the thermosteric sea level
 138 rise found by the observations during this period. Recent decades have seen an upward
 139 acceleration of thermosteric sea level rise (Dangendorf et al., 2019), with the CM4.0 and
 140 CM4X simulations also showing an acceleration. However, the models appear to over-
 141 estimate the observational trend since 1990, indicative of the large transient climate sen-
 142 sitivity found in CM4.0 (Winton et al., 2020). We qualify this point by noting the mod-
 143 els are mostly within the observational product uncertainty ranges, and further updates
 144 of Ishii et al. (2017), including data up to 2022, diverge from the other observations and
 145 align more closely with the models.

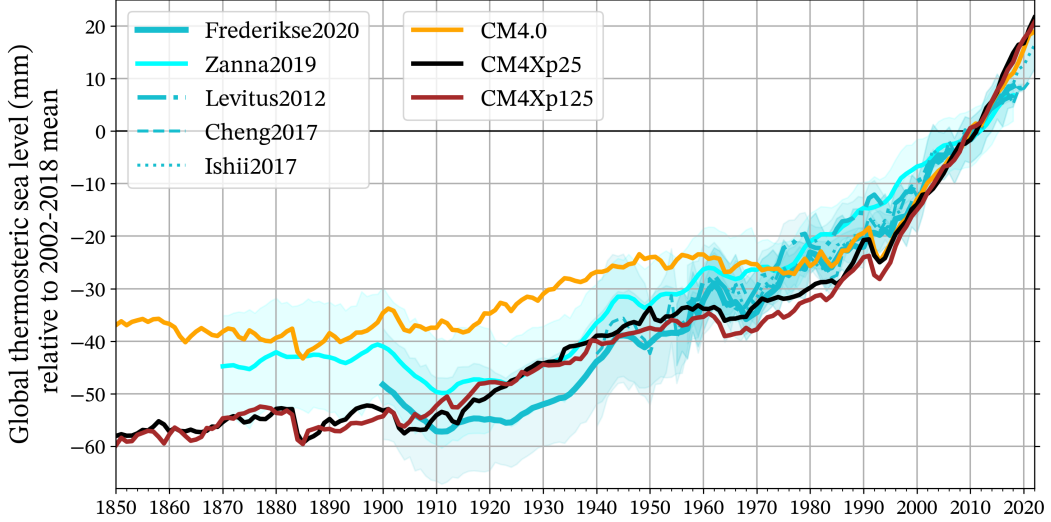


Figure 2. Historical and projected thermosteric sea level derived from CM4.0 and CM4X simulations, along with observational estimates. Models are plotted over the entire historical period (1850-2014), including years 2015-2022 from the SSP5-8.5 projections. Observational estimates are depicted by cyan-shaded lines with dark-solid (Frederikse et al., 2020), light-solid (Zanna et al., 2019), dash-dotted (Levitus et al., 2012), dashed (Cheng et al., 2017) and dotted (Ishii et al., 2017). The global mean thermosteric sea level estimates by Levitus et al. (2012), Cheng et al. (2017) and Ishii et al. (2017) do not include the deep ocean contribution (below 2000 meters). Note that the thermosteric sea level time series for CM4.0 and CM4X were detrended by subtracting the long-term linear trend in the piControl from the combined historical and SSP5-8.5 scenario time series. The linear trend was derived from a linear fit over the time period of the piControl run, matching the branch-off year and duration of the historical and SSP5-8.5 scenario simulations (250 years).

146

2.2 Statistical measures of dynamic sea level fluctuations

147

148

149

150

151

152

We consider statistical properties of the daily mean dynamic sea level (zos as in Griffies et al. (2016)), thus allowing for a quantitative characterization of spatial structure of sea level fluctuations. In particular, we focus on the standard deviation and skewness computed over the 20-year segment 1995-2014 of the historical simulation. In fact, the standard deviation was already presented in Figure 3 of Part I (Griffies et al., 2024) as part of our discussion of mesoscale eddy activity. Here we present the skewness.

153

154

155

To compute the statistics, we generate a 20-year climatology of the daily mean dynamic sea level over the historical period 1995-2014, denoted by $\overline{\text{zos}}$. We then compute anomalies relative to the climatology

156

$$\text{zos}'(t_n) = \text{zos}(t_n) - \overline{\text{zos}}(t_{\text{mod}(n,365)}), \quad (1)$$

157

158

159

where t_n is the day within the $N = 20 * 365$ total number of days, and $t_{\text{mod}(n,365)}$ is the climatological day. The standard deviation and skewness, computed at each horizontal ocean grid cell, are given by

160

$$s = \left[\frac{1}{N} \sum_{n=1}^N [\text{zos}'(t_n)]^2 \right]^{1/2} \quad \text{and} \quad \mathcal{S} = \frac{\sum_{n=1}^N [\text{zos}'(t_n)]^3}{N s^3}. \quad (2)$$

161 The sea level standard deviation has dimensions of length whereas skewness is dimen-
 162 sionless. We compare results from CM4X-p25 and CM4X-p125, and include the 1/12°
 163 GLORYS12 analysis from Lellouche et al. (2021) as a benchmark.

164 **2.3 Skewness**

165 Skewness is a third-order statistic that quantifies the asymmetry of a distribution.
 166 A positive skewness means that fluctuations are biased positive relative to a Gaussian
 167 distribution, and vice versa for negative skewness. K. R. Thompson and Demirov (2006)
 168 and Hughes et al. (2010) noted that sea level skewness is positive on the poleward side
 169 of strong eastward currents (e.g., Gulf Stream, Kuroshio) and negative on the equator-
 170 ward side, so that strong currents are generally aligned with the zero contour.

171 As seen in Figure 3, CM4X-p25 contains no clear zero skewness signature of the
 172 Gulf Stream jet, contrary to that found in GLORYS12. CM4X-p125 shows some hint
 173 of a zero skewness contour, but far less coherent than in GLORYS12. The Kuroshio Cur-
 174 rent in CM4X-p25 is also poorly revealed by the CM4X-p25 skewness, whereas the skew-
 175 ness in CM4X-p125 resembles GLORYS12 though with a muted signature. The Agul-
 176 has region in the CM4X simulations suffers from the complement bias found in the west-
 177 ern boundary currents. Namely, Agulhas eddies in the CM4X simulations remain some-
 178 what more coherent than found in GLORYS12, thus producing a nontrivial positive skew-
 179 ness signature reaching into the central portion of the South Atlantic, with this signa-
 180 ture in the models far larger than found in GLORYS12.

181 As noted by K. R. Thompson and Demirov (2006), tropical sea level skewness is
 182 dominated by large patterns associated with variability such as the El Niño-Southern
 183 Oscillation and Indian Ocean variability. The CM4X models generally show a muted trop-
 184 ical variability relative to GLORYS12, which is consistent with a muted tropical sea sur-
 185 face temperature variability as revealed by the power spectra in Figure 10 of Part I (Griffies
 186 et al., 2024). Correspondingly, the positive skewness in GLORYS12 extending along the
 187 coasts of North and South America is missing in both CM4X-p25 and CM4X-p125.

188 **2.4 Conclusions regarding sea level**

189 Figure 2 shows that both CM4X simulations reduce thermosteric sea level biases
 190 found in CM4.0, and yet that result is possibly due to simplifications of the land model
 191 as detailed in Section 2.4 and Appendix A of Part I (Griffies et al., 2024). The patterns
 192 for dynamic sea level standard deviation (Figure 3 in Part I) and skewness expose non-
 193 trivial biases in the middle latitude boundary currents. These biases are reduced with
 194 CM4X-p125 relative to CM4X-p25, and yet they suggest a need for either improved par-
 195 ameterizations or, as emphasized by Chassignet and Xu (2017), substantially finer grid
 196 spacing. We find a highly muted CM4X tropical variability as revealed by the sea level
 197 skewness, thus revealing how sea level skewness complements the sea surface tempera-
 198 ture power spectra shown in Figure 10 of Part I (Griffies et al., 2024), which also shows
 199 muted tropical sea surface temperature variability.

200 **3 Eastern boundary upwelling systems**

201 Eastern boundary upwelling systems (EBUS) are among the most biologically pro-
 202 ductive areas of the World Ocean (Strub et al., 2013). They are characterized by a sharp
 203 drop in the sea surface temperature near the coast, which results from upwelling of cooler
 204 interior waters through Ekman suction and lateral Ekman transport driven by equator-
 205 ward wind stresses. In Figure 4 we present summer SST taken from CM4X-p125. By
 206 showing the summertime season we clearly expose the cool upwelling waters in contrast
 207 to the warm surrounding waters. As summarized by Richter (2015), many climate mod-
 208 els exhibit large biases in the SST in eastern boundary regions due to both a lack of cloud

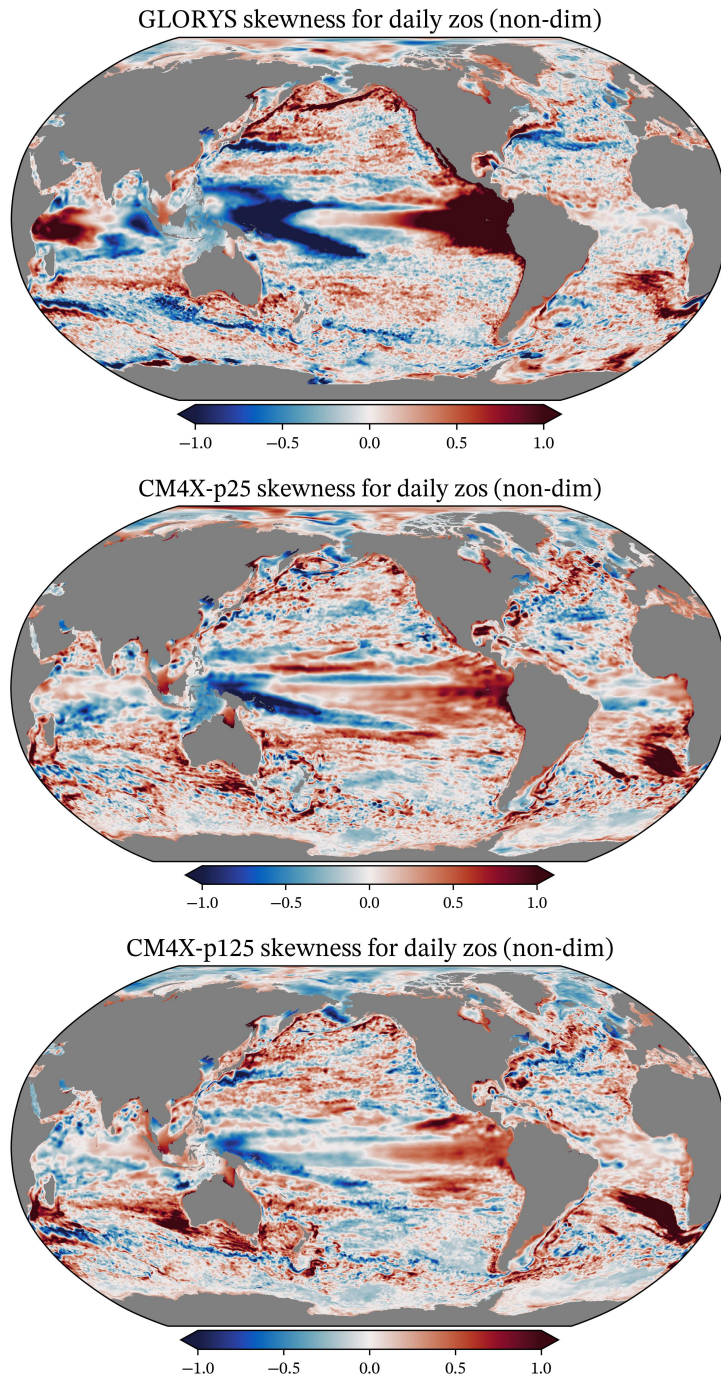


Figure 3. Skewness (non-dimensional) for the daily mean dynamic sea level from GLORYS12 (Lellouche et al., 2021) (top panel), and CM4X-p25 (middle panel) and CM4X-p125 (lower panel). Each figure is created from the deviation of the daily mean sea level relative to the climatological mean for that day of the year, as detailed in Section 2.2. Each climatology is created from years 1995-2014.

209 cover (in particular stratocumulus decks) and weaker than observed upwelling favorable
 210 winds (see also C. Wang et al. (2014)). The CM4X models are similarly lacking the ap-

211 appropriate cloud cover in EBUS. Compared to cloud cover estimates from Kaspar et al.
 212 (2009), both CM4X-p25 and CM4X-p125 have at best 20% less cloud cover over EBUS
 213 and as much as 40% less in regions in the Pacific systems, thus resulting in the warm
 214 SST biases presented in Figure 13 of Part I (Griffies et al., 2024). Gordon et al. (2000)
 215 shows that a more realistic marine stratocumulus significantly improves the annual cycle
 216 of SST and ocean dynamics in the tropics. Representation of upwelling favorable winds
 217 is the second source of SST biases in EBUS. In this section, we focus on improvements
 218 to SST biases from the 50 km atmosphere in CM4X models.

219 3.1 Modeling eastern boundary upwelling systems

220 Because of their importance to the marine-based economy, eastern boundary up-
 221 welling systems have been extensively studied with ocean and climate models. The im-
 222 pact of wind stress on upwelling characteristics is typically addressed in a regional con-
 223 text, such as the studies by Albert et al. (2010), Jacox and Edwards (2012), Junker et
 224 al. (2015), Small et al. (2015), and Sylla et al. (2022). Furthermore, sensitivity of up-
 225 welling regions to climate change is a topic of great interest, such as studied by Bakun
 226 et al. (2015), Rykaczewski et al. (2015), and Bograd et al. (2023). We here consider the
 227 representation of upwelling in the CM4X climate models during their historical simu-
 228 lations. We focus on the four upwelling systems shown in Figure 4: California and Peru
 229 in the Pacific and Canary and Benguela in the Atlantic.

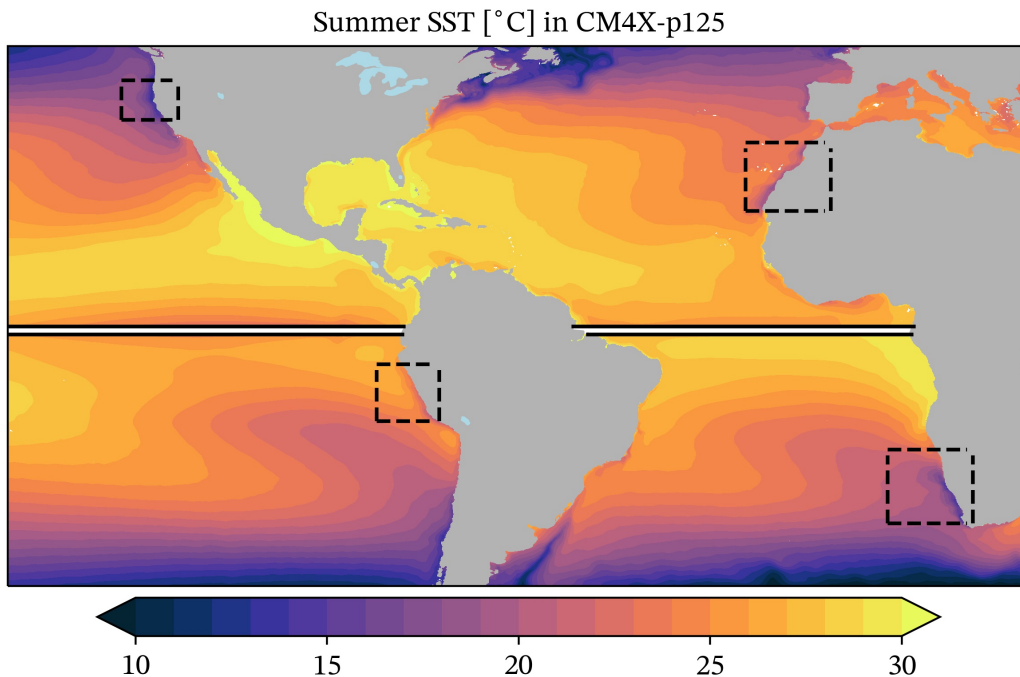


Figure 4. Sea surface temperature from CM4X-p125, during summer months (July-September in northern hemisphere, January-March in southern hemisphere) averaged over years 1980-2014. The boxes indicate the four eastern boundary upwelling systems considered in our analysis: California, Peru, Canary and Benguela. We place a white stripe at the equator since we map the summer months for both hemisphere, and so there is a jump at the equator.

230 Because of the fine spatial scales involved in coastal upwelling, both atmosphere
 231 and ocean models with relatively coarse grids are limited in their ability to capture the

232 relevant dynamical processes. Fine resolution is needed in the atmosphere to represent
 233 the coastal wind stresses and their curl, and fine resolution is needed in the ocean to re-
 234 alize upwelling localized near the coast. Varela et al. (2022) found that refined grid spac-
 235 ing allows many CMIP6 climate models to improve their simulation of coastal SST re-
 236 lative to earlier model classes. For example, the CM4.0 climate model captures the im-
 237 print of upwelling using its C96 atmosphere (approximately 100 km) and 0.25° ocean.
 238 Further refining the atmospheric grid to C192 (approximately 50 km) in CM4X leads
 239 us to the question of its impact on the upwelling systems, as does refinement of the ocean
 240 grid from CM4X-p25 to CM4X-p125. To help address these questions we include a com-
 241 panion experiment, CM4X-p25-C96, which uses the C96 atmosphere along with the same
 242 ocean model configuration as CM4X-p25.

243 **3.2 Winds and SSTs in the upwelling regions**

244 In Figure 5 we show the alongshore wind stress and wind stress curl as a function
 245 of the distance to the coast and as averaged over the four upwelling regions. The along-
 246 shore/equatorward wind stress remains stronger nearshore with the C192 atmosphere,
 247 with a drop confined to the inner 100 km from the coast instead of 150 km found in CM4X-
 248 p25-C96. This result holds for both CM4X-p25 and CM4X-p125, which is expected since
 249 the ocean grid spacing is not a leading order effect on the wind stress near the coast. The
 250 sharper wind drop near the coast found with the C192 atmosphere results in a greater
 251 wind stress curl in the nearshore region (within 50 km from the coast) and a decrease
 252 in the 50-100 km band. The CM4X experiments are compared with the SCOW estimates
 253 (Risien & Chelton, 2008) based on QuikSCAT satellite measurements. Except for the
 254 California system, modeled alongshore wind stresses are stronger than observed in the
 255 100-300 km band. In all regions, the modeled wind drop-off at the coast is steeper than
 256 in the SCOW estimates, resulting in a stronger wind stress curl at the coast.

257 The distinct alongshore wind and wind stress curl lead to differences in the result-
 258 ing SST profiles as averaged over the four eastern boundary regions (Figure 6). The CM4X
 259 results are typically biased warm offshore in the Pacific, whereas they are in better agree-
 260 ment in the Atlantic. The C192 atmosphere leads to an SST that drops faster in the 50-
 261 150 km band in all eastern boundary regions. This result has a favorable impact in the
 262 California system where it compensates for a warm offshore bias, and yet the SST gra-
 263 dient is stronger than observed. In the Peru system, the SST gradient is in good agree-
 264 ment with observations and leads to a much improved simulation using the C192 atmo-
 265 sphere. In the Benguela system, the SST drop at the coast is not present using the C96
 266 atmosphere, whereas the CM4X experiments using the C192 atmosphere are superior.
 267 Finally, the stronger SST gradient in the CM4X simulations with the C192 atmosphere
 268 overshoots the observed values in the Canary system, whereas this region is better cap-
 269 tured using the C96 atmosphere.

270 **3.3 Conclusions regarding eastern boundary upwelling**

271 Ekman mechanics accounts for two key processes important for the upwelling re-
 272 gions: the cross-shore Ekman transport is proportional to alongshore wind stress (Smith,
 273 1968) and Ekman suction is proportional to the wind stress curl (Enriquez & Friehe, 1995;
 274 Pickett & Paduan, 2003). As noted in Jacox and Edwards (2012), cross-shore Ekman
 275 transport dominates in a narrow coastal band (within 50 km of the coast), whereas Ek-
 276 man suction creates small but important upwelling velocities in a broader area extend-
 277 ing from outside the coastal band to 200-300 km offshore (Jacox & Edwards, 2012).

278 Results from the CM4X experiments suggest that reduction in wind stress curl in
 279 the 50-200 km band, and its intensification in the narrow nearshore area, favor a stronger
 280 cross-shore SST gradient. In the CM4X models using the C192 atmosphere, Ekman suc-
 281 tion is concentrated in the nearshore area at the deficit of the broader offshore region.

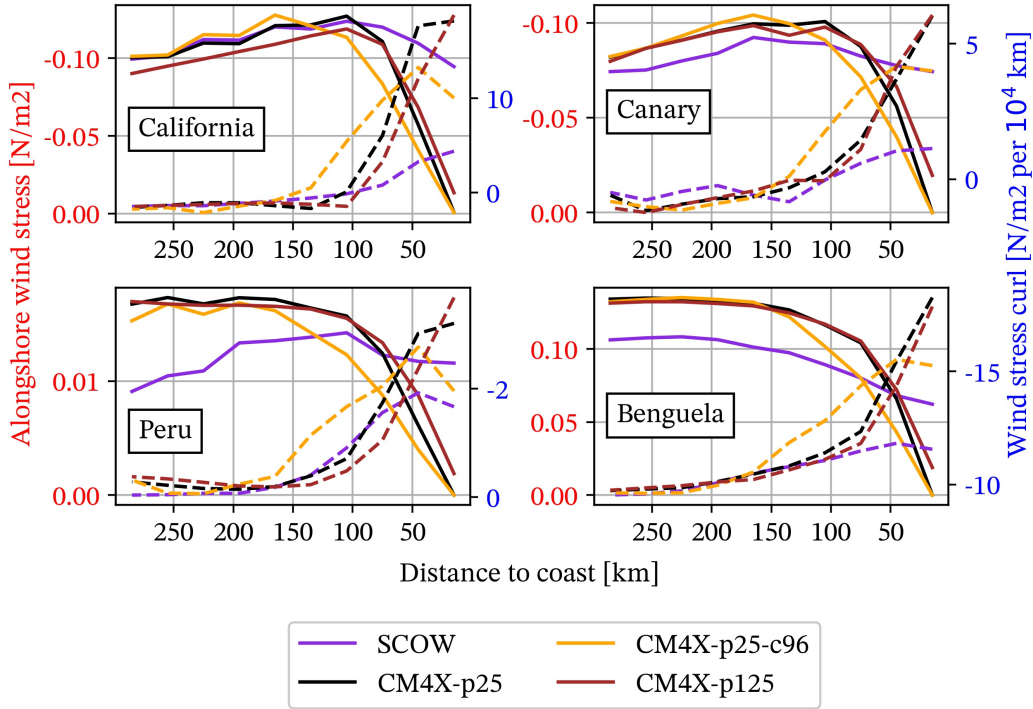


Figure 5. Alongshore wind stress (solid lines/red ticks) and wind stress curl (dashed lines/blue ticks) in the four major eastern boundary upwelling systems during the summer months of 1980-2014. For coastal upwelling at these latitudes, the β term (see equation (2) of Taboada et al. (2018)) is neglected. Gridded data is averaged over the boxes of Figure 4. Note the distinct vertical axes: signs can be reversed so that wind stress decreases at the coast and wind stress curl increases. CM4X-p25-c96 uses the C96 atmosphere model, whereas the other models use the C192 atmosphere. Satellite measurements from SCOW (Risien and Chelton (2008)) are added for reference although they cover a shorter time period (1999-2009). Note the distinct vertical axes on the panels.

282 The cross-shore Ekman transport with the C192 atmosphere remains strong closer to
 283 the coast than with the C96 atmosphere. This result suggests that strengthening of the
 284 Ekman transport part of the upwelling in the 50-150 km band, in conjunction with the
 285 concentration of the wind stress curl at the coast, favors the upwelling. These results are
 286 consistent with previous works from Gent et al. (2010) and Small et al. (2015) in which
 287 intensification of the coastal winds leads to stronger upwelling at the coast and overall
 288 reduction in SST bias.

289 The simulated cross-shore Ekman transport at the coast is weaker than the SCOW
 290 estimates but stronger offshore in all but the California system, with an intersect rang-
 291 ing from 50 to 100 km depending on the region and experiment considered. Since cross-
 292 shore Ekman transport is expected to dominate in the inner 50 km to the coast, this dom-
 293 inance should lead to decreased coastal upwelling, which contrasts to the CM4X SST gra-
 294 dients of Figure 6. In addition, the Ekman suction part of the upwelling is remarkably
 295 consistent with satellite estimates in the offshore part (distance > 100 km) with the C192
 296 atmosphere. The C96 atmosphere departs largely from these estimates in the 100-150 km
 297 band, which should lead to more Ekman suction upwelling velocities. Even so, we do not
 298 find this upwelling signal appears in the SST gradients. We suspect that the biases are

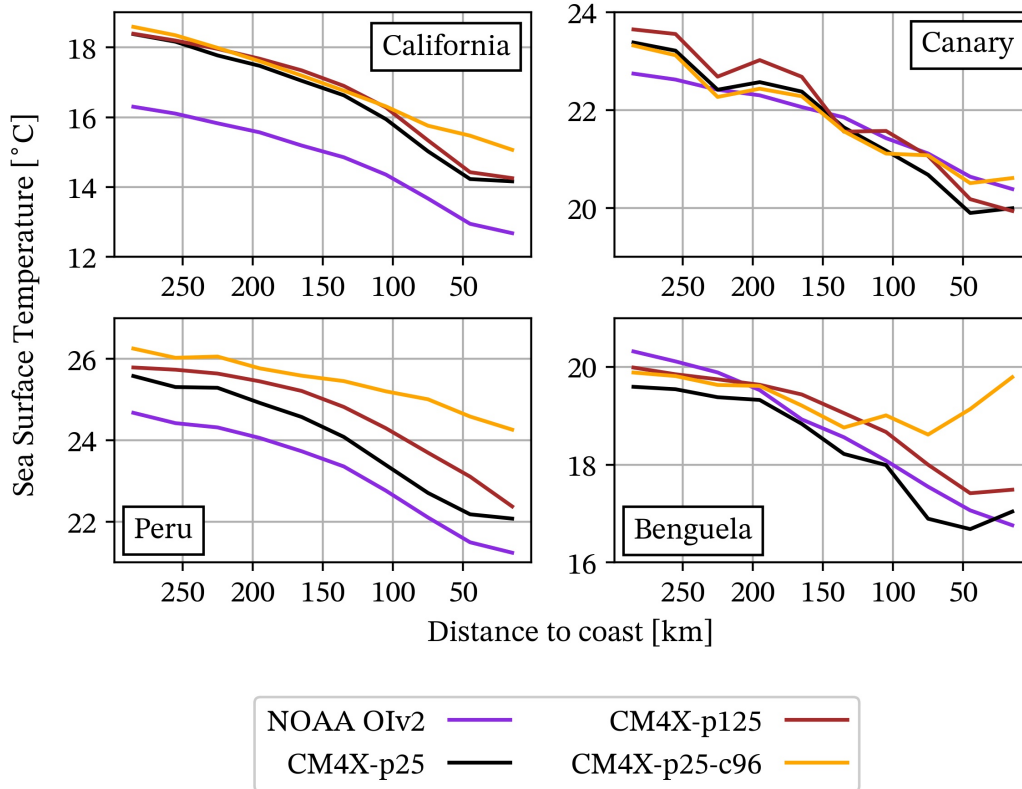


Figure 6. Sea surface temperature in the four major eastern boundary upwelling systems during the summer months of 1980-2014. Results are averaged over the boxes of Figure 4. We include the satellite estimate from NOAA OIv2 (Huang et al., 2020) over the period 1982-2014. Note the different temperature scales on the vertical axes.

299 modified only slightly due to the more dominant issues with atmospheric model’s biases
 300 in representing low level clouds in the eastern boundary upwelling regions, with these
 301 biases a well known feature of atmospheric models (e.g., Richter (2015); Ceppi et al. (2024))
 302 that remain a topic of ongoing research.

303 4 Sea ice in the Arctic Ocean and Southern Ocean

304 In this section, we analyze the simulated Arctic Ocean and Southern Ocean (“Antarc-
 305 tic”) sea ice within the CM4X model hierarchy, focusing on the historical and SSP5-8.5
 306 experiments. We also include results from CM4.0 as a point of comparison. To maxi-
 307 mize use of the most recent observations, which include record low sea ice conditions,
 308 we compute climatologies and trends over 1979-2023 (as opposed to 1979-2014, with 2014
 309 the end of the historical experiment). Doing so requires appending years 2015-2023 from
 310 the SSP5-8.5 scenario simulations to the historical simulations. We consider this addi-
 311 tional model forcing uncertainty worth the benefits of an additional nine years of obser-
 312 vational data.

313 4.1 Arctic Ocean sea ice

314 Figure 7a plots Pan-Arctic sea ice extent (SIE) climatologies computed over 1979–
 315 2023 across the model hierarchy. The seasonal cycle of Pan-Arctic SIE is well simulated

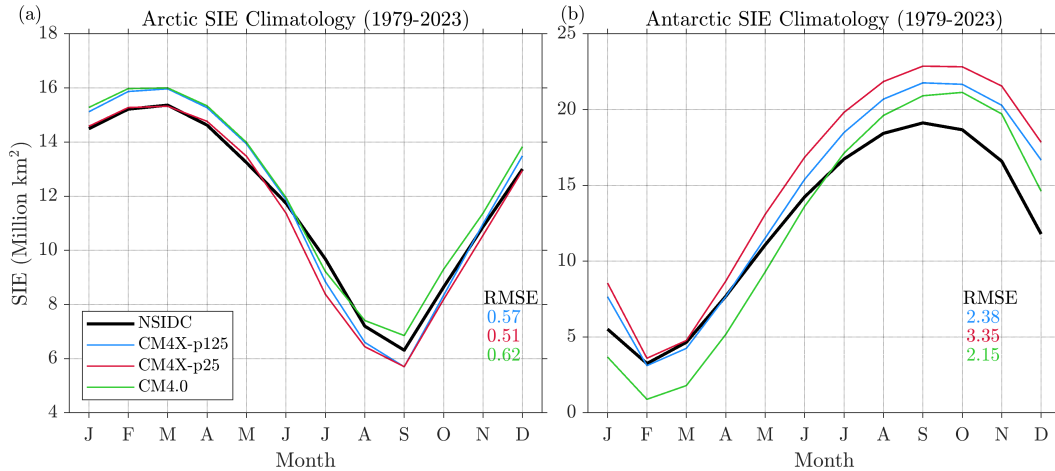


Figure 7. Pan-Arctic and Pan-Antarctic sea ice extent (SIE) climatologies (10^6 km^2) computed over the years 1979–2023 from satellite observations (black), CM4X-p125 (blue), CM4X-p25 (red), and CM4.0 (green). Pan-Arctic and Pan-Antarctic SIE are defined as the area integral of all grid cells covered by at least 15% sea ice concentration (SIC) in the northern and southern hemispheres, respectively. Root-mean-square error (RMSE) are computed between the simulated and observed seasonal cycles and shown in colored text. The observed SIE is computed using passive microwave satellite sea ice concentration observations from the NOAA/National Snow and Ice Data Center (NSIDC) Climate Data Record (CDR) of SIC, version 4 (Data Set ID: G02202; Meier et al. (2021)).

316 by both CM4X models and both models show improvements relative to the CM4.0 sim-
 317 ulation. The RMS errors of the Pan-Arctic SIE climatology are $0.57 \times 10^6 \text{ km}^2$ and $0.51 \times$
 318 10^6 km^2 in the CM4X-p125 and CM4X-p25 models, respectively, which are lower than
 319 the median CMIP5 model RMSE of $1.45 \times 10^6 \text{ km}^2$ (Shu et al., 2015) and the CM4.0
 320 RMSE of $0.62 \times 10^6 \text{ km}^2$. CM4X-p25 has Pan-Arctic SIE improvements in non-summer
 321 months relative to CM4.0, and has a negative summer bias which is similar in magni-
 322 tude to CM4.0’s positive summertime bias. CM4x-p125 is generally similar to CM4.0
 323 in winter and spring and similar to CM4X-p25 in summer and autumn months.

324 The climatological sea ice concentration (SIC) biases of the models are shown in
 325 Figure 8. The spatial pattern of winter Arctic SIC bias is similar across the models (top
 326 row in Figure 8), implying that the improved winter Pan-Arctic SIE simulation of CM4X-
 327 p25 primarily results from cancellation of positive and negative SIC errors. In winter months,
 328 the models have positive biases (too much ice coverage) in the Greenland-Iceland-Norwegian
 329 (GIN), Barents, and Bering Seas and negative biases in the Labrador Sea and the Sea
 330 of Okhotsk. These winter SIC biases closely mirror the patterns of SST bias (compare
 331 with Figure 14 from Part I of Griffies et al. (2024)). The notable positive SIC bias in
 332 the GIN and Barents Seas has been persistent across earlier generations of GFDL mod-
 333 els, such as CM2.1, ESM2M, ESM2G, and CM3 (Delworth et al., 2006; Dunne et al., 2012;
 334 Griffies et al., 2011), possibly related to a combination of too much poleward ocean heat
 335 transport and too much ice export through Fram Strait (see Figure 9). The finer grid
 336 spacing in CM4X-p125, with its enhanced mesoscale eddy activity, does not ameliorate
 337 this bias.

338 The CM4X models have similar patterns and magnitudes of summer SIC bias (sec-
 339 ond row of Figure 8), which differ from the SIC biases of CM4.0. The main improvement
 340 in CM4X is the reduced positive bias in the Beaufort, Chukchi, and East Siberian Seas.

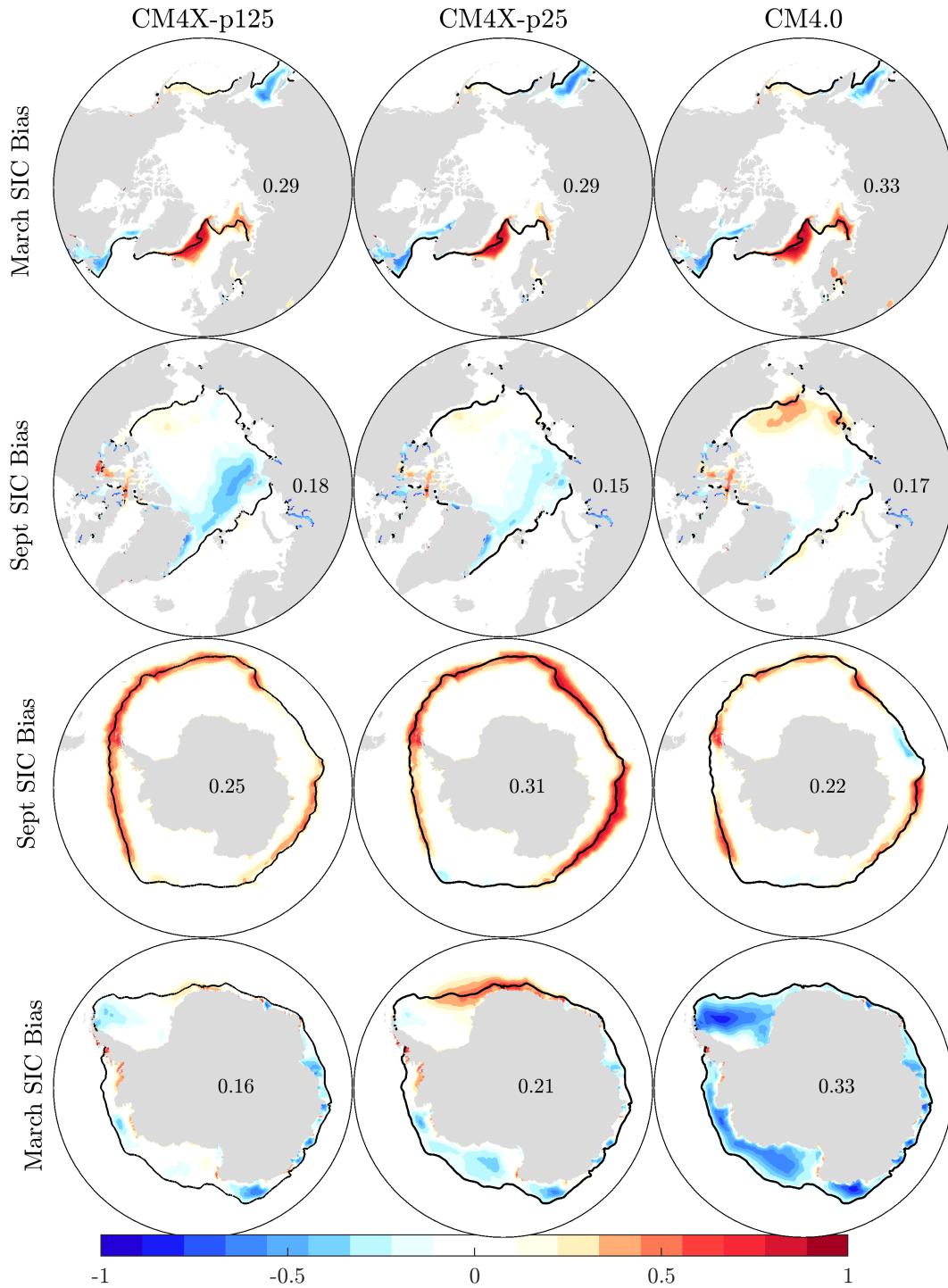


Figure 8. Arctic and Southern Ocean sea ice concentration (SIC) climatological biases (model minus NSIDC CDR observations) in March and September computed over 1979–2023. The black contours indicate the observed climatological sea ice edge position (15% SIC contour). Black text indicates the SIC RMSE area-averaged over the zone of SIC variability, defined as all grid points where the model or observed monthly SIC standard deviation exceeds 5%.

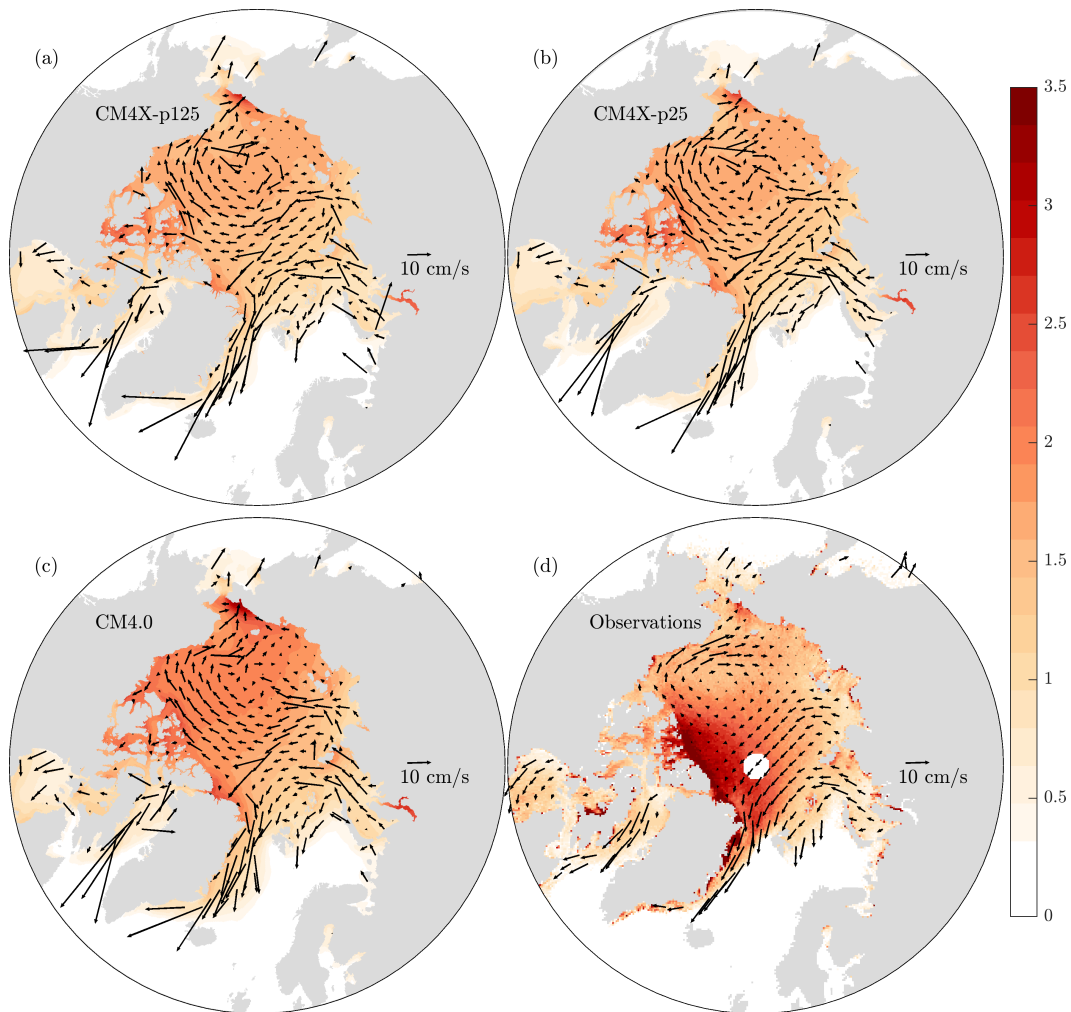


Figure 9. March Arctic sea ice thickness (SIT) climatologies (m; shading) and climatological DJFM sea ice drift (cm/s; vectors) in CM4X, CM4.0, and observations computed over the period 2011–2023. The SIT observations come from the Alfred-Wegener-Institute monthly SIT product (Ricker et al., 2014) and span 2011–2023. The sea ice drift observations are from the low-resolution daily sea ice drift product of the EUMETSAT Ocean and Sea Ice Satellite Application Facility (OSISAF) and span 2010–2023 (Lavergne et al., 2010).

341 This summer SIC bias in CM4.0 is associated with an erroneous pattern of winter sea
 342 ice thickness (SIT), which has the model’s thickest ice located in the Beaufort, Chukchi
 343 and East Siberian Seas rather than north of Greenland and Ellesmere Island as found
 344 in the observations (see Figures 9c,d). This anomalously thick winter ice in the Beaufort,
 345 Chukchi, and East Siberian Seas leads to delayed melt in these regions, resulting
 346 in a spatially coincident positive bias in summer SIC. We find that the CM4X models
 347 share a similar bias in SIT spatial pattern, however, their mean SIT is reduced, result-
 348 ing in lower summer SIC throughout most of the Arctic (Figures 9a,b). This thinner mean
 349 state also results in an exacerbated negative SIC bias in the Greenland Sea and along
 350 the northern boundaries of the Barents, Kara, and Laptev Seas, which is a degradation
 351 relative to CM4.0. One region that is unchanged is the Canadian Arctic Archipelago which
 352 has a consistent positive summer SIC bias across CM4.0, CM4X-p25, and CM4X-p125.

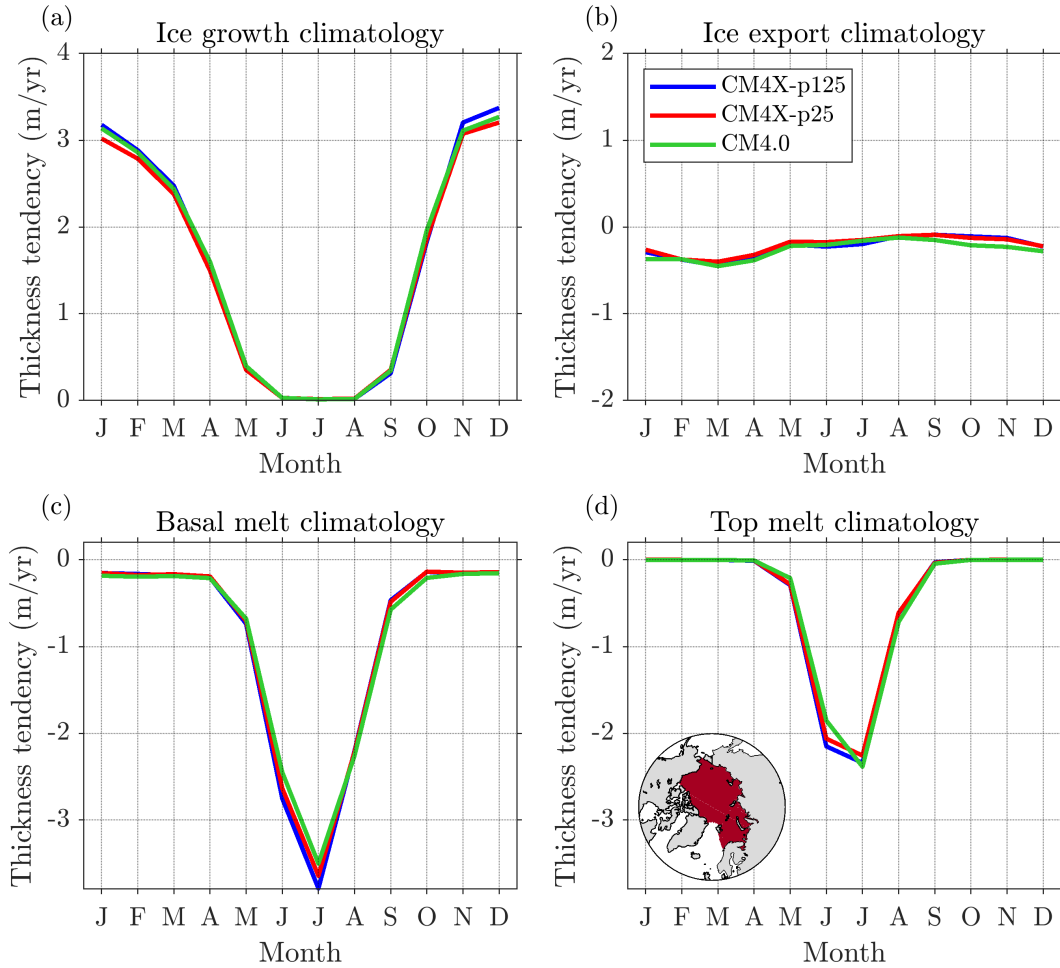


Figure 10. Arctic sea ice mass budget climatologies computed over the Central Arctic basin domain shown in panel (d) over the time period 1979–2023. The mass budget consists of sea ice thickness (SIT) tendency terms (m/yr) corresponding to congelation and frazil ice growth (a), mass transport convergence (b), basal melt (c), and top melt (d). Positive values correspond to mass gain and negative values correspond to mass loss. The y-axis range is the same across the panels, thus allowing for direct comparison of the various terms.

353 Figure 10 shows Arctic sea ice mass budget climatologies computed following the
 354 methodology of Keen et al. (2021), which averages mass budget terms over a Central Arc-
 355 tic domain (see inset of Figure 10d). This domain encompasses the region of thickest Arc-
 356 tic ice and its boundaries include all flux gates to the North Atlantic and North Pacific
 357 sectors. The sea ice mass budget consists of a dynamic tendency term associated with
 358 ice mass transport convergence (export) and thermodynamic tendency terms associated
 359 with congelation and frazil ice growth, basal melt, and top melt. All terms are defined
 360 such that positive values indicate mass gain and negative values indicate mass loss and
 361 are expressed as a thickness tendency in m/yr (note that the SIS2 model uses a constant
 362 sea ice density of 905 kg/m^3). The thinner Arctic ice in CM4X primarily results from
 363 increased summer basal and top melt relative to CM4.0. The CM4X models have less
 364 mass loss due to ice export in autumn. This reduced autumn ice export in CM4X is likely
 365 associated with the thinner and less extensive mean state in these models, as their ice
 366 drift patterns are similar to CM4.0 (see Fig. 9). CM4X-p125 has a similar SIT mean state

367 to CM4X-p25, but has more winter growth, potentially associated with enhanced ice for-
 368 mation in sea ice leads in this higher resolution model.

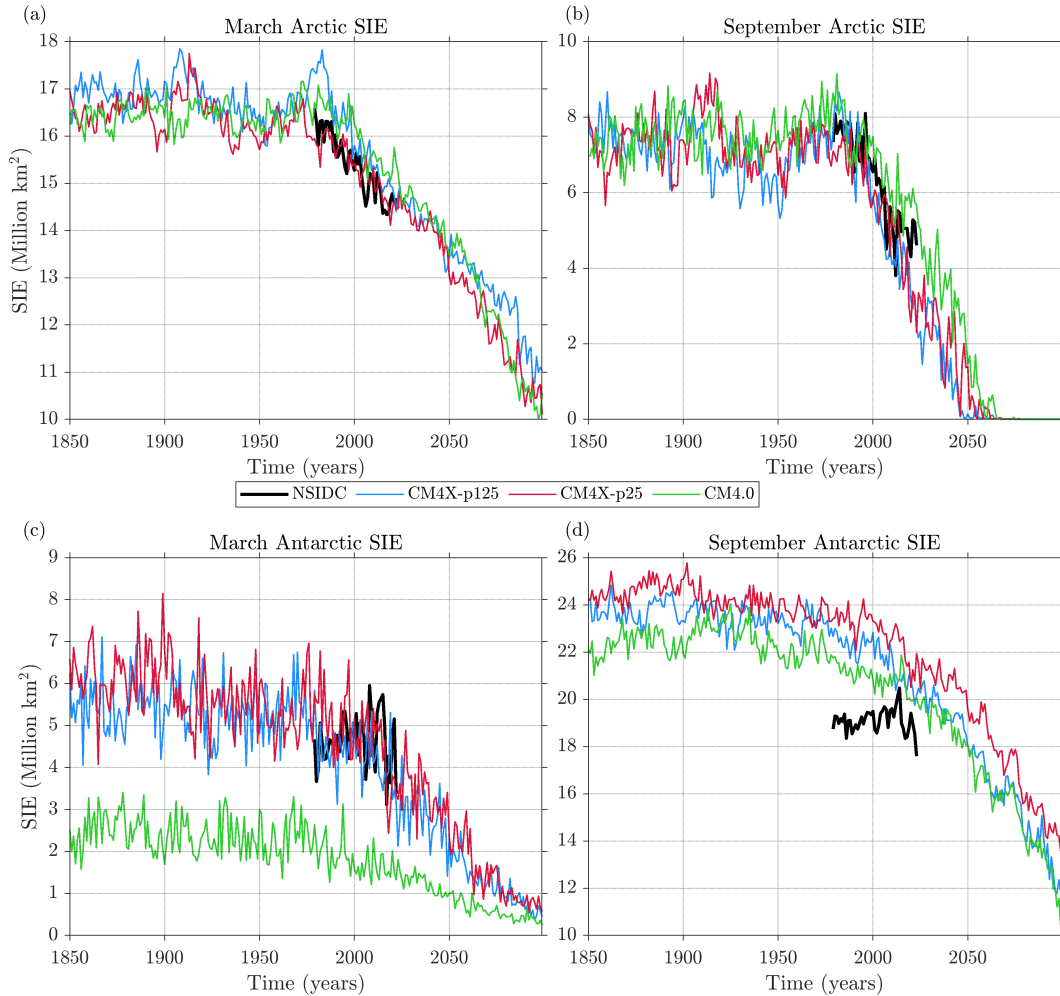


Figure 11. Time series of Arctic and Southern Ocean sea ice extent (SIE) in March and September in CM4X-p125 (blue), CM4X-p25 (red), CM4.0 (green), and NSIDC observations (black) in March and September. The simulations use CMIP6 Historical (1850–2014) and SSP5-8.5 forcings (2015–2099).

369 We next consider the time evolution of Arctic SIE and sea ice volume (SIV) in Fig-
 370 ures 11 and 12. Each model simulates SIE trends in March and September in reason-
 371 able quantitative agreement with the observed SIE decline. Given the large degree of in-
 372 ternal variability in Arctic SIE trends, we do not expect a perfect match between obser-
 373 vations and a single model realization (Jahn et al., 2016; DeRepentigny et al., 2020).
 374 The trend differences between the CM4X and CM4.0 historical simulations and obser-
 375 vations are smaller than the typical ranges estimated by single-model initial conditional
 376 large ensembles performed with other GCMs (Horvat, 2021), suggesting that the CM4X
 377 and CM4.0 models are not inconsistent with observed trends. There are some trend dif-
 378 ferences between the CM4X and CM4.0 models, but multi-member ensembles are nec-
 379 essary to determine if differences are statistically robust. CM4X and CM4.0 each sim-
 380 ulate substantial decadal-to-multidecadal variability over the 20th century. This low-frequency

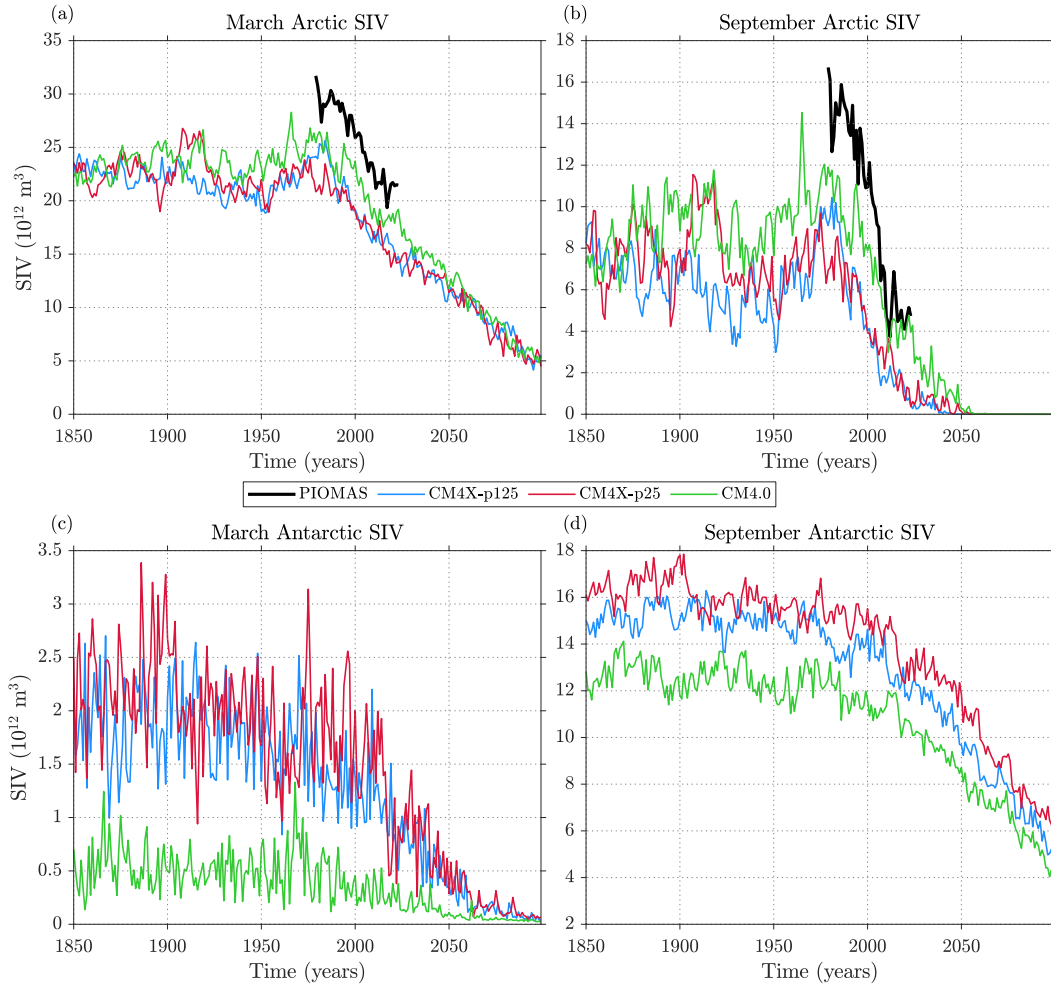


Figure 12. Time series of Arctic and Antarctic sea ice volume (SIV) in March and September in CM4X-p125 (blue), CM4X-p25 (red), CM4.0 (green), and PIOMAS sea ice thickness (SIT) reanalysis (black) in March and September. The simulations use CMIP6 Historical (1850–2014) and SSP5-8.5 forcings (2015–2099). The PIOMAS data spans 1979–2023 and is based on an assimilation system that incorporates SIC, SST, and atmospheric reanalysis constraints (J. Zhang & Rothrock, 2003).

381 variability becomes notably muted under the high-forcing SSP5-8.5 scenario used over
 382 the 21st century.

383 Figure 12 shows that the models are biased thin relative to the Pan-Arctic Ice Ocean
 384 Modeling and Assimilation System (PIOMAS; J. Zhang and Rothrock (2003)) SIT re-
 385 analysis, a product that has reasonably good agreement with available in situ, aircraft,
 386 and satellite observations of SIT (X. Wang et al., 2016; Landy et al., 2022). The CM4X
 387 models have a larger thin bias than CM4.0, but similar SIV timeseries to each other. This
 388 result suggest that the thinner ice in CM4X-p125 relative to CM4.0 is not the result of
 389 refined ocean grid spacing. The models simulate a strong decline of Arctic SIV in all months
 390 of the year (Figure 12). Despite their mean state SIV biases, the models simulate sim-
 391 ilar rates of historical SIV loss to PIOMAS.

392 Under the SSP5-8.5 forcing scenario, the models simulate a complete loss of summer
 393 Arctic SIE and SIV over the 21st century. The first ice-free summers occur in the
 394 years 2040, 2038, and 2052 in the CM4X-p125, CM4X-p25, and CM4.0 models, respec-
 395 tively (defined here as $SIE < 10^6 \text{ km}^2$). This ice-free timing is consistent with the ice-
 396 free range of 2015–2052 as estimated by selected CMIP6 models (SIMIP Community, 2020;
 397 Jahn et al., 2024). All three models also reach ice free conditions in the months of July–
 398 November by the year 2100 (not shown).

399 **4.2 Southern Ocean sea ice**

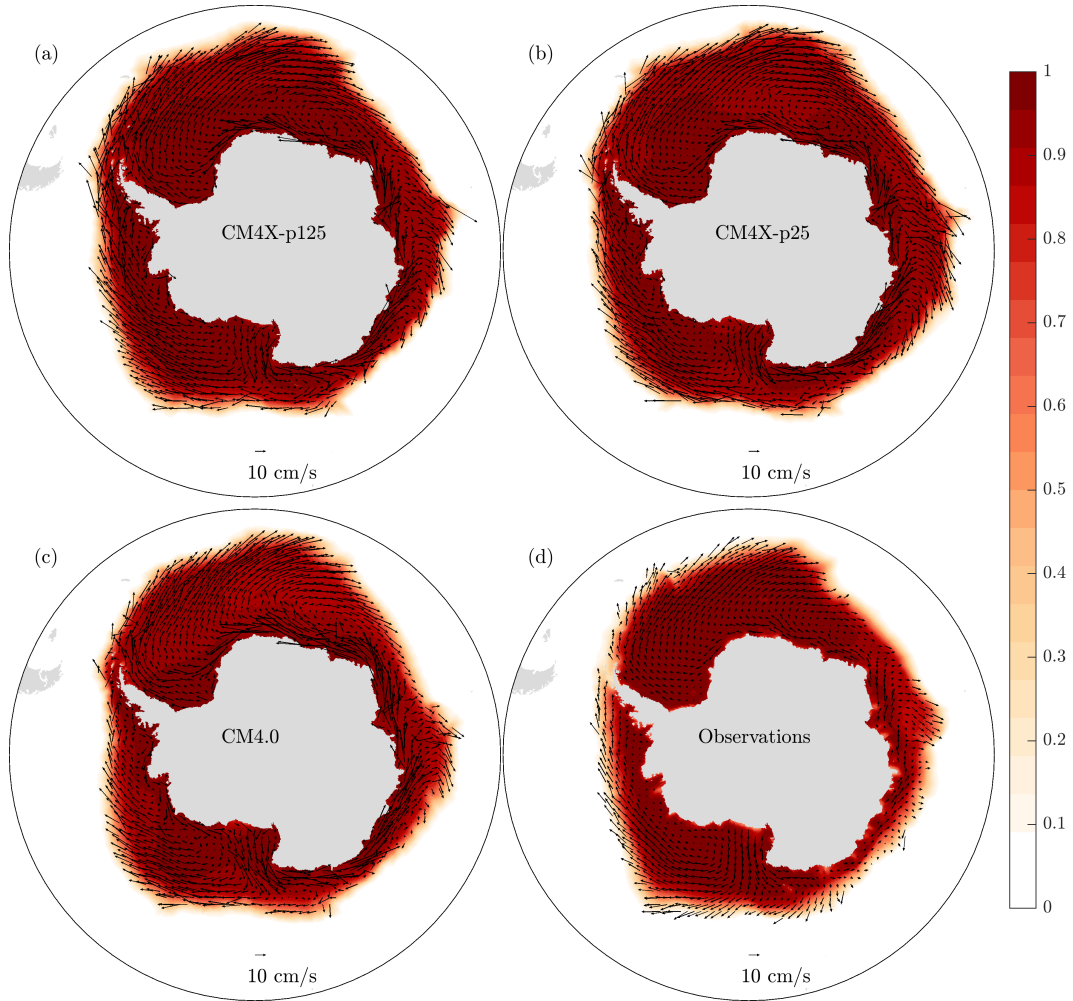


Figure 13. September Southern Ocean SIC climatologies (shading) and climatological JJAS sea ice drift (cm/s; vectors) in CM4X, CM4.0, and observations computed over the period 2011–2023. SIC and sea ice drift observations are from NSIDC and OSISF, respectively. Note that the OSISAF southern hemisphere drift observations span the period 2013–2023.

400 CM4.0, CM4X-p25, and CM4X-p125 each capture the asymmetric seasonal cycle
 401 of Southern Ocean SIE, with five months of ice retreat and seven months of ice advance
 402 (Figure 7b). Compared to the Arctic, the models’ SIE biases are generally larger in the
 403 Southern Ocean. CM4.0 has an exaggerated Southern Ocean SIE seasonal cycle with too
 404 little sea ice in austral summer and too much sea ice in austral winter. The CM4X mod-
 405 els have more extensive Southern Ocean sea ice than CM4.0 in all months of the year,

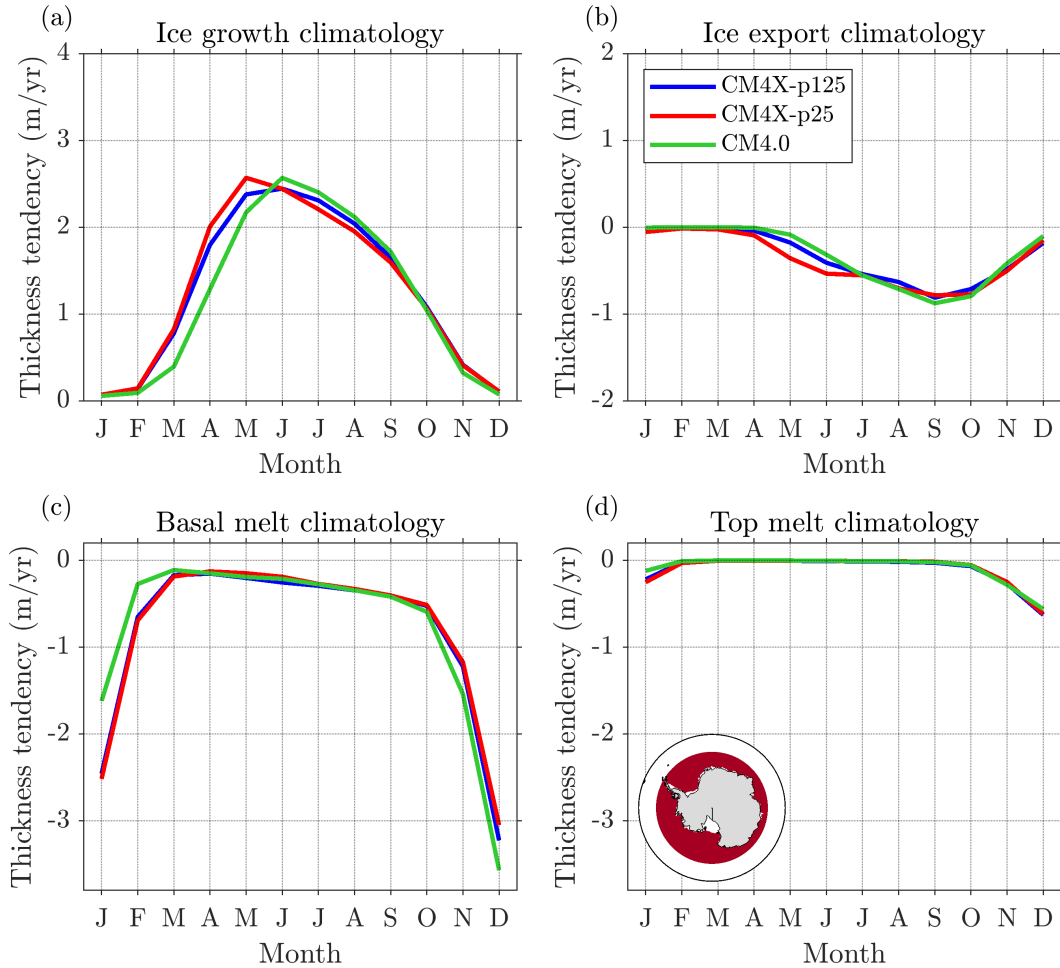


Figure 14. Southern Ocean sea ice mass budget climatologies computed over all gridpoints south of 63°S as shown in panel (d) over the period 1979–2023. The mass budget consists of SIT tendency terms (m/year) corresponding to congelation and frazil ice growth (a), mass transport convergence (b), basal melt (c), and top melt (d). Positive values correspond to mass gain and negative values correspond to mass loss. The y-axis range is the same across the panels, thus allowing for direct comparison of the various terms, and for comparing to the Arctic mass budget in Figure 10.

406 likely associated with the increased near-infrared land ice albedo values that were used
 407 in CM4X in order to promote Southern Ocean ventilation and production of AABW (see
 408 Appendix A4 in Part I (Griffies et al., 2024)). These higher albedos result in a cooler
 409 Southern Ocean surface climate with more sea ice than CM4.0. The increased sea ice
 410 coverage in CM4X improves upon the CM4.0 model biases in summer months yet ex-
 411 acerbates the winter sea ice biases. The RMS errors of the Pan-Antarctic SIE climatol-
 412 ogy are $2.38 \times 10^6 \text{ km}^2$, $3.35 \times 10^6 \text{ km}^2$, and $2.15 \times 10^6 \text{ km}^2$ in CM4X-p125, CM4X-
 413 p25, and CM4.0, respectively, which can be compared to the CMIP5 multi-model mean
 414 RMSE of $3.42 \times 10^6 \text{ km}^2$ (Shu et al., 2015). A low bias in summer Southern Ocean sea
 415 ice is a ubiquitous bias across CMIP5 and CMIP6 models (Roach et al., 2020), which
 416 the CM4X models ameliorate.

417 Figure 8 shows climatological Southern Ocean SIC biases. We find that the spatial
 418 pattern of summer SIC is well captured by the CM4X-p125 model, whereas CM4X-

419 p25 simulates too much sea ice in the Weddell Sea and too little in the Ross Sea (bot-
 420 tom row of Figure 8). All three models fail to simulate summer sea ice along the coast-
 421 lines of the Indian Ocean and West Pacific sectors, which are regions with substantial
 422 landfast sea ice coverage (Fraser et al., 2023). We note that this sea ice model does not
 423 include a landfast ice parameterization. The summer SIC RMSE values of both CM4X
 424 models are reduced relative to CM4.0, which has negative SIC biases throughout the sum-
 425 mer sea ice zone. All three models have positive winter SIC biases that are relatively cir-
 426 cumpolar, however the biases are progressively stronger in CM4.0, CM4X-p125, and CM4X-
 427 p25 (third row of Fig. 8). CM4.0 has negative SIC biases within the sea ice pack in the
 428 Weddell Sea near Maud Rise, suggestive of too much vertical mixing and a tendency to
 429 form open-ocean polynyas in this region. These negative SIC biases are not present in
 430 the CM4X models.

431 The climatological winter Southern Ocean sea ice drift is shown in Figure 13. The
 432 general patterns of observed Southern Ocean sea ice drift are well captured by the mod-
 433 els, with each model simulating northward sea ice export in the Weddell and Ross Seas,
 434 westward drift along the Antarctic coastal current, and strong eastward drift associated
 435 with the Antarctic circumpolar current. The models have drift speeds that are gener-
 436 ally too fast relative to observations. This bias may contribute to the models' positive
 437 biases in wintertime SIC, since stronger drift implies a greater northward export of sea
 438 ice. We also find that the drift speeds along the Antarctic coastal current are notably
 439 higher than observed, especially in the zone of landfast sea ice along the eastern Antarc-
 440 tic coastline. This overly mobile sea ice shows that the model is unable to simulate land-
 441 fast ice, and this potentially underpins the negative summer SIC biases in this region.

442 Figure 14 shows Southern Ocean sea ice mass budgets computed over the region
 443 south of 63°S (see inset of panel d). This region was chosen to encompass the primary
 444 zone of sea ice growth and melt while also capturing the dominant flux gates for sea ice
 445 export. Relative to CM4.0, the CM4X models show a clear shift in sea ice growth to ear-
 446 lier in the autumn season, consistent with the higher glacier albedos and cooler surface
 447 climate in CM4X (see Appendix A3 in Part I (Griffies et al., 2024)). The CM4X mod-
 448 els also have more total annual sea ice growth, forming approximately an additional 0.1m
 449 of sea ice each year. The CM4X models also have more sea ice export during the autumn
 450 months, likely associated with the enhanced sea ice growth and thicker sea ice produced
 451 over these months. The dominant melt contributions come from basal melt, with the CM4X
 452 models showing a later spring onset of basal melt compared to CM4.0, consistent with
 453 the higher albedo and cooler surface climate in these runs. We also note that, compared
 454 to the Arctic, Southern Ocean sea ice has larger basal melt contributions during win-
 455 ter months, which tend to increase as winter mixed layers deepen.

456 Figures 11c,d and Figures 12c,d show time evolution of Southern Ocean SIE and
 457 SIV, respectively. Roach et al. (2020) showed that nearly every CMIP6 model simulates
 458 a negative Southern Ocean SIE trend in both summer and winter, failing to capture the
 459 observed trends which are close to zero in these seasons. This behavior is also the case
 460 for the CM4X and CM4.0 models, which simulate declines of Southern Ocean SIE in all
 461 months of the year over the period 1979–2023. This mismatch in modeled and observed
 462 trends may have contributions from missing meltwater forcing from Antarctic ice sheet
 463 and ice shelf melt (Bronseleer et al., 2018; Schmidt et al., 2023), systematic coupled model
 464 errors (Purich et al., 2016; Kay et al., 2016; Rackow et al., 2022), and internal climate
 465 variability (Meehl et al., 2016; L. Zhang et al., 2019). The CM4X and CM4.0 models sim-
 466 ulate ice free Southern Ocean conditions (defined here as $SIE < 10^6 \text{ km}^2$) in January–
 467 March by the year 2100, with CM4.0 reaching ice free states much earlier than CM4X.
 468 CM4X-p125 and CM4X-p25 have their first ice-free February in years 2049 and 2050,
 469 respectively, whereas CM4.0 simulates an ice free February states intermittently through-
 470 out the 20th century.

471

4.3 Conclusions regarding the sea ice simulations

472

473

474

475

476

477

478

479

480

481

482

483

484

485

486

487

488

489

490

Both CM4X models provide credible simulations of the Pan-Arctic sea ice mean state and trends, however the models simulate notable regional SIC errors, which are likely a combination of sea ice model physics errors and coupled model errors that originate in the atmospheric and oceanic components. It is notable that the spatial pattern of SIC and SIT model errors are very similar across the $1/4^\circ$ and $1/8^\circ$ CM4X configurations, and closely resemble the error patterns of the GFDL-ESM4.1 (Dunne et al., 2020) and GFDL-SPEAR (Bushuk et al., 2022) models, which have nominal horizontal grid spacings of $1/2^\circ$ and 1° , respectively. This similarity suggests that sea ice model errors are relatively insensitive to horizontal grid spacing across the $1/8^\circ$ – 1° range. Models in this range are not eddy resolving in the Arctic Ocean basin and Subpolar seas (see Figure 1 from Part I (Griffies et al., 2024)), and it is possible that a clearer impact of fine horizontal grid spacing would emerge in models that are fully eddy resolving in the Arctic. These eddy-resolving grids represent scales below the formal length scale of validity for viscous-plastic sea ice rheologies (Feltham, 2008). Even so, recent work has shown that the viscous-plastic rheology can simulate good agreement with observed sea ice drift and deformation even with 1 km grid spacing (Hutter et al., 2018). Key Arctic sea ice priorities for future model development include improving the spatial pattern of SIT, improving the magnitude and pattern of sea ice drift, and improving the persistent positive SIC bias in the GIN and Barents Seas.

491

492

493

494

495

496

497

498

499

500

501

Compared to the Arctic, the CM4X models have larger errors for the Southern Ocean sea ice mean state and trends, which is also a generic property across most CMIP models (Shu et al., 2015). For Southern Ocean sea ice, there appears to be a modest benefit from refined ice-ocean grid spacing, as CM4X-p125 has slightly reduced biases relative to CM4X-p25. It is notable that CM4X ice-ocean resolution does not clearly influence historical Southern Ocean sea ice trends, as CM4X-p125 and CM4X-p25 have comparable SIE trends across all months of the year. Key Southern Ocean sea ice priorities for future model development include improving the significant positive biases in wintertime SIC, reducing sea ice drift speeds, adding a representation of landfast Antarctic sea ice, improving simulated summer SIC in East Antarctica, and improving the simulation of SIE trends across all seasons.

502

5 Southern Ocean

503

504

505

506

507

508

509

510

511

512

513

514

515

516

517

518

519

520

521

The Southern Ocean plays a dominant role in anthropogenic heat and carbon uptake (Frölicher et al., 2015; Roemmich et al., 2015; DeVries et al., 2019), thus the representation of physical processes in this region is critical for accurately simulating the transient climate response. The Southern Ocean is home to the strongest current on the planet, the Antarctic Circumpolar Current (ACC), which acts as the primary pathway for inter-basin exchange of physical and biogeochemical tracers. Intimately linked to the structure of the ACC, the Southern Ocean is also home to a meridional overturning circulation whose deep branch ventilates the densest waters in the World Ocean, namely the Antarctic Bottom Water (AABW), and whose intermediate branch plays a large role in the oceanic sequestration of anthropogenic heat and carbon (see Morrison et al. (2022) for a review of physical processes). Additionally, the waters on and just offshore of the Antarctic continental shelf in the subpolar Southern Ocean directly influence the mass balance of the Antarctic Ice Sheet and thus dynamics in this region exert a strong influence on global sea level rise (Paolo et al., 2015). Indeed, such concerns about sea level rise have placed a growing appreciation for the important role of Antarctic shelf processes in the global climate system. Recent work has emphasized the need for improved model representation of ocean dynamics near to and along the Antarctic shelf, including the Antarctic Slope Current (ASC) and Antarctic Coastal Current (ACoC) (A. F. Thompson et al., 2018; Moorman et al., 2020; Purich & England, 2021; Beadling et al., 2022).

Mesoscale eddies, as well as jets and boundary currents, play a central role in the dynamics of the ACC and ASC, the meridional overturning circulation, and shelf-ocean exchange (e.g., Goddard et al. (2017); Stewart et al. (2018, 2019)). Hence, this region provides strong motivation to refine ocean grid spacing for studying the role of the Southern Ocean in climate. Although the CM4X models remain too coarse to resolve many key processes on the shelf (e.g., see Figure 1 from Part I (Griffies et al., 2024)), they succeed in pushing the envelope of global climate models by offering a refined representation of flows on the shelf and slope (grid spacing is roughly 7 km at 70°S in CM4X-p125), thus offering a tool to probe the role of these currents on larger scale climate.

5.1 Features of the horizontal circulation

The ACC has been a topic of study with large-scale and fine resolution numerical models since the 1990s, following the pioneering efforts of the FRAM project (FRAM Group, 1991) and further pursued across a grid resolution hierarchy by Hallberg and Gnanadesikan (2006). These studies, and many more, have helped to establish the fundamental importance of the ACC for large scale climate dynamics (Rintoul et al. (2001); Rintoul and Naveira Garabato (2013); Rintoul (2018)). Despite this fundamental importance, many coupled climate models still struggle to accurately represent the mean-state ACC strength and structure (Beadling et al., 2020). For the CM4X models, the ACC is revealed by a strong eastward zonal flow comprised of multiple jet-like structures such as seen in Figures 4 and 5 of Part I (Griffies et al., 2024), as well as Figure 15 shown here. Many details of the stronger ACC flow patterns are similar between CM4X-p25 and CM4X-p125, reflecting the deep reaching nature of Southern Ocean currents that are affected by bottom topography and thus generally follow f/H contours (f is the Coriolis parameter and H is the bottom depth). We also commented on this feature of the Southern Ocean in Figure 5 from Griffies et al. (2024), where much of the kinetic energy in the Southern Ocean is dominated by the depth averaged velocity.

Moving south towards Antarctica, we encounter the westward flowing (ASC) along the continental slope. As reviewed by A. F. Thompson et al. (2018), the ASC is present in most regions around Antarctica, with the notable exception of the West Antarctic Peninsula and westward until reaching the Amundsen Sea.

Though transporting far less mass than the ACC, there is a growing appreciation for the impacts of the ASC on regional and global climate. In particular, as reviewed by Beadling (2023), the ASC acts as a barrier to meltwater originating from Antarctic ice shelves leaving the continental shelf, and conversely as a barrier to relatively warm Circumpolar Deep Waters penetrating towards the continental shelf from the north. As encountered in modeling studies such as Goddard et al. (2017); Moorman et al. (2020); Lockwood et al. (2021); Beadling et al. (2022); Tesdal et al. (2023), a realistically strong ASC introduces a fundamentally new dynamical regime into the Southern Ocean that is absent from coarse models (roughly those ocean models with horizontal grids coarser than 0.25°). Given the extremely small Rossby deformation radius along the Antarctic continental slope/shelf region (see Figure 1 from Part I (Griffies et al., 2024)), it is likely that global models will fail to accurately represent the full dynamical impacts of the ASC until reaching toward 1 km horizontal grid spacing.

In Figure 15 we display two meridional-depth sections, one through the Drake Passage and one south of Tasmania. Here we see the deep reaching eastward jet-like flows found in both sections, along with distinct westward flows. The westward flows are generally weaker and found particularly at depth and, for the Tasmanian section, we find the strong westward flowing ASC along the Antarctic continental slope. Note the rather weak flow in the Tasmanian section for latitudes between approximately 60°S and 55°S, with the upper flow weakly westward and deep flows very weak. The topography between these regions is rather fine scale, suggesting that this “rough” topography acts to weaken

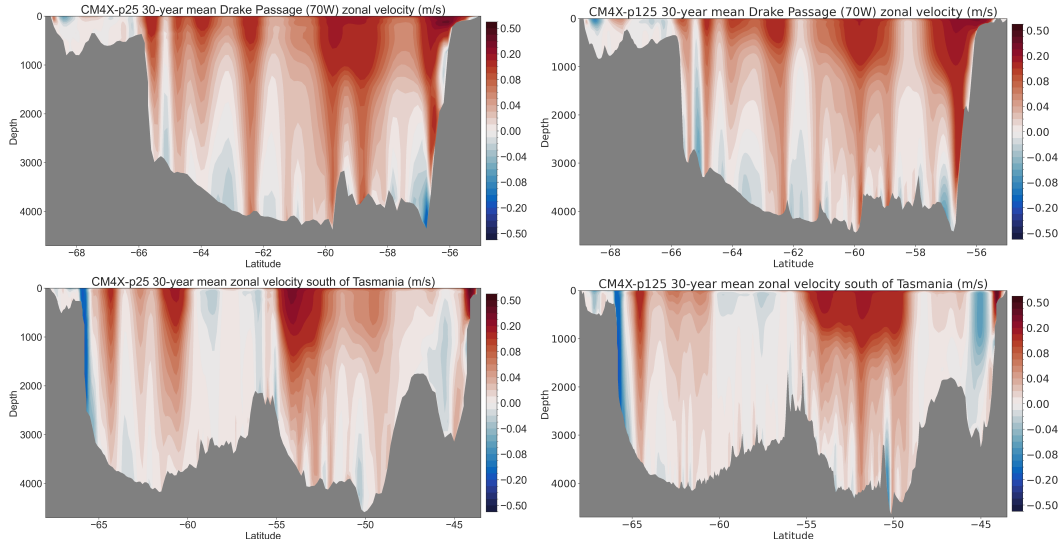


Figure 15. 30 year mean zonal velocity along a longitude within the Drake Passage (upper row) and south of Tasmania (lower row). Note the deep reaching zonal flows, with some deep reaching westward flows. Also note that strong and deep reaching westward flowing Antarctic Slope Current seen in the section south of Tasmania, whereas this current is largely absent in the Drake Passage section (see A. F. Thompson et al. (2018) for a review). The colorbars are the same for all panels, though the latitude range differs for the top row and bottom row.

573 the otherwise deep reaching flow. This feature of the flow over the rough topography may
 574 suggest a role for the rough bottom modes of LaCasce (2017). Even so, the horizontal
 575 flow does *not* generally vanish at the bottom, which contrasts to the assumptions of LaCasce
 576 (2017). Indeed, the Drake Passage section of CM4X-p125 is notable for its bottom en-
 577 hanced westward flows. It is notable that all eastward flows are surface intensified (equiv-
 578 alent barotropic), whereas some of the westward flows in the open ACC, and particu-
 579 larly in the Drake Passage section, are bottom intensified. The presence of deep west-
 580 ward jets in the vicinity of the ACC have been noted in previous observational studies
 581 and high resolution simulations (Xu et al., 2020).

582 In Figure 16 we show the Drake Passage transport, which provides a traditional
 583 measure summarizing the zonal flow in the ACC. CM4X-p25 is roughly 10-15 Sv stronger
 584 than CM4X-p125 throughout the historical simulation, with CM4X-p125 consistent with
 585 the CMIP6 ensemble mean whereas CM4X-p25 is consistent with the lower end of the
 586 observational based estimates. After roughly 100 years of spin-up, both piControl simu-
 587 lations exhibit multi-decadal fluctuations of roughly 10 Sv. For the historical simula-
 588 tion, CM4X-p125 shows a slight decrease whereas CM4X-p25 is roughly unchanged. Both
 589 models show a decline during the SSP5-8.5 until around year 2060, at which point the
 590 strength stabilizes (CM4X-p25) or begins to rebound (CM4X-p125).

591 5.2 Ventilation, watermass transformation, and overturning circulation

592 The CM4X mixed layer depths in Figure 9 from Part I (Griffies et al., 2024) re-
 593 veals a narrow band of deep mixing on the Antarctic continental shelf where dense shelf
 594 water (DSW) forms and then subsequently overflows down the continental slope, venti-
 595 lating the deep ocean and leading to the formation of AABW (Rintoul & Naveira Gara-
 596 bato, 2013; Rintoul, 2018). In Figure 17 we display bottom temperature and salinity on
 597 the Antarctic continental shelf, defined here as the region landward of the 1000-m iso-

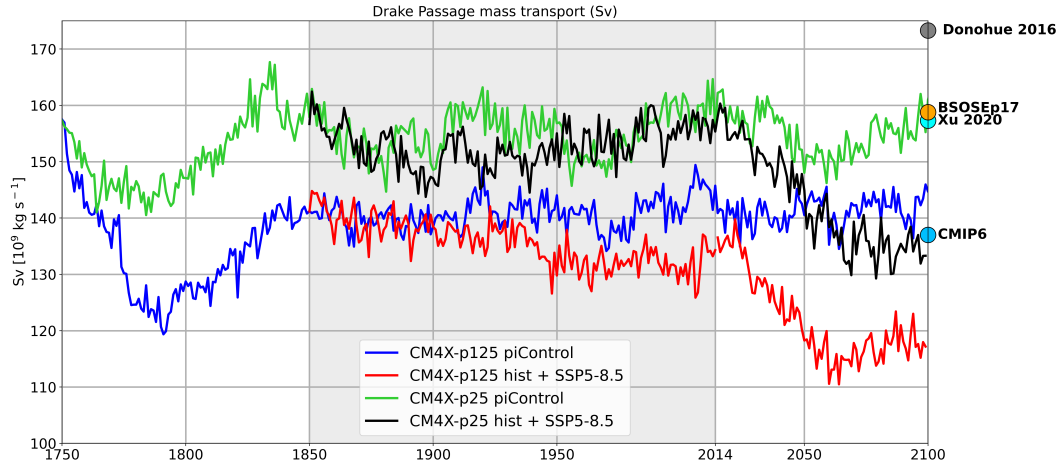


Figure 16. Time series of annual mean mass transport through the Drake Passage in units of Sverdrup (10^9 kg s^{-1}) for the CM4X simulations. The gray shaded region is the historical portion of the simulation. The colored markers on the right edge of the plot indicate the observed estimate of the total flow through the Drake Passage from the cDrake array from Donohue et al. (2016), based on an observation period of 2007 to 2011; the observationally-constrained Biogeochemical Southern Ocean State Estimate (Verdy & Mazloff, 2017) at 1/6-degree and integrated from 2013–2018; the 1/12th HYbrid Coordinate Ocean Model (Xu et al., 2020); and the CMIP6 Drake Passage transport ensemble mean of historical simulations averaged from 1986 to 2005 (Beadling et al., 2020).

598 bath. These shelf properties play a central role in determining the volume and forma-
 599 tion rate of DSW and influence the stability of ice shelves ringing the continent. Both
 600 CM4X-p25 and CM4X-p125 versions produce spatial distributions of bottom temper-
 601 ature and salinity qualitatively consistent with observations, yet with notable differences
 602 in magnitudes in specific regions. For bottom temperatures, both the CM4X models are
 603 more consistent with observations than that simulated by most models within the CMIP6
 604 ensemble, which exhibit significant biases (e.g., Figure S8 from Purich and England 2021).
 605 CM4X-p125 exhibits a warmer and slightly more saline West Antarctic shelf compared
 606 to CM4X-p25. The West Antarctic shelf regime is characterized as a “warm shelf” (Thomp-
 607 son et al., 2018) where upward sloping isopycnals and the lack of an ASC allows warm
 608 Circumpolar Deep Water (CDW) to readily access the shelf. The warmer West Antarc-
 609 tic bottom temperatures in CM4X-p125 are consistent with a slightly warmer mean-state
 610 off shore reservoir of CDW compared to CM4X-p25. CM4X-p125 also exhibits a much
 611 fresher East Antarctic shelf that could be related to its stronger ASC compared to CM4X-
 612 p25.

613 The spatial pattern of surface watermass transformation (WMT) across the dens-
 614 est waters confirm that both versions of CM4X simulate DSW formation and subsequent
 615 down slope flow in realistic locations along the Antarctic shelf (Jacobs, 2004; Silvano et
 616 al., 2023), highlighting the shelves around Weddell Sea, Prydz Bay, Adelie Land, and the
 617 Ross Sea (Figure 18). The red shading in Figures 18a,b shows the mean surface WMT
 618 per unit area across σ_2 (potential density referenced to 2000 dbar) classes for the period
 619 1975-2012, focusing on the densest water classes. Choosing the densest waters available
 620 in each region captures the spatial distribution of where DSW formation occurs that con-
 621 tributes to the formation of AABW. The bottom age distribution (green shading in Fig-
 622 ures 18a,b) illustrates the pathways of newly formed dense waters from the Antarctic
 623 slope to the abyssal ocean. These patterns align with the known AABW pathways iden-

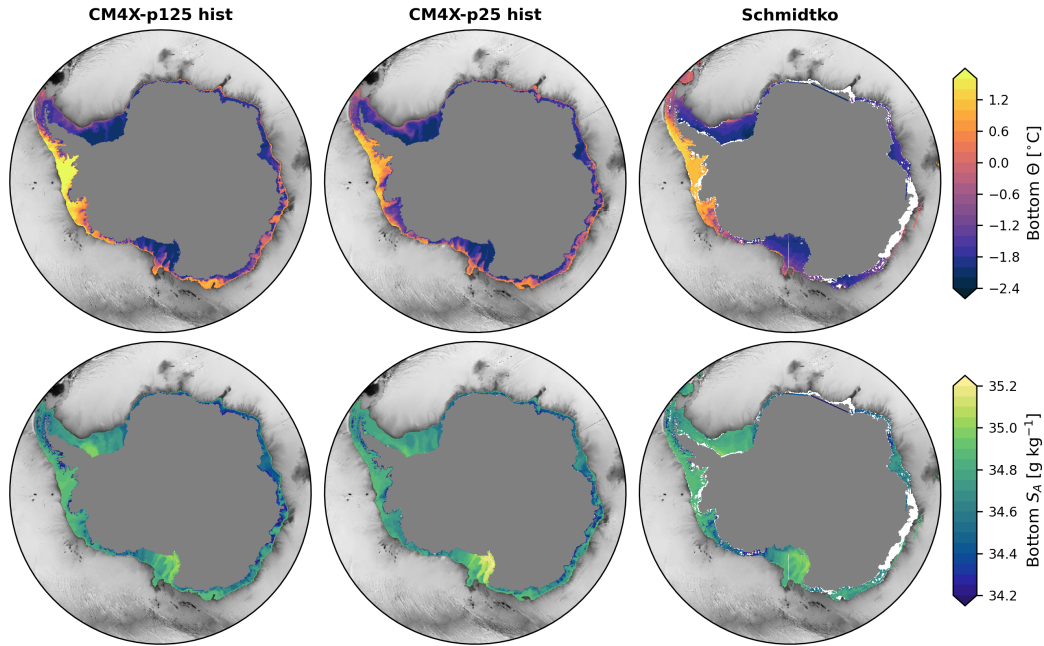


Figure 17. Temperature and salinity along the bottom of the Antarctic shelf from the CM4X models and as compared to the observational based analysis of Schmidtko et al. (2014). The fields are averages for the period 1975-2012, which is the time period used by Schmidtko et al. (2014). We define the shelf as the region with depth shallower than 1000 m.

624 tified from observational studies (e.g., Silvano et al. (2023)) and is consistent with pas-
 625 sive tracers studies using a reanalysis-forced model (Solodoch et al., 2022).

626 The total DSW formation over the Antarctic continental shelf, estimated as the
 627 maximum surface WMT, is approximately 5 Sv and occurs for $\sigma_2 > 37$, with CM4X-
 628 p25 exhibiting a slightly greater DSW formation compared to CM4X-p125 (Figure 18c).
 629 Furthermore, the surface WMT is shifted towards higher σ_2 by around 0.1 in CM4X-
 630 p25 compared to CM4X-p125, especially in the Ross Sea sector (dashed lines in Figure
 631 18c), which is consistent with the formation of higher salinity waters in this region (Fig-
 632 ure 17). The Ross Sea sector shows the highest WMT rates compared to other regions,
 633 while the Weddell Sea sector (dotted lines in Figure 18c) also exhibits significant WMT,
 634 in agreement with observational estimates identifying these two regions as the major sources
 635 of DSW and AABW (Silvano et al., 2023).

636 To interpret Figure 18c, it is important to note at what densities positive WMT
 637 occurs. Both the Ross and Weddell sections in Figure 18c represent the majority of the
 638 WMT in the range of $\sigma_2 > 37$. Adding these two together explains the bulk contribu-
 639 tion to dense water formation required for AABW. Other regions over the Antarctic shelf
 640 show positive WMT. However, these transformations occur at generally lighter densi-
 641 ties ($\sigma_2 < 37$). As shown in Figure 7 from Part I (Griffies et al., 2024), the bottom cell
 642 overturning is associated with waters denser than $\sigma_2 = 37$, indicating that any surface
 643 WMT at lighter densities are not expected to contribute to AABW formation and bot-
 644 tom cell overturning.

645 The spatial pattern in bottom age (Figures 18a,b) is also consistent with the differ-
 646 ence in surface WMT between the two CM4X models, and the dominant role of sur-
 647 face WMT in the Ross and Weddell sections, showing slightly younger bottom waters

648 in CM4X-p25 along the AABW pathways due to the higher density waters formed on
 649 the shelf, emanating away from the Ross and Weddell Seas. The total DSW formation
 650 rate of approximately 5 Sv in both CM4X model configurations is on the lower end of
 651 the observational range, which spans 5-15 Sv (Silvano et al., 2023). However, this for-
 652 mation rate is a significant improvement compared to most CMIP6 models (Heuzé, 2021),
 653 suggesting that both CM4X simulations capture the relevant processes responsible for
 654 DSW and AABW production.

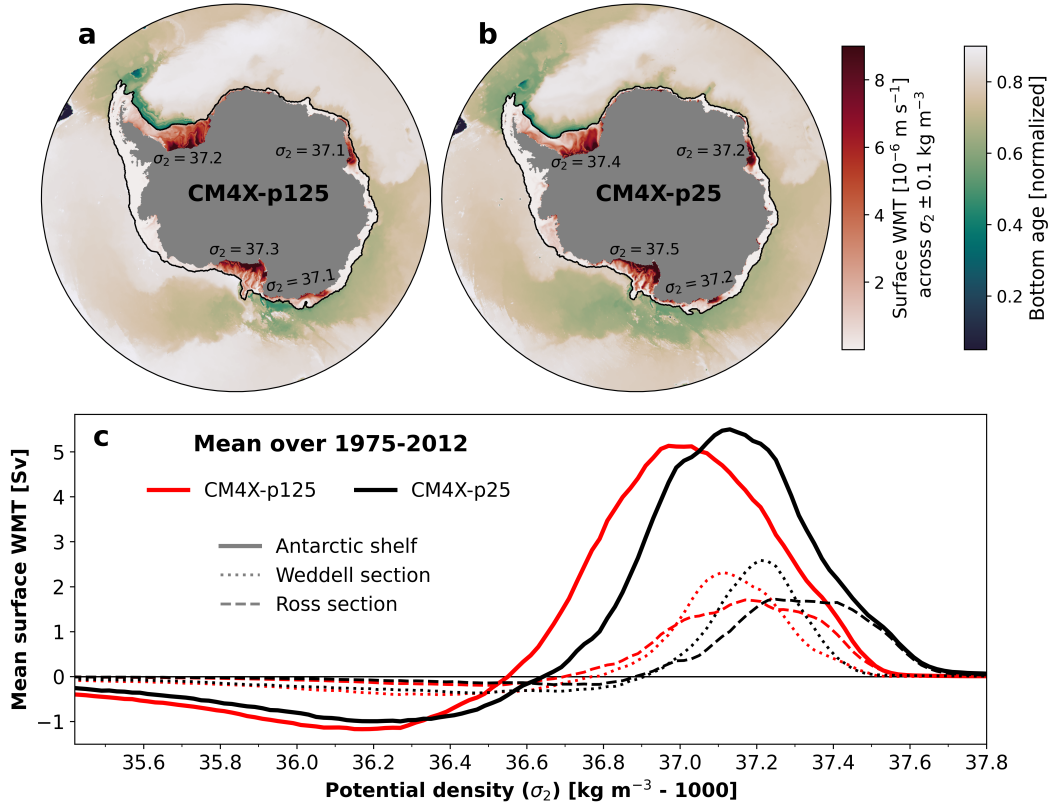


Figure 18. Surface water mass transformation (WMT) on the Antarctic continental shelf and bottom water age distribution over the abyssal Southern Ocean in (a) CM4X-p125 and (b) CM4X-p25. The red shading in panels a and b represent the time mean (1975-2012) surface WMT per unit area across σ_2 potential density classes (potential density referenced to 2000 dbar), separately determined in the four key DSW formation regions based on the densest water class. For the Weddell, Prydz/Adelie, and Ross shelves the surface WMT is mapped across σ_2 isopycnals of 37.2, 37.1 and 37.3 in CM4X-p125, and 37.4, 37.2 and 37.5 in CM4X-p25. The green shading in panels a and b represents the bottom age tracer at year 2009, normalized to the total simulation length (100 years of spinup + 1850-2009 historical = 260 years). (c) Mean (1975-2012) surface WMT in σ_2 integrated over the Antarctic shelf, Weddell (62°W-10°E) and Ross section (154°E-134°W) for CM4X-p125 (red lines) and CM4X-p25 (black lines).

655 The overturning circulation streamfunction offers a means to both measure and to
 656 visualize ventilation of the ocean interior. As a complement to the pole-to-pole over-
 657 turning in Figure 7 from Part I (Griffies et al., 2024) that illustrates connections between
 658 the Southern Ocean and North Atlantic, in Figure 19 we focus on the Southern Ocean
 659 overturning. The AABW cell is the densest cell (blue counterclockwise cell) associated

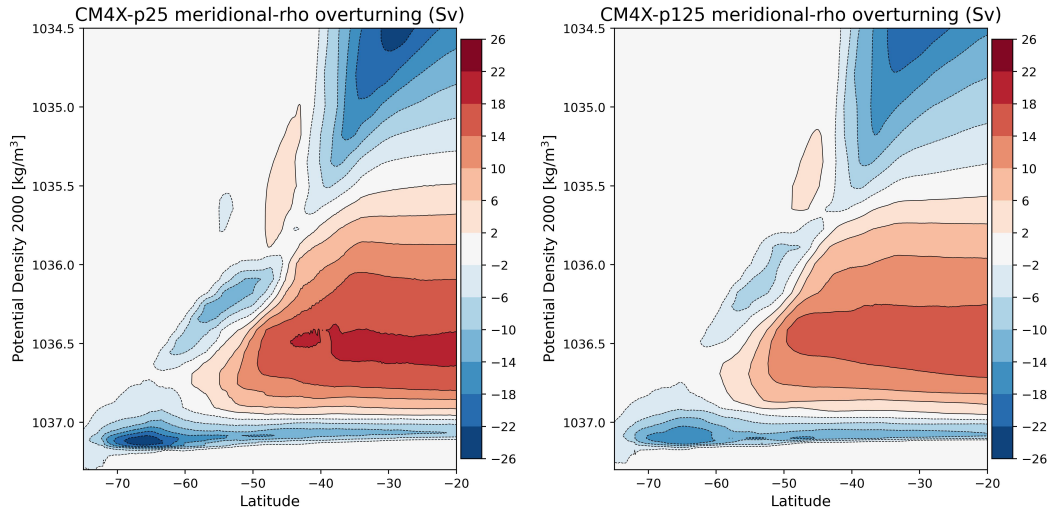


Figure 19. Meridional-density (ρ_{2000}) overturning circulation in the Southern Ocean as computed using time mean flow from years 1980-2009, with CM4X-p25 on the left and CM4X-p125 on the right.

660 with waters formed via DSW production on the Antarctic shelf and subsequent overflow
 661 and entrainment into the abyssal ocean (i.e., the processes shown in Figure 18). CM4X-
 662 p25 shows slightly larger formation around 65°S-70°S, and yet the AABW signal is slightly
 663 stronger in CM4X-p125 upon reaching 30°S. This disagreement between the strength of
 664 the AABW cell in the subpolar region and at 30°S indicates potentially larger interior
 665 mixing in CM4X-p25 which erodes the strong AABW transport away from the subpo-
 666 lar region. The other (blue) counterclockwise overturning cell is split into two sections
 667 in CM4X-p25 and CM4X-p125, though it is nearly connected in CM4X-p125. In the low
 668 latitudes, this cell is associated with subtropical mode waters. As discussed by Hallberg
 669 and Gnanadesikan (2006) (see their Section 3a), the merging of this cell southward across
 670 45°S results from meridional mass transport from transient mesoscale eddies, with such
 671 eddy variability stronger in CM4X-p125 (e.g., East Australian Current, Agulhas Rings).
 672 The dense flow in the red clockwise cell is associated with North Atlantic Deep Water
 673 (NADW) and Circumpolar Deep Water (CDW) moving south, with a portion of this wa-
 674 ter lightened into Antarctic Intermediate Water (AAIW) and another portion densified
 675 into AABW.

676 5.3 Multi-decadal fluctuations in the piControl simulations

677 In Figure 20 we show the time series for the Drake Passage transport from the pi-
 678 Control simulations in CM4X as well as CM4.0. As described by Held et al. (2019), the
 679 large amplitude multi-decadal fluctuations in CM4.0 are associated with very large (i.e.,
 680 super) polynyas in the Ross Sea. Such polynyas also appear in the ESM4 simulation of
 681 Dunne et al. (2020). In contrast, we do not find these super-polynyas in either CM4X-
 682 p25 or CM4X-p125, with both models exhibiting more modest multi-decadal fluctuations.
 683 One hypothesis for the absence of super-polynyas in CM4X relates to the increase in land
 684 ice albedo relative to CM4.0, resulting in a slightly cooler Antarctic climate and thus sup-
 685 porting more intermittent ventilation with smaller polynyas, rather than the buildup of
 686 massive subsurface heat charging the super-polynyas in CM4.0 (L. Zhang et al., 2021).
 687 This hypothesis comes with a caveat, however, since the land ice albedos used in CM4X
 688 are the same as ESM4, and yet ESM4 also suffers from the extremely strong polynyas.

689 We thus suspect that the full story for polynya events involves multiple factors, includ-
 690 ing winds, sea ice, and ice shelves.

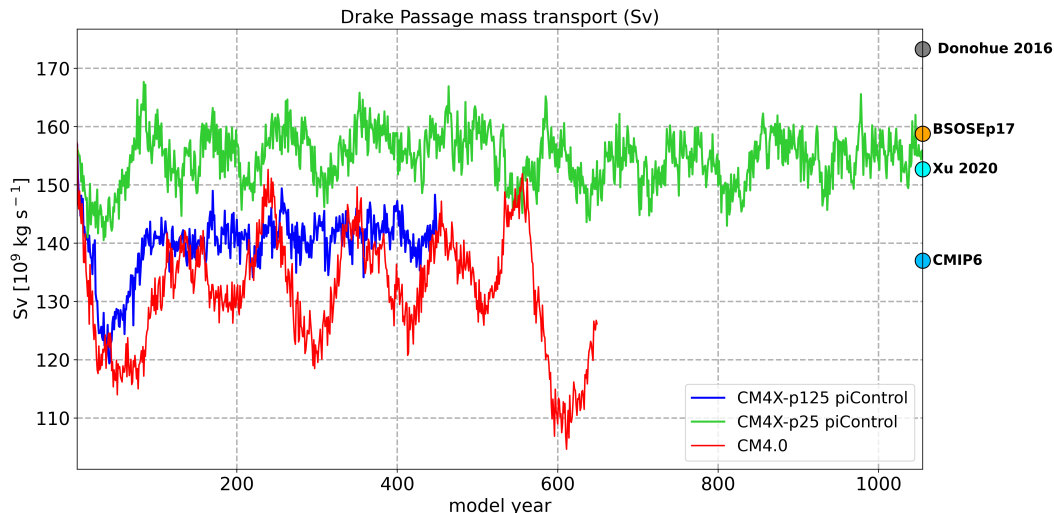


Figure 20. Time series of annual mean mass transport through the Drake Passage in units of Sverdrup (10^9 kg s^{-1}) for the piControl simulations from CM4X and CM4.0.

691 As a further means to distinguish the CM4X Southern Ocean simulations from CM4.0,
 692 Figure 21 provides time series for Antarctic shelf salinity, circulation strength of the bot-
 693 tom overturning cell, AABW transport at 30°S , as well as Hovmöller diagrams of sur-
 694 face water mass transformation due to heat fluxes in σ_2 . Here we again see signatures
 695 of the super-polynyas in CM4.0 whereas both CM4X simulations exhibit smaller ampli-
 696 tude fluctuations. The variability in CM4.0 highlights how the occurrence of large open-
 697 ocean polynyas lead to a series of interconnected changes in physical processes within
 698 the Southern Ocean. The CM4.0 piControl exhibits marked multi-decadal oscillations
 699 in shelf salinity, offshore heat loss, and dense water formation, seen in Figure 21 as pos-
 700 itive excursions of surface WMT at the densest open waters ($\sigma_2 > 37$). These episodes
 701 of enhanced dense water formation directly impact the large-scale circulation, as evidenced
 702 by the concurrent peak in the strength of the bottom overturning cell, followed by in-
 703 creased AABW transport at 30°S . Furthermore, the same multi-decadal fluctuations are
 704 seen in the Drake Passage transport (Figure 20), illustrating the connection between dense
 705 water formation, overturning and the strength of the ACC.

706 The multi-decadal oscillations are still present in the CM4X-p25 piControl simu-
 707 lations, but are more muted compared to CM4.0. We observe variability in the subpo-
 708 lar cell strength that oscillates around 20 Sv with a clear periodicity. This muted vari-
 709 ability is also reflected in the Antarctic shelf salinity and the offshore surface WMT. Thus,
 710 there is some intrinsic variability that is still apparent in the quarter degree piControl
 711 runs, consistent with L. Zhang et al. (2021), occurring at higher frequency and with weaker
 712 amplitude when land ice albedo is increased. Figures 20 and 21 suggest that the oscil-
 713 lations do not have as large an impact across different parts of the Southern Ocean in
 714 CM4X-p25 as they do in CM4.0. Interestingly, these oscillations are not as clearly seen
 715 in the CM4X-p125 version, which could be due to the shorter run time.

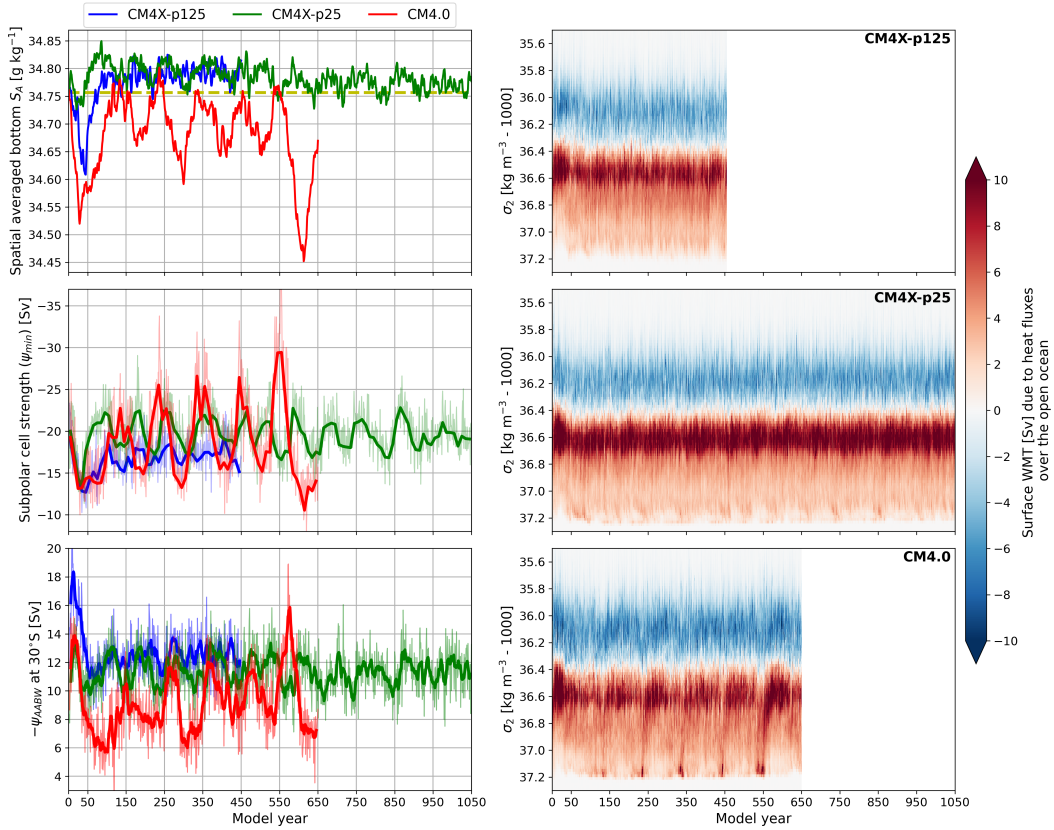


Figure 21. Time series for the annual mean salinity as area averaged around the bottom of the Antarctic shelf (upper left), circulation strength of the bottom overturning cell (middle left) and AABW transport at 30S (lower left) for CM4X-p125, CM4X-p25 and CM4.0 piControl simulations. The finer lines in the middle and lower left panels are annual means. The thick lines in the middle panel are decadal means, while the thicker lines in the lower panel are 10-year running means. The right panels show Hovmöller diagrams of surface forced water mass transformation in σ_2 -space (potential density referenced to 2000 dbar) over the open Southern Ocean due to heat fluxes in CM4X-p125 (upper), CM4X-p25 (middle) and CM4.0 (lower). When calculating the area-average in the upper left panel we define the Antarctic shelf as the region with depths shallower than 1000 m. The yellow dashed line in the upper left denotes the observation-based climatological mean of Antarctic shelf salinity from Schmidtko et al. (2014).

716

5.4 Transient climate response

717

718

719

720

721

722

723

724

725

726

In Figure 22 we provide a suite of five time series for various properties around the Southern Ocean during the piControl spin-up, historical, and SSP5-8.5 scenario, that emphasize the coupling of properties between the shelf and open ocean. This coupling is also found in the shelf-open-ocean diagnostics presented in Figure 21. A key take away from Figure 22 is the general agreement in the transient response regardless of slight differences in the mean-state. Both models show a steep drop in shelf salinity at the start of the SSP5-8.5 simulation driven by freshening associated with an enhanced hydrological cycle and sea ice melt (and decreased sea ice formation) under increased warming. This drop also coincides with a sharp acceleration of the ASC in both models. The temporal pattern of ASC acceleration differs depending on location as the mean-state ASC

727 is influenced by different dynamics along the shelf (Huneke et al., 2022). However, a strong
 728 ASC acceleration is consistently found from years 2014 to 2060 regardless of location.

729 The increased strength of the ASC also likely contributes to the consistent response
 730 found in shelf salinity via a positive feedback mechanism established between shelf fresh-
 731 ening that enhances the ASC and thus leading to more freshwater trapping on the shelf
 732 (Moorman et al., 2020; Lockwood et al., 2021; Beadling et al., 2022). Despite initial dif-
 733 ferences in the strength of the subpolar cell, with CM4X-p25 showing stronger abyssal
 734 overturning, both models exhibit a similar magnitude of decline in bottom cell strength
 735 by the end of the 21st century under the SSP5-8.5 scenario. CM4X-p125 displays a steady
 736 weakening over time, whereas CM4X-p25 experiences a more abrupt reduction. Never-
 737 theless, both models demonstrate comparable trends in AABW export at 30S, highlight-
 738 ing consistent responses to the transient conditions throughout the historical and SSP5-
 739 8.5 simulations. Investigating the differences between these two models and the mech-
 740 anisms driving the response in shelf and open-ocean processes under SSP5-8.5 is a topic
 741 of further investigation.

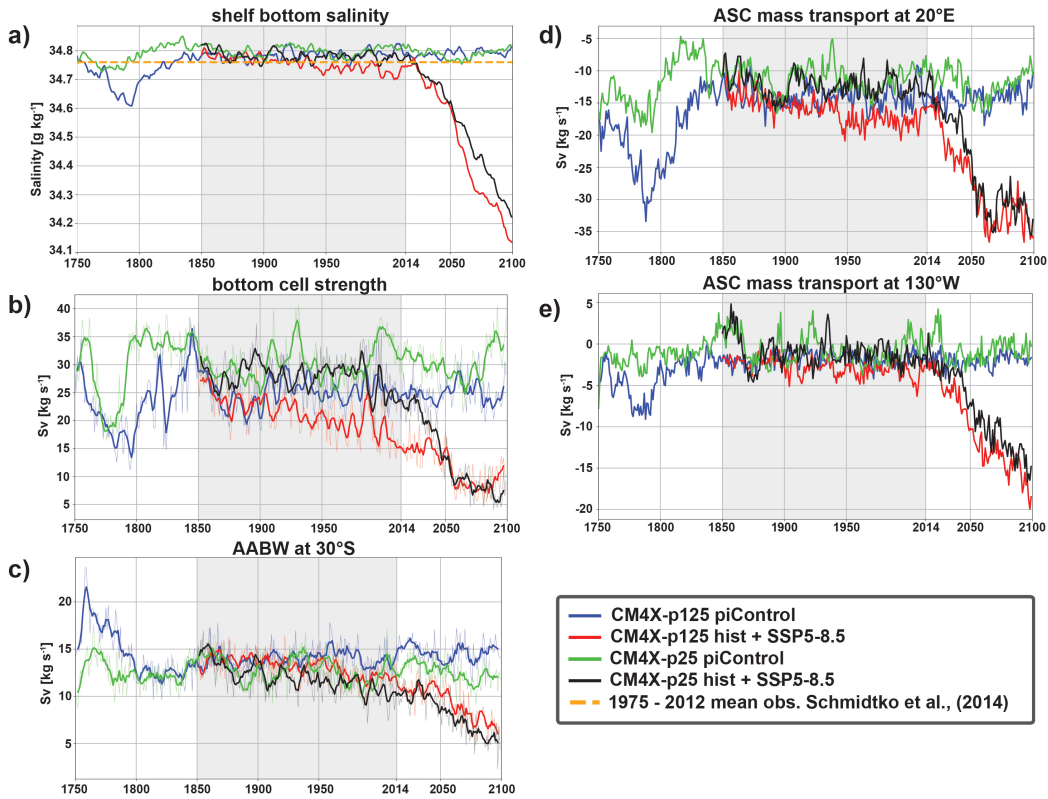


Figure 22. Time series for various properties around the Southern Ocean during the piControl spin-up, historical, and SSP5-8.5 scenario. a) Spatially averaged continental shelf bottom salinity b) circulation strength of the bottom overturning cell, c) AABW volume transport at 30°S, e) ASC strength at 20°E and f) ASC strength at 130°W. The ASC strength is shown at two different locations due to its flow characteristics being governed by different dynamics around the continental shelf (A. F. Thompson et al., 2018). The finer lines in panels b and c are annual means, while thicker lines in panels b and c are 5-year running means. When calculating the area-average in panel a, we define the Antarctic shelf as the region with depths shallower than 1000 m. The yellow dashed line in the upper left denotes the observation-based climatological mean of Antarctic shelf salinity from (Schmidtko et al., 2014).

742 5.5 Conclusions regarding the Southern Ocean simulations

743 The credible representation of Southern Ocean properties in CM4X opens up op-
 744 portunities to study fully coupled Southern Ocean processes and Antarctic margin dy-
 745 namics. The largest improvement in the CM4X models relative to previous generation
 746 GFDL models (CM4.0 and ESM4), is the lack of large amplitude multi-decadal oscilla-
 747 tions associated with super polyna events. The presence of such large amplitude vari-
 748 ability in CM4.0 prevented a suitable control run from which to branch perturbation ex-
 749 periments. Since the super-polynya-driven variability imprinted on the global climate
 750 and the Southern Ocean mean state, they made it nontrivial to interpret signal and “noise”
 751 in transient response to forcing perturbation experiments (Beadling et al., 2022; Tesdal
 752 et al., 2023).

753 Particularly notable features of the CM4X Southern Ocean simulation include the
 754 credible representations of Antarctic shelf hydrography, realistic locations of DSW pro-
 755 duction and overflow, and resolution of a strong ASC along the continental slope. A re-
 756 alistic representation of shelf properties and dynamics along the shelf-slope is required
 757 for examining shelf-open-ocean interactions, improving confidence in the thermal forc-
 758 ing of the AIS in a transient climate, and providing boundary conditions for dynamical
 759 ice sheet models. The credibility of CM4X near and along the Antarctic margin is en-
 760 couraging for the utility of studying high latitude processes and for coupling with dy-
 761 namical ice sheet models.

762 Additionally, with differing horizontal grid spacing providing for different degrees
 763 of representation of ocean mesoscale features, the CM4X suite is well positioned to probe
 764 the role of the ocean mesoscale within the climate system. Slight differences identified
 765 here between CM4X-p25 and CM4X-p125 in their velocity structure, Drake Passage trans-
 766 port, and Southern Ocean overturning may be linked to differing representation of mesoscale
 767 features and topography. Future work will aim at disentangling the sources of these dif-
 768 ferences between the two models and understanding whether these differences imprint
 769 on the transient climate response.

770 6 North Atlantic circulation

771 In this section we survey the horizontal and meridional overturning circulation fea-
 772 tures of the North Atlantic portion of the CM4X simulations, with comparisons made
 773 to observational estimates and other models, when available.

774 6.1 Gulf Stream

775 Here we focus on the Gulf Stream representation in CM4X as it compares to the-
 776oretical expectations, observed three dimensional structure (Todd, 2021), and the rep-
 777resentation in a 1/12 degree regional ocean simulation also using the MOM6 dynamical
 778 core (NWA12, Ross et al. (2023)).

779 *Expectations from previous studies*

780 Past efforts to determine controls on the simulated Gulf Stream have focused on
 781 the latitude of separation from the coast, as well as behavior of the jet and mesoscale
 782 eddies post separation (Chassignet & Marshall, 2008). This latitude of separation and/or
 783 the mean latitude of the Gulf Stream extension is often associated with a temperature
 784 front or the zero barotropic vorticity contour (Section 6.2). In this section we consider
 785 jet coherence and jet location relative to the continental slope. This analysis finds that
 786 once leaving the coast, the CM4X simulations have a rather diffuse and meandering Gulf
 787 Stream jet that is, unfortunately, rather distinct from observational measurements.

788 Fundamentally, Gulf Stream fidelity depends on model horizontal grid spacing relative to the first baroclinic Rossby radius of deformation. At middle latitudes, Hallberg
789 (2013) (see also Figure 1 from Part I (Griffies et al., 2024)) reveals a requirement of approximately 0.25° over the deep ocean (deeper than 3000 m) and approximately 0.125°
790 closer to the coast (500 m < depth < 3000 m). Since the Gulf Stream ‘leans’ on the
791 U.S. east coast continental shelf prior to separation, we expect accurate simulations require grid spacing to be at or finer than 0.125°.
792
793
794

795 Gulf Stream simulation features also depend on the spatial structure of wind forcing, deep western boundary current strength, bathymetric slope resolution, and model
796 viscosity parameterizations that moderate resolved mesoscale turbulence (Hurlburt and Hogan (2000), Parsons (2006), Chassignet and Marshall (2008), Ezer (2016), Chassignet
797 and Xu (2017), and Debret et al. (2022)). Chassignet and Marshall (2008) show how choices of biharmonic and/or Laplacian viscosity control the latitude of separation, determine
798 the presence or absence of standing eddies, and shape downstream instability behavior. The authors demonstrate that use of a low biharmonic viscosity can result in early separation
799 and the presence of a standing eddy near Cape Hatteras, while use of a Laplacian can result in flow that is too laminar and a Gulf Stream that does not penetrate
800 into the North Atlantic interior.
801
802
803
804
805

806 *Plan view and vertical sections of the Gulf Stream*

807 Qualitative plan view comparisons of surface mean kinetic energy (MKE) in CM4X
808 simulations, NWA12, and observations reveal the initial latitude of separation from the coast as too far south (Fig. 23a-d). The observed time mean latitude of separation is approximately 37.5°N while in CM4X-p25 it is approximately 31°N and in CM4X-p125 approximately 32°N. This shift northwards with refined grid spacing continues when comparing to the 1/12° regional ocean model, where Gulf Stream separation occurs at approximately 37°N. As discussed by Chassignet and Marshall (2008), this characterization of the Gulf Stream separation and particular focus on jet coherence and the horizontal spreading of mean kinetic energy centers on the impact of viscosity choices on flow around the Charleston Bump. In both CM4X simulations use of a relatively low biharmonic viscosity value, as well representation limitations associated with relatively coarse horizontal resolution, are likely the cause of early separation.
812
813
814
815
816
817
818

819 Upstream of separation, surface MKE is greater in CM4X-p125 than in CM4X-p25 and closer to observed magnitudes. This increase in Gulf Stream strength in CM4X-p125 may be responsible for more realistic flow around the the Charleston Bump compared to CM4X-p25. The vertical extent of this relative increase is seen in a zonal cross-section at 29.5°N (Figure 24a-d). While the depth penetration of the Gulf Stream is similar in all panels, CM4X-p125 upper-ocean northward velocity (at depths shallower than 300 m) is over 50% larger than in CM4X-p25.
822
823
824
825

826 Differences between CM4X and observations and NWA12 are more significant post separation. In both CM4X-p25 and CM4X-p125, the eastward flowing jet rapidly dissipates post separation, resulting in a diffuse field of eddies that meander further north than observed eddy activity. Correspondingly, MKE is spread across roughly 30°N to 40°N, and dissipates moving eastward. Cross-sections at Cape Hatteras and at 70.5°W (Figure 24e-l) reveal the vertical structure of velocity to rapidly decrease with increasing depth. Compared to observations and NWA12, the CM4X Gulf Stream structure is far too surface intensified and horizontally diffuse. At 1800 m, a depth greater than that at which gliders collected measurements in Todd (2021), the spatial distribution of MKE appears similar in CM4X and NWA12. Noted differences between CM4X-p25 and CM4X-p125 include the near barotropic standing eddy in CM4X-p25 (Figures 23c,f) and a more energetic deep slope current north of 37.5°N in CM4X-p25.
832
833
834
835
836
837

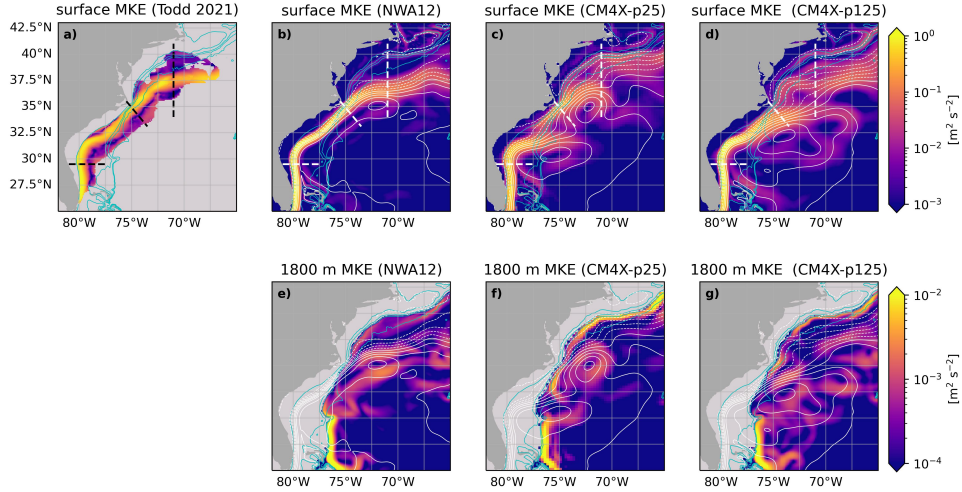


Figure 23. a) Time mean surface kinetic energy (MKE) derived from observations collected between 2015-06 and 2020-7 (Todd, 2021) (note log color scale). Blue contours identify the 100 m, 1000 m, 2000 m, and 3000 m isobaths. Black dashed lines are the locations of zonal, Cape Hatteras, and meridional cross-sections in Figure 24. b) 2010-2014 time mean surface kinetic energy from the NWA12 $1/12^\circ$ degree regional ocean model (Ross et al., 2023). Time mean sea surface height contours are added in white. c) Same as b) but for CM4X-p25. d) Same as b) but for CM4X-p125. e-g) Mean kinetic energy as in b-d) at 1800 m (note colormap scale change).

838 6.2 Barotropic vorticity

839 Interactions between deep ocean flows and sloping bathymetry result in bottom stretching
 840 and bottom pressure torques, influencing the western boundary currents and ocean
 841 circulation (Hughes & De Cuevas, 2001; R. Zhang & Vallis, 2007; Waldman & Giordani,
 842 2023; Khatri et al., 2024). We investigate how spatial resolution differences between CM4X-
 843 p25 and CM4X-p125 affect the strength of the North Atlantic gyre circulations. For this
 844 purpose, we use the linear steady-state barotropic vorticity budget, which is often used
 845 to study how surface winds and bathymetry control ocean gyres (Stommel, 1948; Hol-
 846 land, 1967). Following Yeager (2015), we use the streamfunction, ψ , form of the barotropic
 847 vorticity budget

$$848 \underbrace{\int_{x_w}^x V dx}_{\psi} \approx \underbrace{\frac{1}{\beta} \int_{x_w}^x J(p_b, H) dx}_{\psi_{BPT}} + \underbrace{\frac{1}{\beta \rho_0} \int_{x_w}^x \hat{z} \cdot (\nabla \times \tau_s) dx}_{\psi_{\tau_s}}. \quad (3)$$

849 Here, V is the vertically integrated meridional velocity, β is the meridional derivative of
 850 the Coriolis parameter, p_b is bottom pressure, H is ocean depth, τ_s is the surface wind
 851 stress, x_w represents the western continental boundary and ρ_0 is the Boussinesq refer-
 852 ence density. Note that contributions from friction and nonlinear terms are not included,
 853 as these contributions are relatively small in time-mean vorticity balances (see Khatri
 854 et al. (2024) for a complete vorticity budget analysis and diagnosis methodology).

855 The time-mean spatial patterns of subtropical and subpolar gyres are well captured
 856 by the combined effects of bottom pressure torque and surface wind stress (Figure 25).

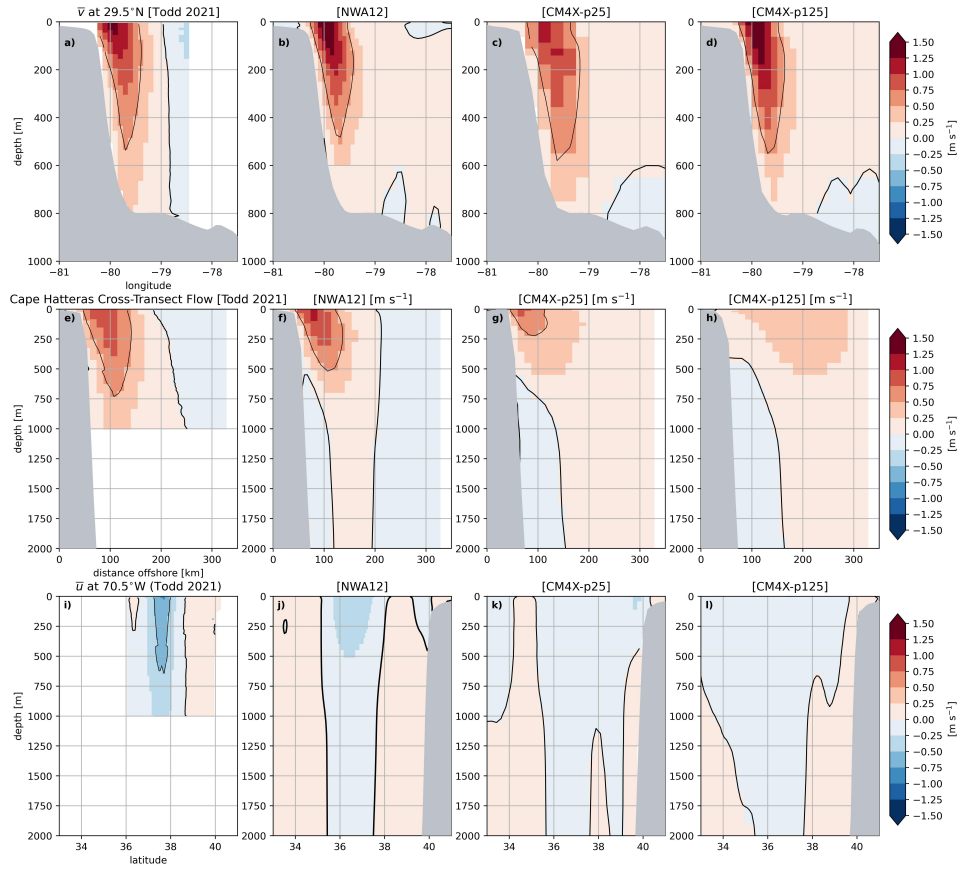


Figure 24. a-d) Time mean meridional velocity at 29.5°N as a function of depth and longitude from Todd (2021) (2015-202), NWA12 (2010-2014), CM4X-p25 (2010-2014), and CM4X-p125 (2010-2014) (note log color scale). Heavy black contour is the 0 value, light black solid/dashed contours are 0.5 and -0.5 m s^{-1} , and gray shading is the model bathymetry (NWA12 bathymetry is used in panel a). e-h) Time mean cross-transect velocity extending southwest of Cape Hatteras. i-l) Time mean zonal velocity at 70.5°W . Positive velocities are those into the page.

857 Surface winds control the meridional flow in open ocean gyres, while the return flow in
 858 western boundary currents is driven by bottom pressure torques (compare Figures 25a1-
 859 a2 with 25d1-d2, also see (Yeager, 2015)). However, in the Iceland basin and Nordic Seas,
 860 bottom friction and other vorticity terms are more important in guiding the meridional
 861 transport (not shown).

862 Comparing CM4X-p25 and CM4X-p125 reveals that refined ocean grid spacing leads
 863 to a stronger time-mean subtropical gyre transport, while the subpolar gyre transport
 864 is weaker. In CM4X-p25, the maximum transport in the subtropical gyre and minimum
 865 transport in the subpolar gyre are 25 Sv and -44 Sv, respectively (Figures 25a1, 25e).

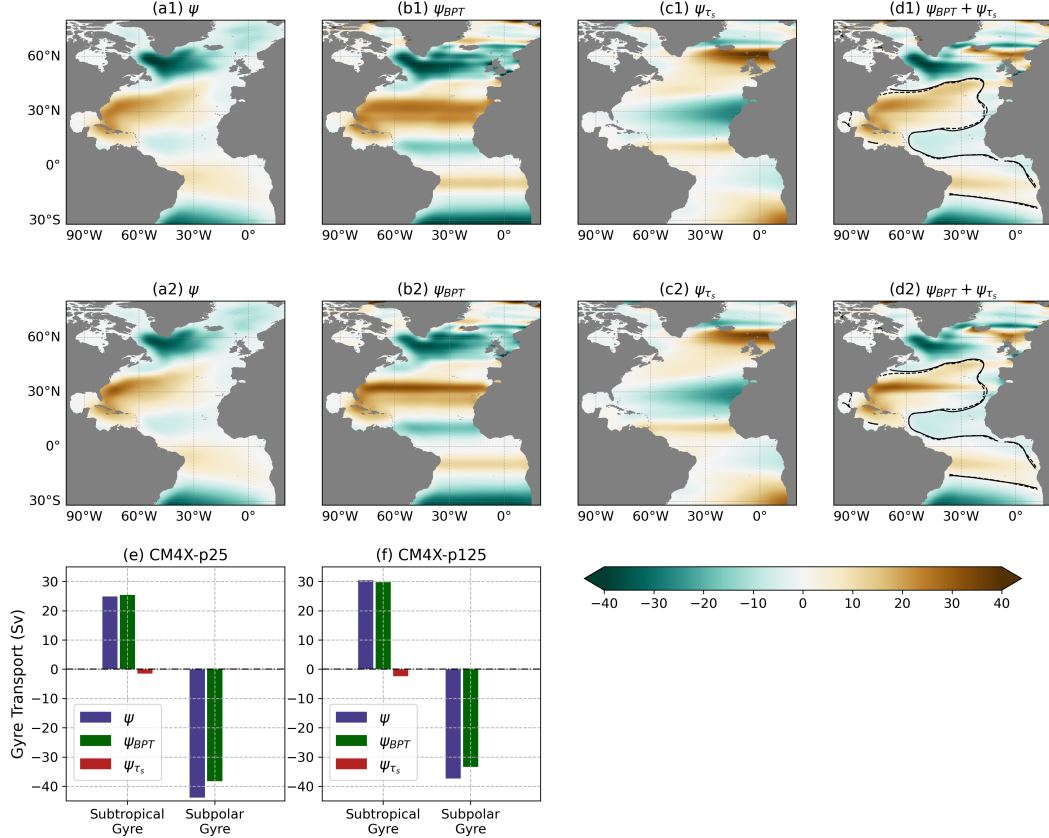


Figure 25. Barotropic streamfunction (in Sv) estimated using vorticity budget terms in equation (3) (30-year time-mean). The top row (panels a1-d1) show the CM4X-p25 piControl and the bottom row (panels a2-d2) show CM4X-p125 piControl. Panels (e,f) show the subtropical and subpolar gyre transports (estimated as the maximum or minimum of the barotropic streamfunction) and the associated contributions from ψ_{BPT} and ψ_{τ_s} (note that ψ_{τ_s} transports in the subpolar gyre are too small to see). Spatial maps in panels (d1-d2) are sums of maps shown in panels (b1-b2) and (c1-c2), and the solid (CM4X-p25) and dashed black (CM4X-p125) curves represent the zero streamfunction contour lines, which are used to infer the latitudinal position of the Gulf Stream located between the subtropical and subpolar gyres. To filter out the small-scale variability and grid-scale noise in vorticity diagnostics (Khatri et al., 2024), spatial maps are spatially smoothed to 10° resolution using the GCM-Filters from Loose et al. (2022).

866 On the other hand, in CM4X-p125, subtropical and subpolar gyre transports are 30 Sv
 867 and -37 Sv (Figures 25a2, 25f). These differences in gyre strength are primarily associ-
 868 ated with differences in bottom pressure torque (compare Figures 25b1 and 25b2), which
 869 is affected by the finer scale bathymetry and better resolved mesoscale deep flows in CMX-
 870 p125 relative to CM4X-p25. These changes in gyre transports agree with changes in mag-
 871 nitudes of bottom pressure torques and the corresponding streamfunction transports, ψ_{BPT} .

872 Similar strengthening in the subtropical gyre with increased ocean model resolution
 873 has been observed in many climate models (Meccia et al., 2021). Moreover, the south-
 874 ward subpolar transport of 37 Sv in CM4X-p125 is close to estimates from Xu et al. (2013),
 875 who determined the southward transport in the Labrador Sea near 53°N to be approx-
 876 imately 39 Sv.

877

6.3 Atlantic meridional overturning circulation (AMOC)

878

879

880

881

882

883

884

885

886

887

888

889

890

891

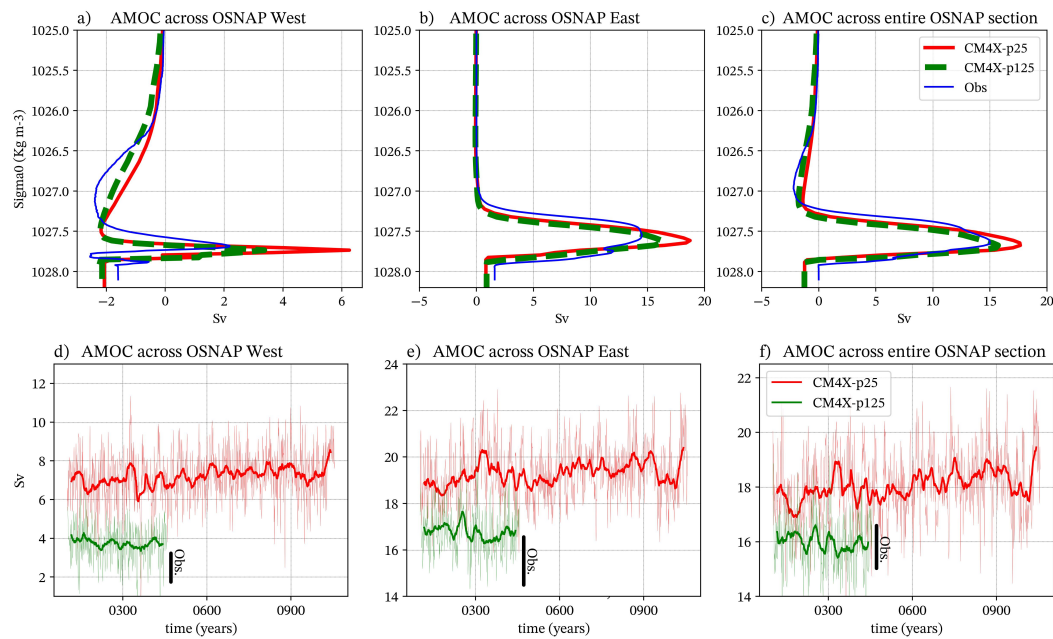


Figure 26. Top row: Climatological annual mean density space AMOC streamfunction across OSNAP West, OSNAP East, and the full OSNAP section for CM4X-p25, CM4X-p125, and the OSNAP observations over the period of 2014-2020. Bottom row: Time series of the maximum AMOC strength across OSNAP West, OSNAP East, and the full OSNAP section, in comparison with the OSNAP observations over the period of 2014-2020. The time series are smoothed with a 10-year running mean. The dark lines in bottom rows depict the ranges (mean \pm one standard deviation of rolling annual mean) of observations.

892

893

894

895

896

897

898

Figure 26 shows that CM4X-p125 has a maximum climatological density space AMOC strength across OSNAP West that has been reduced relative to CM4X-p25, with CM4X-p125 results closer to recent OSNAP observations of 2 Sv (Lozier et al., 2019; Li et al., 2021). The modeled maximum climatological density space AMOC strength across OSNAP East (or across the entire OSNAP section) has also been improved with CM4X-p125 relative to CM4X-p25, with Figure 26 showing CM4X-p125 values closer to the OSNAP observations. The modeled maximum climatological subpolar AMOC in density

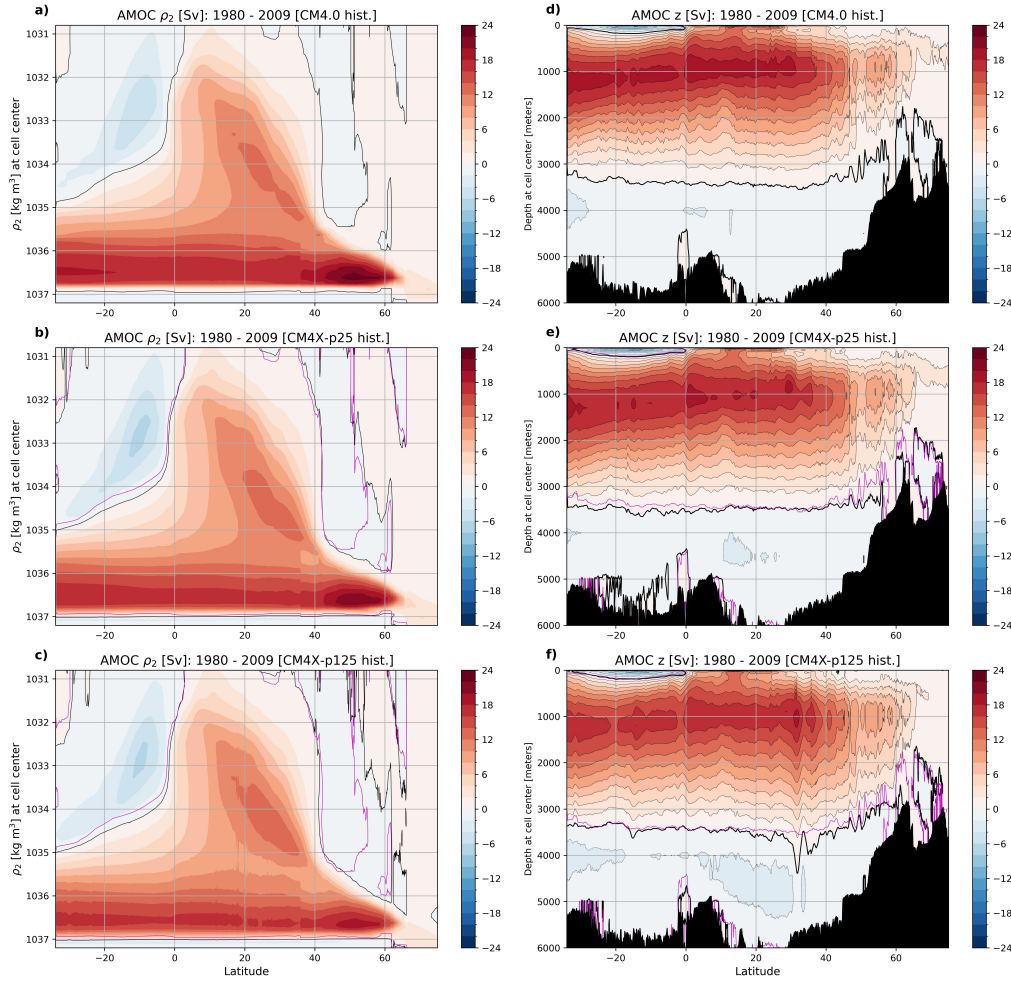


Figure 27. Climatological annual mean Atlantic meridional overturning circulation (AMOC) streamfunction as a function of latitude in potential density (ρ_2 , a,b,c) and geopotential (d,e,f) for the historical simulations over the period of 1980-2009 using CM4.0, CM4X-p25, and CM4X-p125. In CM4X-p25 and CM4X-p125 panels, the magenta contour identifies the zero contour of CM4.0. Contours are shown at 2 Sv increments. The figure includes transport in the Atlantic, Arctic, Mediterranean, and Baltic basins.

899 space is reduced in CM4X-p125 compared to that in CM4X-p25 (Figure 27), which is
 900 consistent with the improvement across OSNAP West and East (Figure 26).

901 Since both CM4X-p125 and CM4X-p25 have the same atmosphere model, improve-
 902 ments in the CM4X-p125 mean state subpolar AMOC are likely due to its refined hor-
 903 izontal ocean grid spacing compared to CM4X-p25. Improvements in the simulated max-
 904 imum AMOC strength across OSNAP West in CM4X-p125 (Figure 26a,d) is likely linked
 905 to its improved and reduced Labrador Sea winter deep convection area compared to that
 906 simulated in CM4X-p25, as reflected in the climatological winter mixed layer depth (MLD)
 907 seen in Figure 28. The Labrador Sea winter MLD in CM4X-p25 is unrealistically deep
 908 and broad, which is likely related to the under-representation of the dense overflows en-
 909 tering the Labrador Sea and the less resolved mesoscale eddy restratification (Tagklis
 910 et al., 2020). The winter Labrador Sea MLD is improved (shoaled) in CM4X-p125, which
 911 has a slightly better representation of the dense overflows across the OSNAP section as

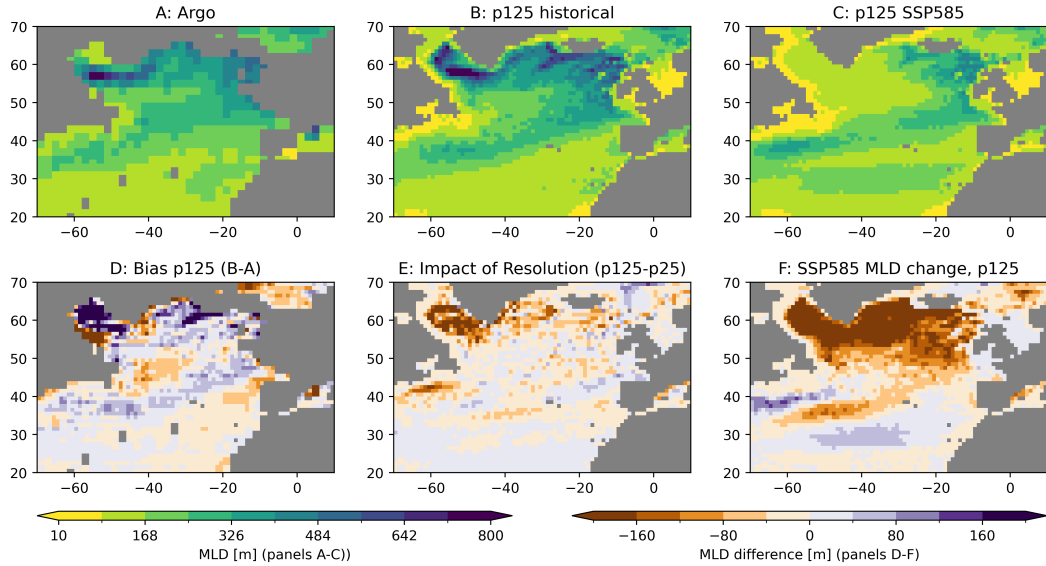


Figure 28. Winter climatology of the North Atlantic maximum mixed layer depth from Argo (years 2004-2023) (Argo, 2023), as well as years 2000-2014 (historical simulation) and years 2085-2099 (SSP5-8.5 simulation) from CM4X-p25 and CM4X-p125, computed as in Figure 9 from Part I (Griffies et al., 2024) Panel A: estimates from the Argo profiling floats; Panel B: results from CM4X-p125 historical experiment; Panel C: CM4X-p125 SSP5-8.5 simulation. Panel D shows the differences between CM4X-p125 and Argo (Panels B-A), whereas Panel E shows the difference between CM4X-p125 and CM4X-p25 (with a shoaling of MLD in CM4X-p125 relative to CM4X-p25). Finally, Panel F shows the impacts from the SSP5-8.5 climate change, showing years 2084-2099 minus years 2000-2014 (Panels C-B) from CM4X-p125. Note that differences documented in Panels D and E are robust to a longer time average over model years 1955-2014.

912 seen in Figure 29, as well as a stronger resolved mesoscale eddy restratification. How-
 913 ever, neither CM4X-p125 nor CM4X-p25 simulate the observed winter deep convection
 914 in the Greenland Sea.

915 Over the subpolar North Atlantic, horizontal circulations across sloping isopycnals
 916 play an important role in density-space AMOC, and a Sigma-Z diagram was designed
 917 to illustrate the role of horizontal circulations in density-space (R. Zhang & Thomas, 2021).
 918 Across OSNAP East, both CM4X-p125 and CM4X-p25 simulate the horizontal circula-
 919 tion contribution (positive inflow and negative outflow canceled at the same depth level,
 920 but not at the same density level), which corresponds to that observed in the upper ocean
 921 (Figure 30). However, both models underestimate the horizontal circulation contribu-
 922 tion compared to that observed in the deep ocean (Figure 30). This modeling bias in the
 923 deep ocean is related to the underestimation of the Nordic Sea overflows (i.e. Denmark
 924 Strait overflow and Iceland-Scotland overflow) and associated recirculation in both CM4X-
 925 p125 and CM4X-p25 (Figure 29). With refined horizontal grid spacing, CM4X-p125 has
 926 a slightly better representation of the Nordic Sea overflows and associated recirculation
 927 (Figure 29), and thus a slightly better representation of the horizontal circulation contribu-
 928 tion in the deep ocean (Figure 30). Although the difference between CM4X simu-
 929 lations and the observation in the density space AMOC streamfunction across OSNAP
 930 East does not appear pronounced (Figure 26), the Sigma-Z diagram clearly reveals dif-
 931 ferences in the simulated deep ocean AMOC structure in Figure 30.

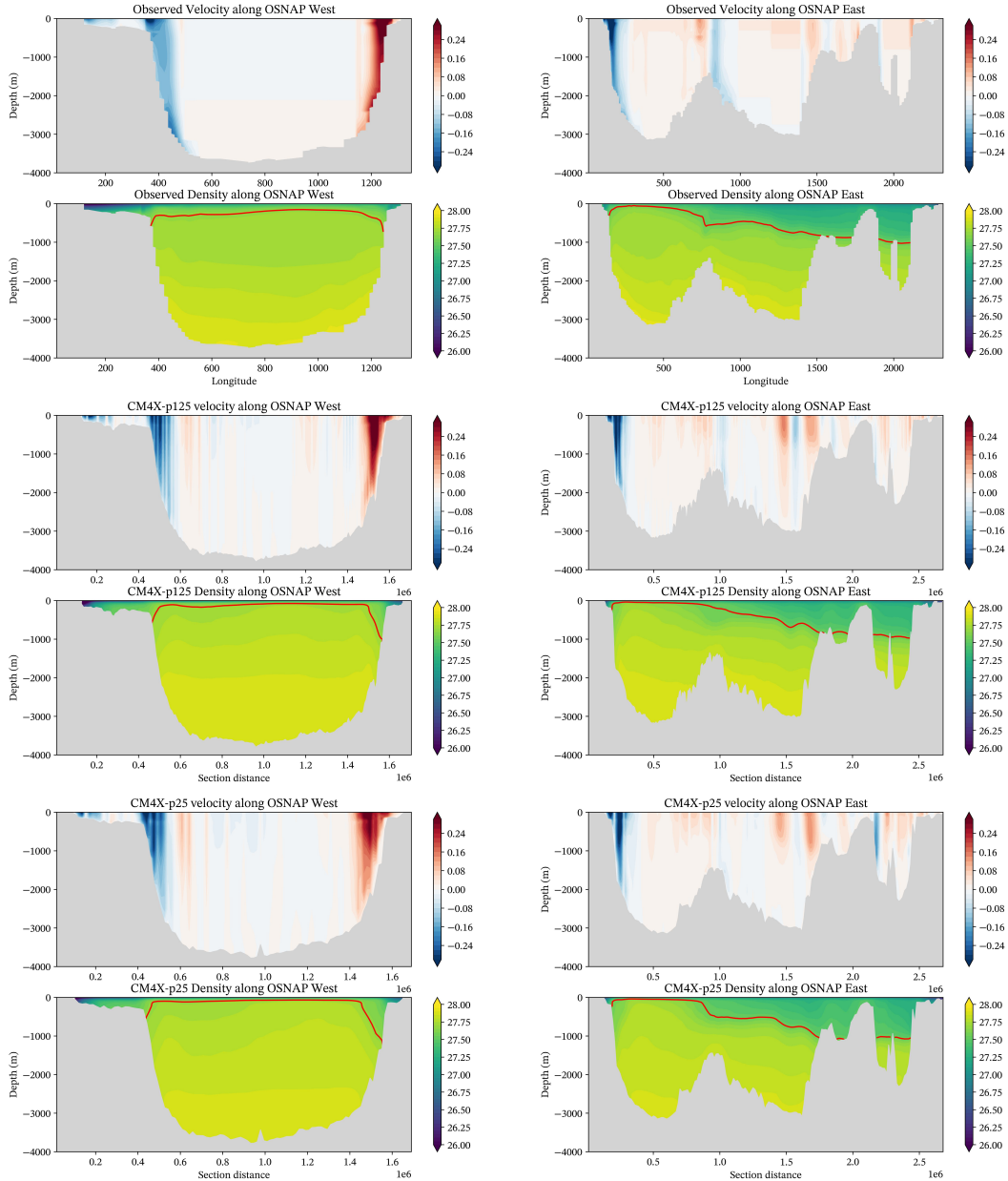


Figure 29. Mean velocity and potential density across OSNAP West (left) and OSNAP East (right). The top two rows show the OSNAP observations averaged over years 2014-2020 from Fu et al. (2023). The middle two row shows CM4X-p125 as averaged over years 2014-2020. The bottom two rows show CM4X-p25 as averaged over years 2014-2020.

932 Across OSNAP West, the horizontal circulation contribution to the density space
 933 AMOC in the upper ocean is too strong and too deep in CM4X-p25 compared to that
 934 estimated from observations (Figure 31). However, in CM4X-p125, the horizontal
 935 circulation contribution becomes less strong and shallower, which then compares better with
 936 the field measurements than CM4X-p25 (Figure 31). This improvement in CM4X-p125
 937 is related to the improved (reduced) Labrador Sea winter deep convection area (Figure
 938 28) and the better resolved Labrador Sea boundary current in CM4X-p125 (Figure 29).
 939 Consistently, the density contrast between the Labrador Sea boundary outflow and in-

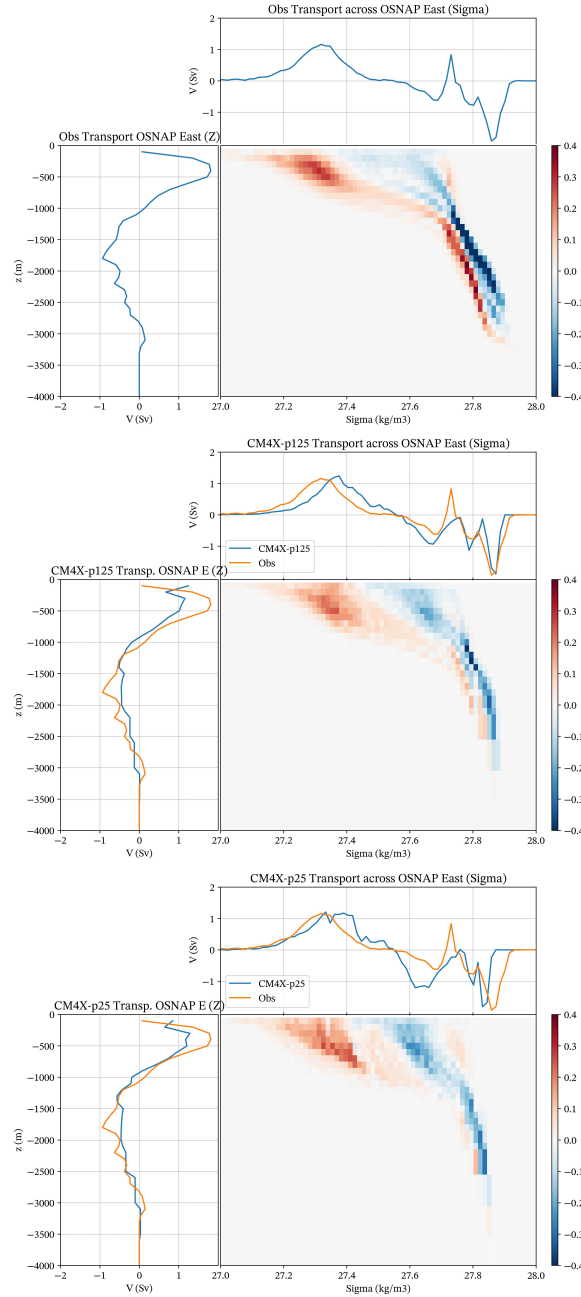


Figure 30. Sigma-z diagram of volume transport across OSNAP East for OSNAP observations (Fu et al., 2023) (top), CM4X-p125 (middle), and CM4X-p25 (bottom), all computed over years 2014-2020. The color shading in each panel shows the integrated volume transport (Sv) across each subsection over each potential density (σ_0 ; potential density referenced to 0 dbar) bin (x-axis) and depth (z) bin (y-axis); the integrated transport across each subsection over each potential density bin summed over the entire depth range is shown in the blue curve above; the integrated transport across each subsection at each depth bin summed over the entire potential density range is shown in the blue curve on the left. The line plots for the CM4X results have the OSNAP measurements plotted for easier comparison.

940 flow is reduced and thus the maximum density space AMOC across OSNAP West (mainly
 941 contributed by the horizontal circulation) becomes weaker in CM4X-p125 compared to
 942 that simulated in CM4X-p25 (Figure 26a,d). The observed density structure between
 943 the Labrador Sea boundary outflow and inflow is almost symmetric (Figure 29), consis-
 944 tent with a very weak horizontal circulation contribution (Figure 31) and thus a very weak
 945 maximum density space AMOC strength across OSNAP West (Figure 26a,d) in obser-
 946 vations.

947 Across the RAPID section in the subtropical North Atlantic, both CM4X-p125 and
 948 CM4X-p25 simulate a similar maximum AMOC strength as that estimated from the RAPID
 949 program (Cunningham et al., 2007; McCarthy et al., 2015; Smeded et al., 2018), but the
 950 penetration depth of the simulated AMOC is much shallower than that observed (Fig-
 951 ure 32). The simulated shallow AMOC across the RAPID section is a typical bias found
 952 in many models due to deficiencies representing the dense and deep-penetrating Nordic
 953 Sea overflows (Danabasoglu et al., 2010; R. Zhang et al., 2011; Danabasoglu et al., 2014;
 954 H. Wang et al., 2015). The penetration depth of the simulated AMOC across the RAPID
 955 section is slightly deeper in CM4X-p125 than that in CM4X-p25 (Figure 27d,e,f and Fig-
 956 ure 32) due to slightly better representation of the Nordic Sea overflows in CM4X-p125.

957 The simulated multidecadal AMOC variability across the RAPID section in both
 958 CM4X-p125 and CM4X-p25 piControl simulations (Figure 33) is much weaker than the
 959 observationally-based estimate (Yan et al., 2018). The simulated historical AMOC across
 960 the RAPID section in both CM4X-p125 and CM4X-p25 has less pronounced multidecadal
 961 variations than simulated in CM4.0 (Figure 34). The pronounced multidecadal AMOC
 962 variations in CM4.0 (e.g., an increase up to 19 Sv and decline afterwards) are mainly in-
 963 duced by multidecadal changes in external radiative forcing (e.g. anthropogenic aerosols)
 964 as also found in many CMIP6 models (Menary et al., 2020), which are unrealistic and
 965 opposite to those indicated by the observed AMOC fingerprint (Yan et al., 2019) and
 966 inconsistent with further observational measures (Held et al., 2019; Menary et al., 2020;
 967 Robson et al., 2022). The improved historical AMOC changes simulated in CM4X are
 968 likely related to the refined horizontal atmospheric grid spacing used by CM4X (50 km)
 969 compared to that employed in CM4.0 (100 km) (see Appendix A1 in Part I (Griffies et
 970 al., 2024)). Previous studies have shown that climate models with coarse horizontal at-
 971 mospheric grid spacing overestimate aerosol indirect effect (Donner et al., 2016; Sato et
 972 al., 2018; Zhao et al., 2018a). The impact of the horizontal atmospheric grid spacing on
 973 the aerosol indirect effect deserves more future investigation. The static vegetation ap-
 974 proach (no land use change, no CO2 fertilization effect, and no demography change) em-
 975 ployed in CM4X historical simulations might also contribute to the different simulated
 976 historical AMOC changes compared to those simulated in CM4.0 (again, see Appendix
 977 A2 in Part I (Griffies et al., 2024)). Additional experiments in future studies are needed
 978 to fully understand the improvement in simulated historical AMOC changes in CM4X.
 979 In Figure 34 we also show the AMOC strength for the SSP5-8.5 scenario experiment, whereby
 980 the AMOC weakens starting around year 2000 in CM4.0 and CM4X, with the year 2100
 981 strength in each model less than half their pre-industrial strength.

982 6.4 Watermass transformation in the subpolar North Atlantic

983 Figure 35 shows the time-mean of the water mass budget (diagnosed following Drake
 984 et al. (2024)) in potential density coordinates,

$$985 \quad \partial_t \mathcal{M}_{\geq} = \Psi_{\geq} + \mathcal{S}_{\geq} + \mathcal{G} \quad (4)$$

986 for two key regions of the Subpolar North Atlantic. $\mathcal{M}_{\geq} = \mathcal{M}_{\geq}(\sigma_2, t)$ is the mass of
 987 water denser than σ_2 at time t within a given region; Ψ_{\geq} is the total transport into the
 988 region for waters denser than σ_2 ; \mathcal{S}_{\geq} is direct addition of seawater mass from boundary
 989 fluxes; and \mathcal{G} is the total water mass transformation rate (positive when it tends to in-
 990 crease the mass of denser water). We further decompose $\Psi_{\geq} = \sum \Psi_{\geq}^{(\text{boundary})}$ into con-

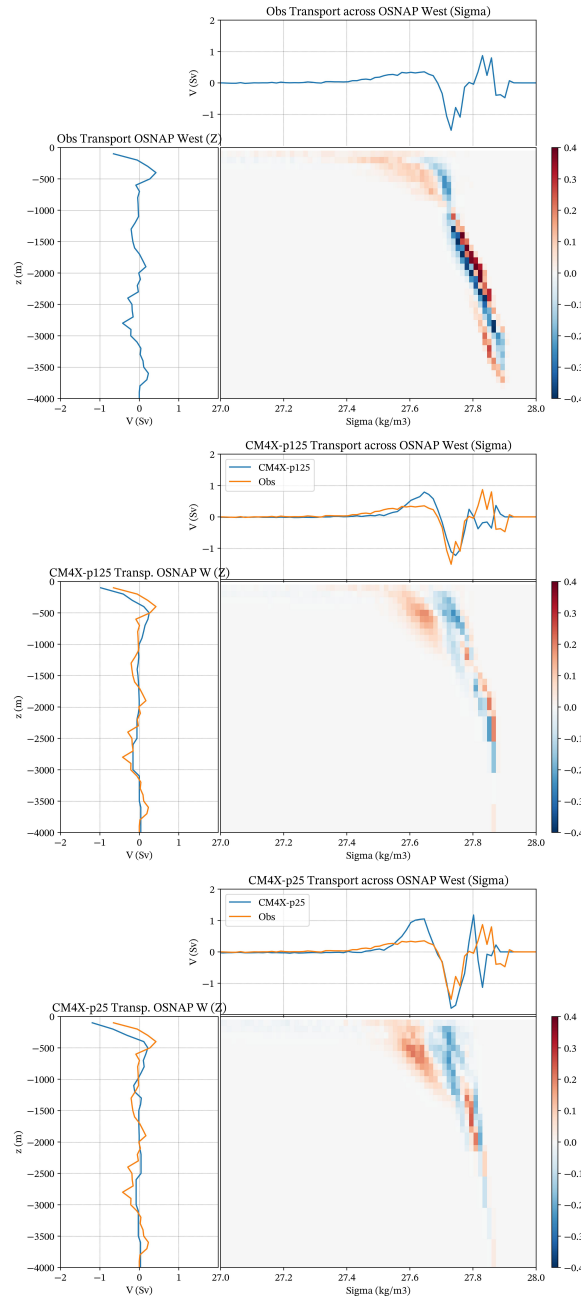


Figure 31. The Sigma-z diagram of volume transport across OSNAP West for OSNAP observations (Fu et al., 2023) (top), CM4X-p125 (middle), and CM4X-p25 (bottom), all computed over years 2014-2020. The color shading in each panel shows the integrated volume transport (Sv) across each subsection over each potential density (σ_0) bin (x-axis) and depth (z) bin (y-axis); the integrated transport across each subsection over each potential density bin summed over the entire depth range is shown in the blue curve above; the integrated transport across each subsection at each depth bin summed over the entire potential density range is shown in the blue curve on the left. The line plots for the CM4X results have the OSNAP measurements plotted for easier comparison.

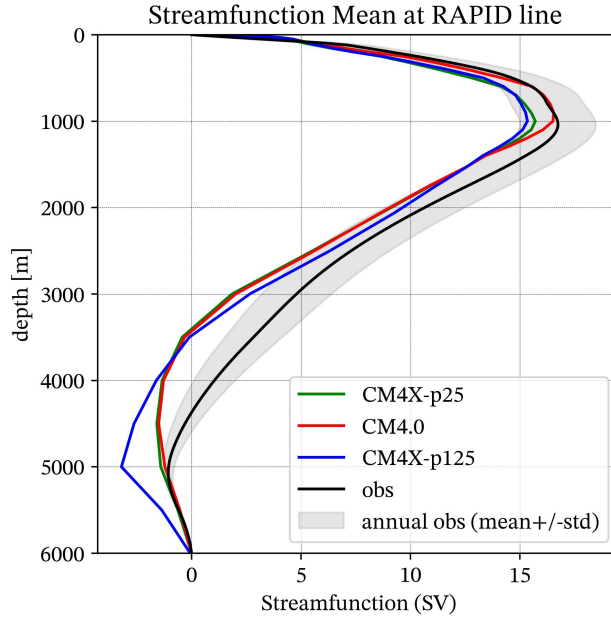


Figure 32. Climatological annual mean AMOC streamfunction strength across the RAPID section (26.5°N) for the models computed over years 2004-2022 using CM4.0, CM4X-p25, and CM4X-p125, in comparison with the RAPID observations over the period of 2004-2022.

991 tributions from different sections along the regions' boundaries and $\mathcal{G} \equiv \sum \mathcal{G}^{(\text{process})}$
 992 to distinguish contributions from boundary fluxes $\mathcal{G}^{(\text{BF})}$ (primarily due to air-sea fluxes
 993 of heat, salt, and freshwater), parameterized mixing processes $\mathcal{G}^{(\text{mix})}$, and spurious nu-
 994 merical mixing $\mathcal{G}^{(\text{Spn})}$. All terms are diagnosed directly from mass, heat, and salt ten-
 995 dencies, except for the spurious numerical mixing $\mathcal{G}^{(\text{Spn})}$, which we identify as the bud-
 996 get residual (see Drake et al. (2024) for details). Because we use monthly-mean budget
 997 tendencies that are binned online into depth coordinates, however, some error may be
 998 introduced by the omission of sub-monthly correlations between the tendencies and σ_2 .

999 In the Labrador Sea (Figure 35a,b), there is a nearly perfect time-mean balance
 1000 between surface-forced water mass transformations (peaking at -7 Sv at $\sigma_2 = 36.6\text{ kg/m}^3$)
 1001 and export across the OSNAP-West section. Contributions from other terms, such as
 1002 the inflow of dense water through Davis Strait and local transformation by mixing pro-
 1003 cesses, are negligible. In the Irminger Sea and Iceland Basin (Figure 35c,d), by contrast,
 1004 the peak surface-forced water mass transformation is weaker (10 Sv) and occurs at a lighter
 1005 density (36.2 kg/m^3) than what is exported southward across the OSNAP-East section,
 1006 which peaks at 15 Sv for waters denser than $\sigma_2 = 36.4\text{ kg/m}^3$. The difference between
 1007 the transformation and overturning transport is due to 1) relatively dense Nordic Sea
 1008 waters overflowing across the Greenland Scotland Ridge (peaking at 36.6 kg/m^3) and 2)
 1009 spurious numerical entrainment of the lighter surface-forced waters (as opposed to pa-
 1010 rameterized entrainment, which is relatively weak). These model results are qualitatively
 1011 consistent with the observation-based analysis of (Evans et al., 2023), in that the total
 1012 surface-forced water mass transformation peaks at a lighter density than the overturn-
 1013 ing across OSNAP and that interior mixing processes play a non-negligible role in this
 1014 transformation. In both cases, the differences between CM4Xp25 and CM4Xp125 are
 1015 relatively modest: due to slightly less spurious numerical mixing, CM4Xp125 appears
 1016 to export less deep water across OSNAP-East at the peak density but more at the high-
 1017 est densities.

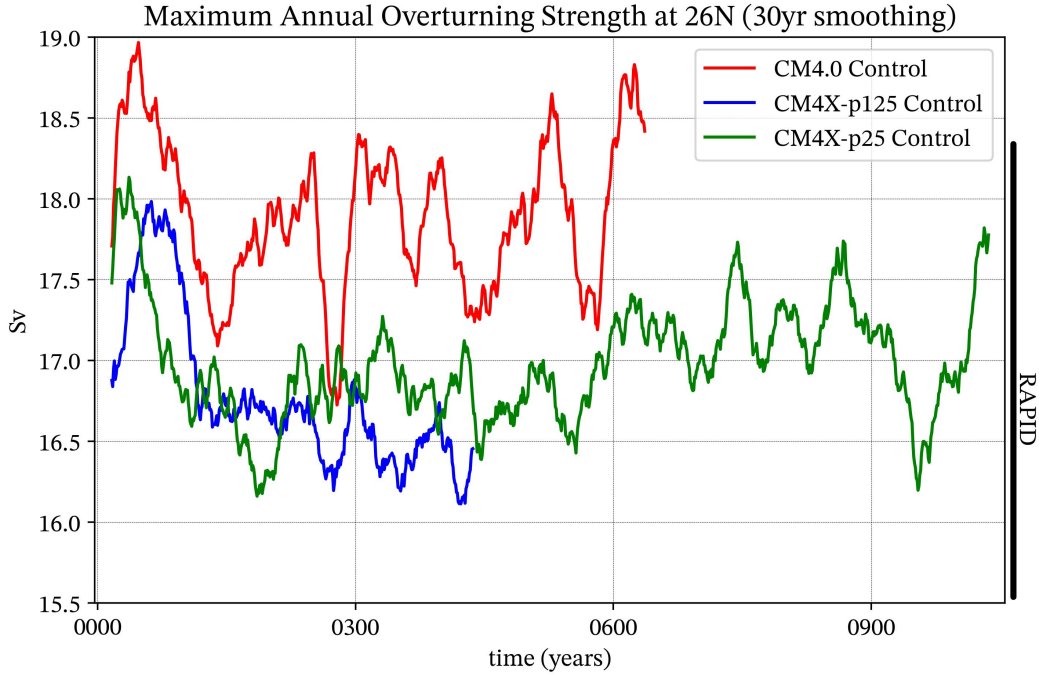


Figure 33. Time series of the maximum annual mean AMOC strength across the RAPID section (26.5°N) for the preindustrial control simulations using CM4.0, CM4X-25, and CM4X-p125. The time series are smoothed with a 30-year running mean. The dark line on the right depicts the range (mean \pm one standard deviation of annual mean) of the observed maximum annual mean AMOC strength across the RAPID section over the period of 2004-2022.

1018 Figure 35e shows the spatial distribution of surface-forced water mass transforma-
 1019 tions at the isopycnal of peak export across the OSNAP arrays in each region. In the
 1020 Irminger Sea and Iceland Basin, transformations are concentrated immediately down-
 1021 stream of the Denmark Strait, further downstream along the East Greenland Current,
 1022 along the Reykjanes Ridge, and on the southern edge of the Iceland Faroe Ridge, qual-
 1023 itatively consistent with observation-based estimates (Petit et al., 2020). In the Labrador
 1024 Sea, transformations are concentrated along the northwestern continental slope, also qual-
 1025 itatively consistent with observation-based estimates (Zou et al., 2024).

1026 As discussed in Section 6.3, the deep water export across OSNAP-West is unre-
 1027 realistically strong in both CM4X-p25 and CM4X-p125. Our water mass analysis suggests
 1028 this result is a direct result of too-high surface-forced water mass transformations, sup-
 1029 porting the previous section’s hypothesis that this is related to a bias in dense layer out-
 1030 crop areas or mixed-layer depths. Furthermore, our analysis suggests that the light and
 1031 shallow biases of the CM4X AMOC is in part attributable to spurious numerical mix-
 1032 ing, which transforms a few Sv of inflowing dense Nordic waters (with $36.8 \text{ kg/m}^3 \leq \sigma_2 \leq$
 1033 37.2 kg/m^3) towards lighter density classes.

1034 6.5 Conclusions regarding the North Atlantic simulations

1035 While representation of the deep western boundary current is expected to play a
 1036 role in altering Gulf Stream vertical structure, Ezer (2016), Schoonover et al. (2017) and
 1037 Debreu et al. (2022) stress the importance of realistically resolving a smooth continen-
 1038 tal slope so to allow for realistic flow-topography interactions. Resolving flow-topography

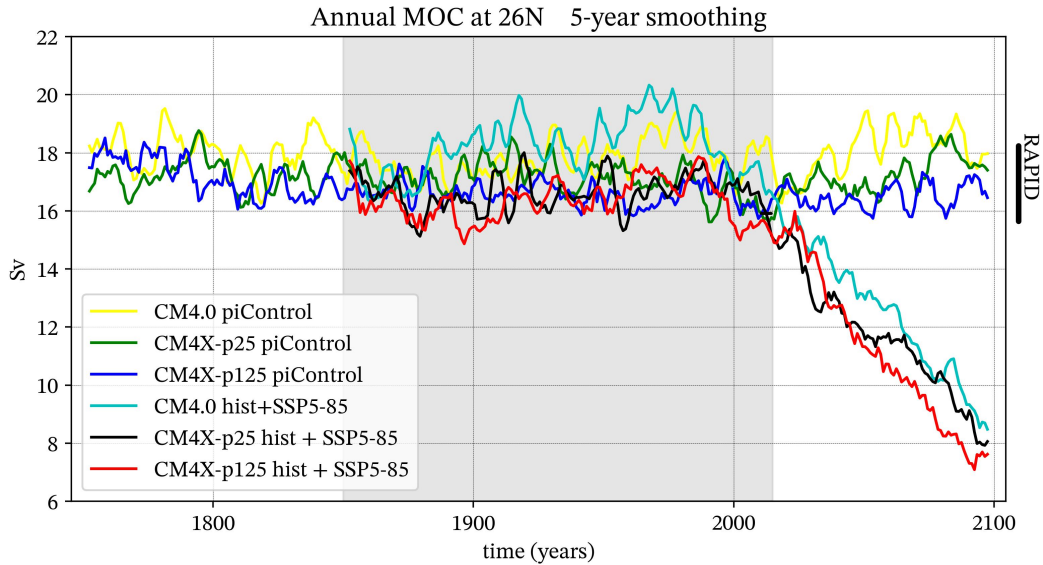


Figure 34. Time series from CM4.0, CM4X-p25, and CM4X-p125 of the maximum annual mean AMOC strength across the RAPID section (26.5°N) for the piControl, historical over years 1850-2014 (shaded region), and the SSP5-8.5 scenario experiment from 2014-2100. The time series are smoothed with a 5-year running mean. The dark line on the right depicts the range (mean \pm one standard deviation of annual mean) of the observed maximum annual mean AMOC strength across the RAPID section over the period of 2004-2022 for comparison.

1039 interactions is a function of model horizontal and vertical grid spacing. Likely the re-
 1040 sult of improvements on many fronts, Chassignet and Xu (2017) conclude that a tran-
 1041 sition from unrealistic to realistic representation of the Gulf Stream and offshore mesoscale
 1042 turbulence should be expected once reaching $1/12^{\circ}$ and finer. Hence, we withhold ex-
 1043 pectation that the Gulf Stream in CM4X should match that in Todd (2021), with the
 1044 slight improvements in CM4X-p125 relative to CM4X-p25 suggesting a trend in the right
 1045 direction.

1046 When compared to CM4.0, the CM4X simulations generally have a better repre-
 1047 sentation of the maximum AMOC strength across both the subpolar and the subtropi-
 1048 cal sections, and multidecadal AMOC changes in the CM4X historical simulations are
 1049 also improved. Comparing CM4X-p125 and CM4X-p25, the refined grid spacing in CM4X-
 1050 p125 leads to a slightly better AMOC representation across the OSNAP section, espe-
 1051 cially across the OSNAP West subsection enclosing the Labrador Sea with improved (re-
 1052 duced) density contrast between the Labrador Sea boundary outflow and inflow. A lin-
 1053 ear relationship between subpolar gyre strength and the maximum subpolar overturn-
 1054 ing strength is generally observed in many climate models (Meccia et al., 2021). Thus,
 1055 the relatively weaker subpolar gyre in CM4X-p125 compared to CM4X-p25 is consistent
 1056 with the reduction in the maximum AMOC strength across the OSNAP section.

1057 Many North Atlantic modeling biases in CM4.0 also exist in CM4X, such as the
 1058 overestimation of winter deep convection in the Labrador Sea, the missing of winter deep
 1059 convection in the Greenland Sea, the underestimation of the strength of the dense Nordic
 1060 Sea overflows across the OSNAP section, the shallow AMOC depth, and the weak low-
 1061 frequency AMOC variability in the control simulation. These long-standing modeling
 1062 biases in the North Atlantic, which often appear in coupled climate models, are key ar-
 1063 eas for future improvements and more experiments are needed to address the processes

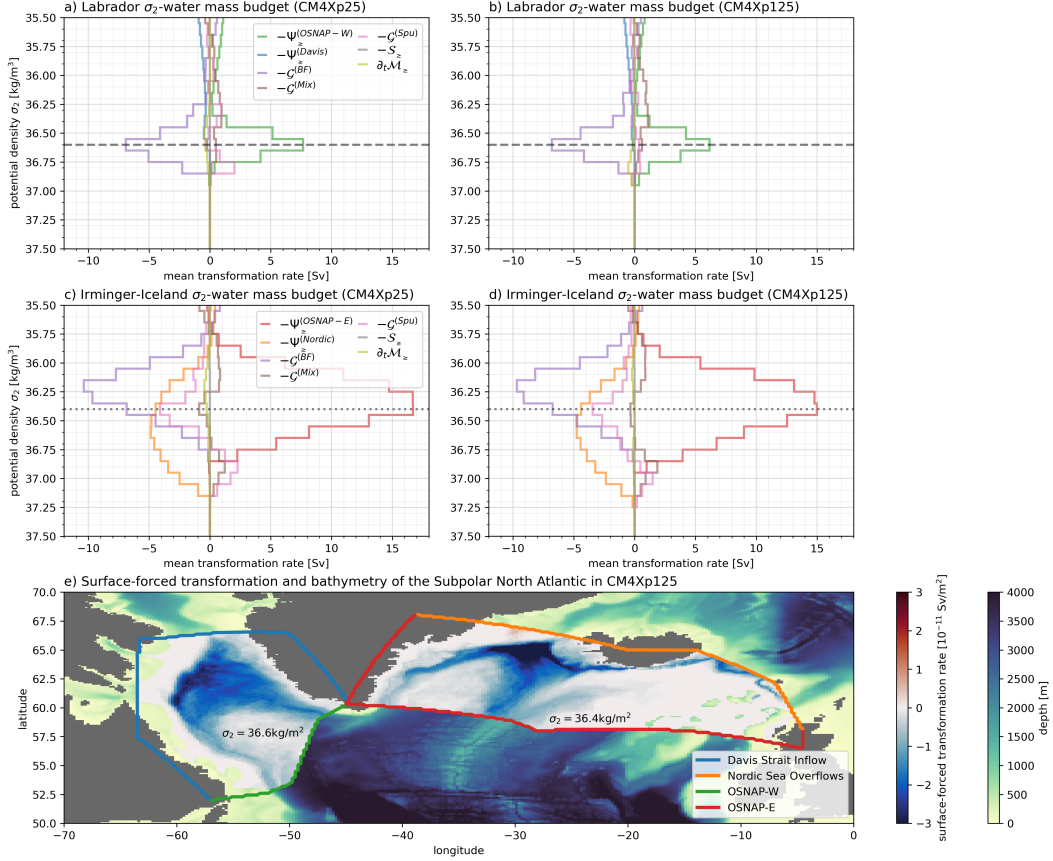


Figure 35. Water mass budgets in potential density (σ_2) coordinates in in CM4Xp25 (a,c) and CM4Xp125 (b,d,e) for a Labrador Sea region (a,b) and a Irminger Sea and Iceland Basin region (c,d). In panel (e), the Labrador region is bounded to the northwest by a Davis Strait section (blue) and to the southeast by the OSNAP-West section (green; see Fu et al. (2023)) while the Irminger-Iceland region is bounded to the northeast by the Greenland-Scotland Ridge (orange) and the to south by the OSNAP-East section (red). Within the two regions, colors represent the rates of water mass transformation per unit area across the isopycnal of peak transport across the OSNAP array (grey lines in a-d) due to boundary fluxes (i.e. the integrand of $\mathcal{G}^{(\text{BF})}$, which is dominated by air-sea heat and freshwater fluxes) Outside of the two regions, colors represent seafloor depth. All terms in the water mass budget are computed following Drake et al. (2024) and represent the 2010-2024 time-mean of monthly-mean transformation rates diagnosed from the forced (historical + SSP5-8.5) scenarios. [Overturning transport values differ from those reported in Section 6.3 because we use different density coordinates, averaging intervals, and forcing scenarios.]

1064 involved in reducing these biases. In particular, future improvements in the strength of
 1065 the dense Nordic Sea overflows (including both the Denmark Strait overflow and the Iceland-
 1066 Scotland overflow) across the subpolar section will enhance the vertical stratification in
 1067 the Labrador Sea and thus reduce the Labrador Sea winter deep convection strength,
 1068 as well as deepen the downstream AMOC. Future improvements in the Arctic dense wa-
 1069 ter formation might also contribute to the improvement of the dense Nordic Sea over-
 1070 flows and the downstream AMOC.

1071 7 Strategies for ocean climate model development

1072 CM4X exemplifies the value of a hierarchy of coupled climate models where the only
 1073 difference is the grid spacing. Such hierarchies provide a means to expose the importance,
 1074 or lack thereof, for the enhanced representation of dynamical processes. Having two or
 1075 more model configurations among a hierarchy provokes questions that go unasked with
 1076 a single model. We propose that the expansion of model phase space to include carefully
 1077 built hierarchies, such as the CM4X whose members represent a vigorous ocean mesoscale,
 1078 is a useful, if not necessary, step to furthering the science going into climate models and
 1079 the science emerging from simulations.

1080 Although CM4X-p125 reaches thermal equilibrium in a remarkably short time (see
 1081 the Part I analysis in Griffies et al. (2024)), the analysis in this paper revealed that there
 1082 remain many familiar biases in need of being addressed in future development projects.
 1083 Particular biases revealed in our analysis include: weak interannual variability in the trop-
 1084 ics, as revealed by the skewness of the sea level (Figure 3 in Section 2.2); a poor repre-
 1085 sentation of the eastern boundary upwelling zones, in part due to under-resolved ocean
 1086 and atmosphere dynamics as well as the representation of low level clouds (Section 3);
 1087 biases in the sea ice seasonal cycle, reflecting a number of possible process biases (Sec-
 1088 tion 4); overly strong ventilation properties of mode and intermediate waters of the South-
 1089 ern Ocean, likely related to under-resolved mesoscale eddy processes at the high latitudes
 1090 (Figure 9 of Part I); an overly diffuse Gulf Stream as it leaves the American coast, pos-
 1091 sibly due to over-dissipation (Sections 2.2 and 6.1); overly shallow overflows in the North
 1092 Atlantic (Figure 27) and overly deep mixed layers in the Labrador Sea (Figure 28), likely
 1093 due to under-resolved mesoscale processes and too much entrainment in the deep over-
 1094 flows. Even with these remaining issues, each of the biases are generally reduced in CM4X-
 1095 p125 relative to CM4X-p25. From an oceanographic perspective, the key advantage of
 1096 rapid thermal equilibration is that it allows one to examine ocean properties within a
 1097 thermally equilibrated climate model, with those properties not having drastically drifted
 1098 outside their physically sensible range. So although CM4X-p125 has many biases in need
 1099 of further reduction, we propose that it provides a powerful venue for studying climate
 1100 dynamics.

1101 There are compelling arguments that, for purposes of centennial climate studies
 1102 and climate change projections, the community should prioritize advances in numerical
 1103 and computational methods to facilitate the direct simulation of the ocean mesoscale (Silvestri
 1104 et al., 2024). The order of magnitude reduction in thermal equilibration time found in
 1105 the CM4X-p125 simulation, relative to CM4X-p25, bolsters that argument. That is, the
 1106 finer ocean grid used in CM4X-p125 has four times the number of grid points and uses
 1107 half the time step; however, this factor of eight added expense for CM4X-p125 is offset
 1108 by its factor of ten shorter thermal equilibration time. Advances signaled by CM4X-p125
 1109 were supported by advances in the numerical methods related to the MOM6 vertical La-
 1110 grangian dynamical core (Griffies et al., 2020). In particular, the quasi-isopycnal verti-
 1111 cal coordinate used in the ocean interior greatly reduces spurious diapycnal mixing rel-
 1112 ative to a geopotential-like coordinate (Adcroft et al., 2019). Spurious numerical mix-
 1113 ing is very difficult to minimize using standard Eulerian based numerical methods in the
 1114 presence of a strong downscale cascade of tracer variance enabled by mesoscale eddies
 1115 (Griffies et al., 2000). Developments leading to the MOM6 dynamical core were partly
 1116 motivated to address this difficulty, particularly when confronted with the hundreds to
 1117 thousands of mesoscale eddy turnover timescales accessed by climate simulations, thus
 1118 allowing for seemingly small numerical errors to accumulate to have nontrivial detrimen-
 1119 tal impacts on stratification. Coupling advances in numerical methods to advances in
 1120 computational hardware and software could render CM4X-p125 the coarsest, not the finest,
 1121 member of a future climate model hierarchy.

1122 8 Open Research

1123 Software comprising the model as well as the software used for creating the figures
1124 will be placed on Zenodo at the revision stage of this work.

1125 Observation-based datasets used in this paper are cited locally. We are indebted
1126 to the many efforts of the various programs providing observational-based data used to
1127 help evaluate these simulations, including the following.

- 1128 • The Argo program provides data that were collected and made freely available by
1129 the International Argo Program and the national programs that contribute to it,
1130 with access available from

1131 <http://www.argo.ucsd.edu> and <http://argo.jcommops.org>

1132 The Argo Program is part of the Global Ocean Observing System.

- 1133 • OSNAP data were collected and made freely available by the OSNAP (Overturn-
1134 ing in the Subpolar North Atlantic Program) project and all the national programs
1135 that contribute to it (www.o-snap.org). The DOI for this data set is

1136 <https://doi.org/10.35090/gatech/70342>

1137 Acknowledgments

1138 This project started in May 2020, during the early stages of the Covid-19 pandemic shut-
1139 down. We are grateful to the GFDL computer operations team for keeping the compu-
1140 tational resources reliable during the shutdown. We thank the GFDL management for
1141 providing the computer resources needed for the development and analysis documented
1142 here. We thank John Dunne and Matthew Harrison for very helpful comments on early
1143 drafts of this manuscript. Krista Dunne, Sergey Malyshev and Chris Milly kindly pro-
1144 vided expertise in helping to update the rivers and lakes for use with the C192 atmo-
1145 sphere coupled to the p125 ocean. The statements, findings, conclusions, and recommen-
1146 dations are those of the author(s) and do not necessarily reflect the views of the National
1147 Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, or the U.S. Department of Commerce.

- 1148 • The statements, findings, conclusions, and recommendations are those of the au-
1149 thor(s) and do not necessarily reflect the views of the National Oceanic and At-
1150 mospheric Administration, or the U.S. Department of Commerce.
- 1151 • A.A. was supported by Award NA18OAR4320123 from the National Oceanic and
1152 Atmospheric Administration, U.S. Department of Commerce.
- 1153 • R.B. was supported under NSF Division of Polar Programs Grant NSF2319828.
- 1154 • C.Y.C. was supported by Award NA19OAR4310365 from the National Oceanic
1155 and Atmospheric Administration, U.S. Department of Commerce.
- 1156 • H.F.D. was supported by the NOAA Climate and Global Change Postdoctoral Fel-
1157 lowship Program, administered by UCAR's Cooperative Programs for the Advance-
1158 ment of Earth System Science (CPAESS) under Award NA18NWS4620043B.
- 1159 • H.K. acknowledges the support from Natural Environment Research Council grants
1160 NE/T013494/1 and NE/W001543/1.
- 1161 • M.L. was supported by award NA18OAR4320123 and NA23OAR4320198 from the
1162 National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, U.S. Department of Commerce.
- 1163 • G.A.M was supported by NSF (PLR-1425989) and UKRI (MR/W013835/1).
- 1164 • A.S. was supported by Schmidt Sciences, LLC under the M²LInES project.
- 1165 • K.E.T acknowledges support from the Southern Ocean Carbon and Climate Ob-
1166 servations and Modeling (SOCCOM) Project under NSF Awards PLR-1425989
1167 and OPP-1936222 and 2332379.
- 1168 • L.Z. was supported by Schmidt Sciences, LLC under the M²LInES project, NSF
1169 grant OCE 1912357 and NOAA CVP NA19OAR4310364.

- 1170 • W.Z. was supported by the National Science Foundation under Grant Number F1240-
 1171 01(NSF OCE 1912357). Any opinions, findings, and conclusions or recommenda-
 1172 tions expressed in this material are those of the author(s) and do not necessar-
 1173 ily reflect the views of the National Science Foundation.

1174 References

- 1175 Adcroft, A., Anderson, W., Blanton, C., Bushuk, M., Dufour, C. O., Dunne, J. P.,
 1176 ... Zhang, R. (2019). The GFDL global ocean and sea ice model OM4.0:
 1177 Model description and simulation features. *Journal of Advances in Modeling*
 1178 *the Earth System, JAMES*. doi: 10.1029/2019MS001726
- 1179 Albert, A., Echevin, V., Lévy, M., & Aumont, O. (2010). Impact of nearshore
 1180 wind stress curl on coastal circulation and primary productivity in the Peru
 1181 upwelling system. *Journal of Geophysical Research: Oceans*, 115(C12).
 1182 Retrieved from [https://agupubs.onlinelibrary.wiley.com/doi/abs/](https://agupubs.onlinelibrary.wiley.com/doi/abs/10.1029/2010JC006569)
 1183 10.1029/2010JC006569 doi: <https://doi.org/10.1029/2010JC006569>
- 1184 Andrews, T., Gregory, J. M., Paynter, D., Silvers, L. G., Zhou, C., Mauritsen, T., ...
 1185 Titchner, H. (2018). Accounting for changing temperature patterns increases
 1186 historical estimates of climate sensitivity. *Geophysical Research Letters*, 45,
 1187 8490–8499. doi: 10.1029/2018GL078887
- 1188 Argo. (2023). *Argo float data and metadata from Global Data Assembly Centre*
 1189 *(Argo GDAC)* [dataset]. SEANOE. Retrieved from [https://www.seanoe.org/](https://www.seanoe.org/data/00311/42182/)
 1190 [data/00311/42182/](https://www.seanoe.org/data/00311/42182/) doi: 10.17882/42182
- 1191 Armour, K. C., Bitz, C. M., & Roe, G. H. (2013). Time-varying climate sensitiv-
 1192 ity from regional feedbacks. *Journal of Climate*, 26, 4518–4534. doi: 10.1175/
 1193 JCLI-D-12-00544.1
- 1194 Bakun, A., Black, B. A., Bograd, S. J., Garcia-Reyes, M., Miller, A. J., Rykaczewski,
 1195 R. R., & Sydeman, W. J. (2015). Anticipated effects of climate change on
 1196 coastal upwelling ecosystems. *Current Climate Change Reports*, 1, 85–93.
- 1197 Beadling, R. L. (2023). Global consequences of regional connectivity along the
 1198 Antarctic margin. *Journal of Geophysical Research: Oceans*, 128. doi: 10
 1199 .1029/2023JC019908
- 1200 Beadling, R. L., Krasting, J. P., Griffies, S. M., Hurlin, W. J., Bronselear, B., Rus-
 1201 sell, J. L., ... Winton, M. (2022). Importance of the Antarctic Slope Current
 1202 in the Southern Ocean response to ice sheet melt and wind stress change.
 1203 *Journal of Geophysical Research - Oceans*, 127. doi: 10.1029/2021jc017608
- 1204 Beadling, R. L., Russell, J. L., Stouffer, R. J., Mazloff, M., Talley, L. D., Goodman,
 1205 P. J., ... Pandde, A. (2020). Representation of Southern Ocean properties
 1206 across coupled model intercomparison project generations: CMIP3 to CMIP6.
 1207 *Journal of Climate*, 33, 6555–6581. doi: 10.1175/JCLI-D-19-0970.1
- 1208 Bograd, S. J., Jacox, M. G., Hazen, E., Lovecchio, E., Montes, I., Buil, P. M., ...
 1209 Rykaczewski, R. R. (2023). Climate change impacts on eastern boundary up-
 1210 welling systems. *Annual Review of Marine Science*, 15(1), 303–328. Retrieved
 1211 from <https://doi.org/10.1146/annurev-marine-032122-021945> (PMID:
 1212 35850490) doi: 10.1146/annurev-marine-032122-021945
- 1213 Bronselaer, B., Winton, M., Griffies, S. M., Hurlin, W. J., Rodgers, K. B., Sergienko,
 1214 O. V., ... Russell, J. L. (2018). Change in future climate due to Antarctic
 1215 meltwater. *Nature*, 564(7734), 53.
- 1216 Bushuk, M., Zhang, Y., Winton, M., Hurlin, B., Delworth, T., Lu, F., ... others
 1217 (2022). Mechanisms of regional Arctic sea ice predictability in two dynamical
 1218 seasonal forecast systems. *J. Climate*, 35(13), 4207–4231.
- 1219 Ceppi, P., Myers, T. A., Nowack, P., Wall, C. J., & Zelinka, M. D. (2024). Implica-
 1220 tions of a pervasive climate model bias for low-cloud feedback. *Geophysical Re-*
 1221 *search Letters*, 51. doi: 10.1029/2024GL110525
- 1222 Chassignet, E. P., & Marshall, D. P. (2008). Gulf Stream separation in numerical

- 1223 ocean models. *Geophysical Monograph Series*, 177. doi: <https://doi.org/10>
1224 .1029/177GM05
- 1225 Chassignet, E. P., & Xu, X. (2017). Impact of horizontal resolution (1/12° to 1/50°)
1226 on Gulf Stream separation, penetration, and variability. *Journal of Physical*
1227 *Oceanography*, 47(10), 1999–2021. doi: 10.1175/JPO-D-17-0031.1
- 1228 Cheng, L., Trenberth, K. E., Fasullo, J., Boyer, T., Abraham, J., & Zhu, J. (2017).
1229 Improved estimates of ocean heat content from 1960 to 2015. *Science Ad-*
1230 *vances*, 3(3), e1601545. doi: 10.1126/sciadv.1601545
- 1231 Cunningham, S. A., Kanzow, T., Rayner, D., Baringer, M. O., Johns, W. E.,
1232 Marotzke, J., ... Bryden, H. L. (2007). Temporal variability of the At-
1233 lantic meridional overturning circulation at 26.5° n. *Science*, 317. doi:
1234 10.1126/science.1141304
- 1235 Danabasoglu, G., Large, W., & Briegleb, B. (2010). Climate impacts of parameter-
1236 ized Nordic Sea overflows. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, 115, C11005. doi:
1237 10.1029/2010JC006243
- 1238 Danabasoglu, G., Yeager, S. G., Bailey, D., Behrens, E., Bentsen, M., Bi, D., ...
1239 Wang, Q. (2014). North Atlantic simulations in Coordinated Ocean-ice Refer-
1240 ence Experiments phase II (CORE-II). Part I: Mean states. *Ocean Modelling*,
1241 73(0), 76–107. Retrieved from [http://www.sciencedirect.com/science/](http://www.sciencedirect.com/science/article/pii/S1463500313001868)
1242 [article/pii/S1463500313001868](http://www.sciencedirect.com/science/article/pii/S1463500313001868) doi: 10.1016/j.ocemod.2013.10.005
- 1243 Dangendorf, S., Hay, C., Calafat, F. M., Marcos, M., Piecuch, C. G., Berk, K., &
1244 Jensen, J. (2019). Steric sea level rise in GFDL CM4 and ESM4: Insights
1245 into model drift and water mass representation. *Nature Climate Change*, 9,
1246 705–710. doi: 10.1038/s41558-019-0531-8
- 1247 Debreu, L., Kevlahan, N., & Marchesiello, P. (2022). Improved Gulf Stream sepa-
1248 ration through Brinkman penalization. *Ocean Modeling*, 179. doi: <https://doi>
1249 [.org/10.1016/j.ocemod.2022.102121](https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ocemod.2022.102121)
- 1250 Delworth, T. L., Broccoli, A. J., Rosati, A., Stouffer, R. J., Bala, J., Beesley, J. A.,
1251 ... Zhang, R. (2006). GFDL’s CM2 global coupled climate models - Part 1:
1252 Formulation and simulation characteristics. *Journal of Climate*, 19, 643–674.
1253 doi: 10.1175/JCLI3629.1
- 1254 DeRepentigny, P., Jahn, A., Holland, M. M., & Smith, A. (2020). Arctic sea ice in
1255 two configurations of the CESM2 during the 20th and 21st centuries. *J. Geo-*
1256 *phys. Res.: Oceans*, 125(9), e2020JC016133.
- 1257 DeVries, T., Le Quéré, C., Berthet, S., Hauck, J., Ilyina, T., Landschützer, P.,
1258 ... Séférian, R. (2019). Decadal trends in the ocean carbon sink. *Pro-*
1259 *ceedings of the National Academy of Sciences*, 116, 11646–11651. doi:
1260 10.1073/pnas.1900371116
- 1261 Donner, L. J., O’Brien, T. A., Rieger, D., Vogel, B., & Cooke, W. F. (2016). Are at-
1262 mospheric updrafts a key to unlocking climate forcing and sensitivity? *Atmo-*
1263 *spheric Chemistry and Physics*, 16. doi: 10.5194/acp-16-12983-2016
- 1264 Donohue, K. A., Tracey, K. L., Watts, D. R., Chidichimo, M. P., & Chereskin,
1265 T. K. (2016). Mean Antarctic Circumpolar Current transport measured
1266 in Drake Passage. *Geophysical Research Letters*, 43, 11,760–11,767. doi:
1267 10.1002/2016GL070319
- 1268 Drake, H. F., Bailey, S., Dussin, R., Griffies, S. M., Krasting, J. P., MacGilchrist,
1269 G. A., ... Zika, J. D. (2024, April). *Water mass transformation bud-*
1270 *gets in finite-volume generalized vertical coordinate ocean models*. Re-
1271 trieved 2024-05-31, from [https://essopenarchive.org/users/242115/](https://essopenarchive.org/users/242115/articles/788549-water-mass-transformation-budgets-in-finite)
1272 [articles/788549-water-mass-transformation-budgets-in-finite](https://essopenarchive.org/users/242115/articles/788549-water-mass-transformation-budgets-in-finite)
1273 [-volume-generalized-vertical-coordinate-ocean-models?commit=](https://essopenarchive.org/users/242115/articles/788549-water-mass-transformation-budgets-in-finite)
1274 [e6178873ac99d67c98963b54ba60699d57b7703f](https://essopenarchive.org/users/242115/articles/788549-water-mass-transformation-budgets-in-finite) doi: 10.22541/essoar
1275 .171284935.57181910/v1
- 1276 Dunne, J. P., Horowitz, L. W., Adcroft, A., Ginoux, P., Held, I. M., John, J. G., ...
1277 Zhao, M. (2020). The GFDL Earth system model version 4.1 (GFDL-ESM4.1):

- 1278 Model description and simulation characteristics. *Journal of Advances in Mod-*
 1279 *eling Earth Systems*, 12. doi: 10.1029/2019MS002015
- 1280 Dunne, J. P., John, J. G., Hallberg, R. W., Griffies, S. M., Shevliakova, E. N.,
 1281 Stouffer, R. J., . . . Zadeh, N. (2012). GFDL’s ESM2 global coupled
 1282 climate-carbon Earth System Models Part I: Physical formulation and base-
 1283 line simulation characteristics. *Journal of Climate*, 25, 6646–6665. doi:
 1284 10.1175/JCLI-D-11-00560.1
- 1285 Enriquez, A. G., & Friehe, C. A. (1995). Effects of wind stress and wind stress
 1286 curl variability on coastal upwelling. *Journal of Physical Oceanography*,
 1287 25(7), 1651 - 1671. Retrieved from [https://journals.ametsoc.org/view/](https://journals.ametsoc.org/view/journals/phoc/25/7/1520-0485_1995_025_1651_eowsaw_2_0_co_2.xml)
 1288 [journals/phoc/25/7/1520-0485_1995_025_1651_eowsaw_2_0_co_2.xml](https://doi.org/10.1175/1520-0485(1995)025<1651:EOWSAW>2.0.CO;2) doi:
 1289 [https://doi.org/10.1175/1520-0485\(1995\)025<1651:EOWSAW>2.0.CO;2](https://doi.org/10.1175/1520-0485(1995)025<1651:EOWSAW>2.0.CO;2)
- 1290 Evans, D. G., Holliday, N. P., Bacon, S., & Le Bras, I. (2023, June). Mixing and
 1291 air–sea buoyancy fluxes set the time-mean overturning circulation in the sub-
 1292 polar North Atlantic and Nordic Seas. *Ocean Science*, 19(3), 745–768. Re-
 1293 trieved 2023-09-18, from [https://os.copernicus.org/articles/19/745/](https://os.copernicus.org/articles/19/745/2023/)
 1294 2023/ (Publisher: Copernicus GmbH) doi: 10.5194/os-19-745-2023
- 1295 Eyring, V., Bony, S., Meehl, J. A., Senior, C., Stevens, B., Stouffer, R. J., & Taylor,
 1296 K. E. (2016). Overview of the Coupled Model Intercomparison Project Phase
 1297 6 (CMIP6) experimental design and organisation. *Geoscientific Model Develop-*
 1298 *ment*, 9, 1937–1958. Retrieved from [http://www.geosci-model-dev.net/9/](http://www.geosci-model-dev.net/9/1937/2016/)
 1299 1937/2016/ doi: 10.5194/gmd-9-1937-2016
- 1300 Ezer, T. (2016). Revisiting the problem of the Gulf Stream separation: on the rep-
 1301 resenation of topography in ocean models with different types of vertical grids.
 1302 *Ocean Modelling*, 104. doi: <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ocemod.2016.05.008>
- 1303 Feltham, D. L. (2008). Sea ice rheology. *Annu. Rev. Fluid Mech.*, 40, 91–112.
- 1304 FRAM Group. (1991). An eddy-resolving model of the Southern Ocean. *EOS*
 1305 *Transactions of the American Geophysical Union*, 72, 169–175. doi: 10.1029/
 1306 90EO00128
- 1307 Fraser, A., Wongpan, P., Langhorne, P., Klekociuk, A., Kusahara, K., Lannuzel,
 1308 D., . . . others (2023). Antarctic landfast sea ice: A review of its physics,
 1309 biogeochemistry and ecology. *Reviews of Geophysics*, 61(2), e2022RG000770.
- 1310 Frederikse, T., Landerer, F., Caron, L., Adhikari, S., Parkes, D., Humphrey, V. W.,
 1311 . . . Wu, Y.-H. (2020). The causes of sea-level rise since 1900. *Nature*,
 1312 584(7821), 393–397. doi: 10.1038/s41586-020-2591-3
- 1313 Frölicher, T. L., Sarmiento, J. L., Paynter, D. J., Dunne, J. P., Krasting, J. P., &
 1314 Winton, M. (2015). Dominance of the Southern Ocean in anthropogenic car-
 1315 bon and heat uptake in CMIP5 models. *Journal of Climate*, 28, 862–886. doi:
 1316 10.1175/JCLI-D-14-00117.1
- 1317 Fu, Y., Lozier, M. S., Biló, T. C., Bower, A. S., Cunningham, S. A., Cyr, F., . . .
 1318 Yashayaev, I. (2023). Seasonality of the meridional overturning circulation in
 1319 the subpolar north atlantic [dataset]. *Communications Earth & Environment*,
 1320 4(1), 181.
- 1321 Gent, P. R., Yeager, S. G., Neale, R. B., Levis, S., & Bailey, D. A. (2010). Improve-
 1322 ments in a half degree atmosphere/land version of the ccsm. *Climate Dynam-*
 1323 *ics*, 34, 819–833.
- 1324 Goddard, P., Dufour, C., Yin, J., Griffies, S. M., & Winton, M. (2017). CO2-
 1325 induced ocean warming of the Antarctic continental shelf in an eddying
 1326 global climate model. *Journal of Geophysical Research - Oceans*, 122. doi:
 1327 10.1002/2017JC012849
- 1328 Gordon, C., Rosati, A., & Gudgel, R. (2000). Tropical sensitivity of a coupled model
 1329 to specified isccp low clouds. *Journal of Climate*, 13(13), 2239–2260.
- 1330 Griffies, S. M., Adcroft, A., Alberty, M. S., Beadling, R. L., Bushuk, M., Chang,
 1331 C.-Y., . . . Zika, J. D. (2024). The GFDL-CM4X climate model hierarchy,
 1332 Part I: thermal properties and the mesoscale dominance hypothesis. *Journal of*

- 1333 *Advances in Modeling Earth Systems*.
- 1334 Griffies, S. M., Adcroft, A., & Hallberg, R. W. (2020). A primer on the vertical
1335 Lagrangian-remap method in ocean models based on finite volume generalized
1336 vertical coordinates. *Journal of Advances in Modeling Earth Systems*, *12*. doi:
1337 10.1029/2019MS001954
- 1338 Griffies, S. M., Danabasoglu, G., Durack, P. J., Adcroft, A. J., Balaji, V., Böning,
1339 C. W., ... Yeager, S. G. (2016). OMIP contribution to CMIP6: experimental
1340 and diagnostic protocol for the physical component of the ocean model inter-
1341 comparison project. *Geoscientific Model Development*, *9*, 3231–3296. doi:
1342 10.5194/gmd-9-3231-2016
- 1343 Griffies, S. M., Pacanowski, R. C., & Hallberg, R. W. (2000). Spurious diapycnal
1344 mixing associated with advection in a z -coordinate ocean model. *Monthly*
1345 *Weather Review*, *128*, 538–564. doi: 10.1175/1520-0493(2000)128<0538:
1346 SDMAWA>2.0.CO;2
- 1347 Griffies, S. M., Winton, M., Anderson, W. G., Benson, R., Delworth, T. L., Dufour,
1348 C., ... Zhang, R. (2015). Impacts on ocean heat from transient mesoscale
1349 eddies in a hierarchy of climate models. *Journal of Climate*, *28*, 952–977. doi:
1350 10.1175/JCLI-D-14-00353.1
- 1351 Griffies, S. M., Winton, M., Donner, L. J., Horowitz, L. W., Downes, S. M., Farneti,
1352 R., ... others (2011). The GFDL CM3 coupled climate model: Characteristics
1353 of the ocean and sea ice simulations. *J. Climate*, *24*(13), 3520–3544.
- 1354 Hallberg, R. W. (2013). Using a resolution function to regulate parameterizations
1355 of oceanic mesoscale eddy effects. *Ocean Modelling*, *72*, 92–103. doi: 10.1016/
1356 j.ocemod.2013.08.007
- 1357 Hallberg, R. W., Adcroft, A. J., Dunne, J. P., Krasting, J. P., & Stouffer, R.
1358 (2013). Sensitivity of twenty-first-century global-mean steric sea level rise
1359 to ocean model formulation. *Journal of Climate*, *26*, 2947–2956. doi:
1360 10.1175/JCLI-D-12-00506.1
- 1361 Hallberg, R. W., & Gnanadesikan, A. (2006). On the role of eddies in deter-
1362 mining the structure and response of the wind-driven southern hemisphere
1363 overturning: Results from the Modeling Eddies in the Southern Ocean
1364 (MESO) project. *Journal of Physical Oceanography*, *36*, 2232–2252. doi:
1365 10.1175/JPO2980.1
- 1366 Held, I. M., Guo, H., Adcroft, A., Dunne, J. P., Horowitz, L. W., Krasting, J., ...
1367 Zadeh, N. (2019). Structure and performance of GFDL’s CM4.0 climate
1368 model. *Journal of Advances in Modeling the Earth System*, *11*, 3691–3726. doi:
1369 10.1029/2019MS001829
- 1370 Heuzé, C. (2021). Antarctic Bottom Water and North Atlantic Deep Water in
1371 CMIP6 models. *Ocean Science*, *17*. doi: 10.5194/os-17-59-2021
- 1372 Holland, W. R. (1967). On the wind-driven circulation in an ocean with bottom to-
1373 pography. *Tellus*, *19*(4), 582–600. doi: 10.3402/tellusa.v19i4.9825
- 1374 Horvat, C. (2021). Marginal ice zone fraction benchmarks sea ice and climate model
1375 skill. *Nature Communications*, *12*(1), 2221.
- 1376 Huang, B., Liu, C., Banzon, V., Freeman, E., Graham, G., Hankins, B., ... Zhang,
1377 H.-M. (2020). Improvements of the daily optimum interpolation sea surface
1378 temperature (DOISST) Version 2.1. *Journal of Climate*, *34*, 2923–2939. doi:
1379 10.1175/JCLI-D-20-0166.1
- 1380 Hughes, C. W., & De Cuevas, B. A. (2001). Why western boundary currents in
1381 realistic oceans are inviscid: A link between form stress and bottom pres-
1382 sure torques. *Journal of Physical Oceanography*, *31*(10), 2871–2885. doi:
1383 10.1175/1520-0485(2001)031<2871:WWBCIR>2.0.CO;2
- 1384 Hughes, C. W., Thompson, A. F., & Wilson, C. (2010). Identification of jets and
1385 mixing barriers from sea level and vorticity measurements using simple statis-
1386 tics. *Ocean Modelling*, *32*, 44–57. doi: 10.1016/j.ocemod.2009.10.004
- 1387 Huneke, W. G. C., Morrison, A. K., & Hogg, A. M. (2022). Spatial and subannual

- 1388 variability of the Antarctic Slope Current in an eddying ocean sea ice model.
 1389 *Journal of Physical Oceanography*, 52, 347–361. doi: 10.1175/jpo-d-21-0143.1
- 1390 Hurlburt, H. E., & Hogan, P. J. (2000). Impact of 1/8 to 1/64 resolution
 1391 on Gulf Stream model-data comparisons in basin-scale subtropical at-
 1392 lantic ocean models. *Dynamics of Atmospheres and Oceans*, 32. doi:
 1393 [https://doi.org/10.1016/S0377-0265\(00\)00050-6](https://doi.org/10.1016/S0377-0265(00)00050-6)
- 1394 Hutter, N., Losch, M., & Menemenlis, D. (2018). Scaling properties of Arctic sea ice
 1395 deformation in a high-resolution viscous-plastic sea ice model and in satellite
 1396 observations. *Journal of Geophysical Research: Oceans*, 123(1), 672–687.
- 1397 Ishii, M., Fukuda, Y., Hirahara, S., Yasui, S., Suzuki, T., & Sato, K. (2017). Ac-
 1398 curacy of global upper ocean heat content estimation expected from present
 1399 observational data sets. *SOLA*, 13(0), 163–167. doi: 10.2151/sola.2017-030
- 1400 Jacobs, S. S. (2004). Bottom water production and its links with the ther-
 1401 mohaline circulation. *Antarctic Science*, 16(4), 427–437. doi: 10.1017/
 1402 S095410200400224X
- 1403 Jacox, M. G., & Edwards, C. A. (2012). Upwelling source depth in the presence of
 1404 nearshore wind stress curl. *Journal of Geophysical Research: Oceans*, 117(C5).
 1405 Retrieved from [https://agupubs.onlinelibrary.wiley.com/doi/abs/
 1406 10.1029/2011JC007856](https://agupubs.onlinelibrary.wiley.com/doi/abs/10.1029/2011JC007856) doi: <https://doi.org/10.1029/2011JC007856>
- 1407 Jahn, A., Holland, M. M., & Kay, J. E. (2024). Projections of an ice-free Arctic
 1408 Ocean. *Nature Reviews Earth & Environment*, 1–13.
- 1409 Jahn, A., Kay, J. E., Holland, M. M., & Hall, D. M. (2016). How predictable is the
 1410 timing of a summer ice-free Arctic? *Geophys. Res. Lett.*, 43(17), 9113–9120.
- 1411 Jevrejeva, S., H, P., & Jackson, L. P. (2021). Global mean thermosteric sea level
 1412 projections by 2100 in CMIP6 climate models. *Environmental Research Let-
 1413 ters*, 16(1), 705–710. doi: 10.1088/1748-9326/abceea
- 1414 Junker, T., Schmidt, M., & Mohrholz, V. (2015). The relation of wind stress curl
 1415 and meridional transport in the Benguela upwelling system. *Journal of Ma-
 1416 rine Systems*, 143, 1-6. Retrieved from [https://www.sciencedirect.com/
 1417 science/article/pii/S0924796314002425](https://www.sciencedirect.com/science/article/pii/S0924796314002425) doi: [https://doi.org/10.1016/
 1418 j.jmarsys.2014.10.006](https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jmarsys.2014.10.006)
- 1419 Kaspar, F., Hollmann, R., Lockhoff, M., Karlsson, K.-G., Dybbroe, A., Fuchs, P.,
 1420 ... Schulz, J. (2009). Operational generation of AVHRR-based cloud prod-
 1421 ucts for Europe and the Arctic at EUMETSAT’s Satellite Application Facility
 1422 on Climate Monitoring (CM-SAF). *Advances in Science and Research*, 3(1),
 1423 45–51.
- 1424 Kay, J. E., Wall, C., Yettella, V., Medeiros, B., Hannay, C., Caldwell, P., & Bitz,
 1425 C. (2016). Global climate impacts of fixing the Southern Ocean shortwave
 1426 radiation bias in the Community Earth System Model (CESM). *Journal of
 1427 Climate*, 29(12), 4617–4636.
- 1428 Keen, A., Blockley, E., Bailey, D., Debernard, J. B., Bushuk, M., Delhaye, S., ...
 1429 Wyser, K. (2021). An inter-comparison of the mass budget of the Arctic sea
 1430 ice in CMIP6 models. *The Cryosphere*, 15(2), 951–982.
- 1431 Khatri, H., Griffies, S. M., Storer, B. A., Buzzicotti, M., Aluie, H., Sonnewald, M.,
 1432 ... Shao, A. (2024). A scale-dependent analysis of the barotropic vorticity
 1433 budget in a global ocean simulation. *Journal of Advances in Modeling Earth
 1434 Systems*, 16(6), e2023MS003813. doi: 10.1029/2023MS003813
- 1435 Krasting, J. P., Griffies, S. M., Tesdal, J.-E., MacGilchrist, G., Beadling, R. L., &
 1436 Little, C. M. (2024). Steric sea level rise and relationships with model drift
 1437 and water mass representation in GFDL CM4 and ESM4. *Journal of Climate*,
 1438 *accepted*.
- 1439 LaCasce, J. (2017). The prevalence of oceanic surface modes. *Geophysical Research
 1440 Letters*, 44, 11,097–11,105. doi: 10.1002/2017GL075430
- 1441 Landy, J. C., Dawson, G. J., Tsamados, M., Bushuk, M., Stroeve, J. C., Howell,
 1442 S. E., ... others (2022). A year-round satellite sea-ice thickness record from

- 1443 CryoSat-2. *Nature*, 609(7927), 517–522.
- 1444 Lavergne, T., Eastwood, S., Teffah, Z., Schyberg, H., & Breivik, L.-A. (2010). Sea
1445 ice motion from low-resolution satellite sensors: An alternative method and its
1446 validation in the Arctic. *J. Geophys. Res.: Oceans*, 115(C10).
- 1447 Lellouche, J.-M., Greiner, E., Bourdallé-Badie, R., Garric, G., Melet, A., Drévillon,
1448 M., ... Le Traon, P.-Y. (2021). The Copernicus global 1/12° oceanic
1449 and sea ice GLORYS12 reanalysis. *Frontiers in Earth Science*, 9. doi:
1450 10.3389/feart.2021.698876
- 1451 Levitus, S., Antonov, J. I., Boyer, T. P., Baranova, O. K., Garcia, H. E., Locarnini,
1452 R. A., ... Zweng, M. M. (2012, 05). World ocean heat content and ther-
1453 mosteric sea level change (0-2000 m), 1955-2010. *Geophysical Research Letters*,
1454 39(10), n/a – n/a. doi: 10.1029/2012gl051106
- 1455 Li, F., Lozier, M. S., Bacon, S., Bower, A. S., Cunningham, S. A., de Jong, M. F.,
1456 ... Zhou, C. (2021). Subpolar North Atlantic western boundary density
1457 anomalies and the meridional overturning circulation. *Nature Communica-*
1458 *tions*, 12. doi: 10.1038/s41467-021-23350-2
- 1459 Lim, F., Lozier, M. S., Danagasoglu, G., Holliday, N. P., Kwon, Y.-O., Romanou, A.,
1460 ... Zhang, R. (2019). Local and downstream relationships between Labrador
1461 Sea Water volume and North Atlantic meridional overturning circulation vari-
1462 ability. *Journal of Climate*, 32, 3883-3898. doi: 10.1175/JCLI-D-18-0735.1
- 1463 Lockwood, J. W., Griffies, C. O. D. S. M., & Winton, M. (2021). On the
1464 role of the Antarctic Slope Front on the occurrence of the Weddell Sea
1465 polynya under climate change. *Journal of Climate*, 34, 2529–2548. doi:
1466 10.1175/JCLI-D-20-0069.1
- 1467 Loose, N., Abernathey, R., Grooms, I., Busecke, J., Guillaumin, A., Yankovsky, E.,
1468 ... others (2022). GCM-filters: A Python package for diffusion-based spatial
1469 filtering of gridded data. *Journal of Open Source Software*, 7(70).
- 1470 Lozier, M. S., Li, F., Bacon, S., Bahr, F., Bower, A. S., Cunningham, S. A., ...
1471 Zhao, J. (2019). A sea change in our view of overturning in the sub-
1472 polar North Atlantic. *Science*, 363(6426), 516-521. Retrieved from
1473 <https://www.science.org/doi/abs/10.1126/science.aau6592> doi:
1474 10.1126/science.aau6592
- 1475 McCarthy, G. D., Smeed, D. A., Johns, W. E., Frajka-Williams, E., Moat, B. I.,
1476 Rayner, D., ... Bryden, H. L. (2015). Measuring the Atlantic meridional
1477 overturning circulation at 26°N. *Progress in Oceanography*, 130, 91-111. doi:
1478 10.1016/j.pocean.2014.10.006
- 1479 Meccia, V. L., Iovino, D., & Bellucci, A. (2021). North Atlantic gyre circulation in
1480 PRIMAVERA models. *Climate Dynamics*, 56(11), 4075–4090. doi: 10.1007/
1481 s00382-021-05686-z
- 1482 Meehl, G. A., Arblaster, J. M., Bitz, C. M., Chung, C. T., & Teng, H. (2016).
1483 Antarctic sea-ice expansion between 2000 and 2014 driven by tropical Pacific
1484 decadal climate variability. *Nat. Geosci.*, 9(8), 590–595.
- 1485 Meier, W. N., Fetterer, F., Windnagel, A. K., & Stewart, S. (2021). *NOAA/NSIDC*
1486 *climate data record of passive microwave sea ice concentration, version 4*. Na-
1487 tional Snow and Ice Data Center. Retrieved from [https://nsidc.org/data/](https://nsidc.org/data/g02202)
1488 [g02202](https://nsidc.org/data/g02202) doi: 10.7265/efmz-2t65
- 1489 Menary, M. B., Robson, J., Allan, R. P., Booth, B. B. B., Cassou, C., Gastineau,
1490 G., ... Zhang, R. (2020). Aerosol-forced AMOC changes in CMIP6 historical
1491 simulations. *Geophysical Research Letters*, 47. doi: 10.1029/2020GL088166
- 1492 Moorman, R., Morrison, A. K., & Hogg, A. M. C. (2020). Thermal responses to
1493 Antarctic ice shelf melt in an eddy-rich global ocean-sea ice model. *Journal of*
1494 *Climate*, 33. doi: 10.1175/jcli-d-19-0846.1
- 1495 Morrison, A. K., Waugh, D. W., Hogg, A. M., Jones, D. C., & Abernathey, R. P.
1496 (2022). Ventilation of the Southern Ocean pycnocline. *Annual Review of*
1497 *Marine Science*, 14, 15.1–15.26. doi: 10.1146/annurev-marine-010419-011012

- 1498 Paolo, F. S., Fricker, H. A., & Padman, L. (2015). Volume loss from Antarctic ice
1499 shelves is accelerating. *Science*, *348*, 327–331. doi: 10.1126/science.aaa0940
- 1500 Parsons, A. (2006). A two-layer model of Gulf Stream separation. *Journal of Fluid*
1501 *Mechanics*, *39*. doi: <https://doi.org/10.1017/S0022112069002308>
- 1502 Petit, T., Lozier, M. S., Josey, S. A., & Cunningham, S. A. (2020). At-
1503 lantic Deep Water Formation Occurs Primarily in the Iceland Basin and
1504 Irmingier Sea by Local Buoyancy Forcing. *Geophysical Research Let-*
1505 *ters*, *47*(22), e2020GL091028. Retrieved 2024-07-03, from [https://](https://onlinelibrary.wiley.com/doi/abs/10.1029/2020GL091028)
1506 onlinelibrary.wiley.com/doi/abs/10.1029/2020GL091028 (eprint:
1507 <https://onlinelibrary.wiley.com/doi/pdf/10.1029/2020GL091028>) doi:
1508 10.1029/2020GL091028
- 1509 Pickett, M. H., & Paduan, J. D. (2003). Ekman transport and pumping in the
1510 California Current based on the U.S. Navy’s high-resolution atmospheric
1511 model (COAMPS). *Journal of Geophysical Research: Oceans*, *108*(C10).
1512 Retrieved from [https://agupubs.onlinelibrary.wiley.com/doi/abs/](https://agupubs.onlinelibrary.wiley.com/doi/abs/10.1029/2003JC001902)
1513 [10.1029/2003JC001902](https://agupubs.onlinelibrary.wiley.com/doi/abs/10.1029/2003JC001902) doi: <https://doi.org/10.1029/2003JC001902>
- 1514 Purich, A., Cai, W., England, M. H., & Cowan, T. (2016). Evidence for link be-
1515 tween modelled trends in Antarctic sea ice and underestimated westerly wind
1516 changes. *Nat. Comms.*, *7*, 10409.
- 1517 Purich, A., & England, M. H. (2021). Historical and future projected warming
1518 of Antarctic Shelf Bottom Water in CMIP6 models. *Geophysical Research Let-*
1519 *ters*, *48*. doi: 10.1029/2021GL092752
- 1520 Rackow, T., Danilov, S., Goessling, H. F., Hellmer, H. H., Sein, D. V., Semmler,
1521 T., . . . Jung, T. (2022). Delayed Antarctic sea-ice decline in high-resolution
1522 climate change simulations. *Nature communications*, *13*(1), 637.
- 1523 Richter, I. (2015). Climate model biases in the eastern tropical oceans: Causes,
1524 impacts and ways forward. *Wiley Interdisciplinary Reviews: Climate Change*,
1525 *6*(3), 345–358.
- 1526 Ricker, R., Hendricks, S., Helm, V., Skourup, H., & Davidson, M. (2014). Sensi-
1527 tivity of CryoSat-2 Arctic sea-ice freeboard and thickness on radar-waveform
1528 interpretation. *The Cryosphere*, *8*(4), 1607–1622.
- 1529 Rintoul, S. R. (2018). The global influence of localized dynamics in the Southern
1530 Ocean. *Nature*, *558*, 209–218. doi: 10.1038/s41586-018-0182-3
- 1531 Rintoul, S. R., Hughes, C. W., & Olbers, D. (2001). The Antarctic Circumpolar
1532 Current system. In G. Siedler, J. Gould, & J. Church (Eds.), *Ocean circulation*
1533 *and climate, 1st edition* (Vol. 77, pp. 271–301). Academic Press.
- 1534 Rintoul, S. R., & Naveira Garabato, A. C. (2013). Dynamics of the Southern Ocean
1535 circulation. In G. Siedler, S. M. Griffies, J. Gould, & J. Church (Eds.), *Ocean*
1536 *circulation and climate, 2nd edition: A 21st century perspective* (Vol. 103, pp.
1537 471–492). Academic Press. doi: 10.1016/B978-0-12-391851-2.00018-0
- 1538 Risien, C. M., & Chelton, D. B. (2008). A global climatology of surface wind and
1539 wind stress fields from eight years of QuikSCAT scatterometer data. *Jour-*
1540 *nal of Physical Oceanography*, *38*(11), 2379 - 2413. Retrieved from [https://](https://journals.ametsoc.org/view/journals/phoc/38/11/2008jpo3881.1.xml)
1541 journals.ametsoc.org/view/journals/phoc/38/11/2008jpo3881.1.xml
1542 doi: <https://doi.org/10.1175/2008JPO3881.1>
- 1543 Roach, L. A., Dörr, J., Holmes, C. R., Massonnet, F., Blockley, E. W., Notz, D., . . .
1544 others (2020). Antarctic sea ice area in CMIP6. *Geophys. Res. Lett.*, *47*(9),
1545 e2019GL086729.
- 1546 Robson, J., Menary, M. B., Sutton, R. T., Mecking, J., Gregory, J. M., Jones, C.,
1547 . . . Wilcox, L. J. (2022). The role of anthropogenic aerosol forcing in the
1548 1850–1985 strengthening of the AMOC in CMIP6 historical simulations. *Jour-*
1549 *nal of Climate*, *35*, 6843–6863. doi: 10.1175/JCLI-D-22-0124.1
- 1550 Roemmich, D., Church, J., Gilson, J., Monselesan, D., Sutton, P., & Wijffels, S.
1551 (2015). Unabated planetary warming and its ocean structure since 2006.
1552 *Nature Climate Change*, *5*, 240–245. doi: 10.1038/nclimate2513

- 1553 Ross, A. C., Stock, C. A., Adcroft, A., Curchitser, E., Hallberg, R., Harrison, M. J.,
1554 ... Simkins, J. (2023). A high-resolution physical-biogeochemical model for
1555 marine resource applications in the northwest atlantic (mom6-cobalt-nwa12
1556 v1.0). *Geoscientific Model Development*, 16. doi: [https://doi.org/10.5194/
1557 gmd-16-6943-2023](https://doi.org/10.5194/gmd-16-6943-2023)
- 1558 Rykaczewski, R. R., Dunne, J. P., Sydeman, W. J., García-Reyes, M., Black, B. A.,
1559 & Bograd, S. J. (2015). Poleward displacement of coastal upwelling-favorable
1560 winds in the ocean's eastern boundary currents through the 21st century.
1561 *Geophysical Research Letters*, 42(15), 6424-6431. Retrieved from [https://
1562 agupubs.onlinelibrary.wiley.com/doi/abs/10.1002/2015GL064694](https://agupubs.onlinelibrary.wiley.com/doi/abs/10.1002/2015GL064694) doi:
1563 <https://doi.org/10.1002/2015GL064694>
- 1564 Sato, Y., Goto, D., Michibata, T., Suzuki, K., Takemura, T., Tomita, H., & Naka-
1565 jima, T. M. (2018). Aerosol effects on cloud water amounts were successfully
1566 simulated by a global cloud-system resolving model. *Nature Communications*,
1567 9. doi: 10.1038/s41467-018-03379-6
- 1568 Schmidt, G. A., Romanou, A., Roach, L. A., Mankoff, K. D., Li, Q., Rye, C. D., ...
1569 Busecke, J. J. (2023). Anomalous meltwater from ice sheets and ice shelves is
1570 a historical forcing. *Geophys. Res. Lett.*, 50(24), e2023GL106530.
- 1571 Schmidtko, S., Heywood, K. J., Thompson, A. F., & Aoki, S. (2014). Multidecadal
1572 warming of Antarctic waters. *Science*, 346, 1227–1231. doi: 10.1126/science
1573 .1256117
- 1574 Schoonover, J., Dewar, W. K., Wienders, N., & Deremble, B. (2017). Local sensitivi-
1575 ties of the Gulf Stream separation. *Journal of Physical Oceanography*, 47. doi:
1576 <https://doi.org/10.1175/JPO-D-16-0195.1>
- 1577 Shu, Q., Song, Z., & Qiao, F. (2015). Assessment of sea ice simulations in the
1578 CMIP5 models. *The Cryosphere*, 9(1), 399–409.
- 1579 Silvano, A., Purkey, S., Gordon, A. L., Castagno, P., Stewart, A. L., & S. R. Rin-
1580 toul, e. a. (2023). Observing Antarctic Bottom Water in the Southern Ocean.
1581 *Frontiers in Marine Science*, 10. doi: 10.3389/fmars.2023.1221701
- 1582 Silvestri, S., Wagner, G. L., Campin, J.-M., Constantinou, N. C., Hill, C. N., Souza,
1583 A., & Ferrari, R. (2024). A new WENO-based momentum advection scheme
1584 for simulations of ocean mesoscale turbulence. *Journal of Climate*, 16. doi:
1585 10.1029/2023MS004130
- 1586 SIMIP Community, T. (2020). Arctic sea ice in CMIP6. *Geophys. Res. Lett.*, 47(10),
1587 e2019GL086749.
- 1588 Small, R. J., Curchitser, E., Hedstrom, K., Kauffman, B., & Large, W. G. (2015).
1589 The benguela upwelling system: Quantifying the sensitivity to resolution and
1590 coastal wind representation in a global climate model. *Journal of Climate*,
1591 28(23), 9409 - 9432. Retrieved from [https://journals.ametsoc.org/view/
1592 journals/clim/28/23/jcli-d-15-0192.1.xml](https://journals.ametsoc.org/view/journals/clim/28/23/jcli-d-15-0192.1.xml) doi: [https://doi.org/10.1175/
1593 JCLI-D-15-0192.1](https://doi.org/10.1175/JCLI-D-15-0192.1)
- 1594 Smeed, D. A., Josey, S. A., Beaulieu, C., Johns, W. E., & amd E. Frajka-Williams.,
1595 B. I. M. (2018). The North Atlantic Ocean is in a state of reduced overturning.
1596 *Geophysical Research Letters*, 45, 1527–1533. doi: 10.1002/2017GL076350
- 1597 Smith, R. L. (1968). Upwelling. *Oceanography and Marine Biology: an Annual Re-
1598 view*, 6, 11–46.
- 1599 Solodoch, A., Stewart, A. L., Hogg, A. M., Morrison, A. K., Kiss, A. E., Thomp-
1600 son, A. F., ... Cimoli, L. (2022). How does Antarctic Bottom Wa-
1601 ter cross the Southern Ocean? *Geophysical Research Letters*, 49. doi:
1602 10.1029/2021gl097211
- 1603 Stewart, A., Klocker, A., & Menemenlis, D. (2018). Circum-Antarctic shoreward
1604 heat transport derived from an eddy- and tide-resolving simulation. *Geophys-
1605 ical Research Letters*, 45. doi: 10.1002/2017GL075677
- 1606 Stewart, A., Klocker, A., & Menemenlis, D. (2019). Acceleration and overturning
1607 of the Antarctic Slope Current by winds, eddies, and tides. *Journal of Physical*

- 1608 *Oceanograph*, 49, 2043–2074. doi: 10.1175/JPO-D-18-0221.1
- 1609 Stommel, H. (1948). The westward intensification of wind-driven ocean cur-
 1610 rents. *EOS, Transactions American Geophysical Union*, 29(2), 202–206.
 1611 doi: 10.1029/TR029i002p00202
- 1612 Strub, P. T., Combes, V., Shillington, F. A., & Pizarro, O. (2013). Currents
 1613 and processes along the eastern boundaries. In G. Siedler, S. M. Griffies,
 1614 J. Gould, & J. Church (Eds.), *Ocean circulation and climate, 2nd edition:
 1615 A 21st century perspective* (Vol. 103, pp. 339–384). Academic Press. doi:
 1616 10.1016/B978-0-12-391851-2.00014-3
- 1617 Sylla, A., Sanchez Gomez, E., Mignot, J., & López-Parages, J. (2022). Impact of
 1618 increased resolution on the representation of the Canary upwelling system in
 1619 climate models. *Geoscientific Model Development*, 15(22), 8245–8267. Re-
 1620 trieved from <https://gmd.copernicus.org/articles/15/8245/2022/> doi:
 1621 10.5194/gmd-15-8245-2022
- 1622 Taboada, F. G., Stock, C. A., Griffies, S. M., Dunne, J., John, J. G., Small, R. J.,
 1623 & Tsujino, H. (2018). Surface winds from atmospheric reanalysis lead to con-
 1624 trasting oceanic forcing and coastal upwelling patterns. *Ocean Modelling*, 133,
 1625 79–111. doi: 10.1016/j.ocemod.2018.11.003
- 1626 Tagklis, F., Bracco, A., Ito, T., & Castelao, R. M. (2020). Submesoscale modulation
 1627 of deep water formation in the Labrador Sea. *Scientific Reports*, 10. doi: 10
 1628 .1038/s41598-020-74345-w
- 1629 Tesdal, J.-E., MacGilchrist, G. A., Beadling, R. L., Griffies, S. M., Krasting, J. P., &
 1630 Durack, P. J. (2023). Revisiting interior water mass responses to surface forc-
 1631 ing changes and the subsequent effects on overturning in the Southern Ocean.
 1632 *Journal of Geophysical Research - Oceans*, 128. doi: 10.1029/2022JC019105
- 1633 Thomas, M. D., Tréguier, A. M., Blanke, B., Deshayes, J., & Voltaire, A. A. (2015).
 1634 A Lagrangian method to isolate the impacts of mixed layer subduction on the
 1635 meridional overturning circulation in a numerical model. *Journal of Climate*,
 1636 28, 7503–7517. doi: 10.1175/JCLI-D-14-00631.1
- 1637 Thompson, A. F., Stewart, A. L., Spence, P., & Heywood, K. J. (2018). The Antarc-
 1638 tic Slope Current in a changing climate. *Reviews of Geophysics*, 56, 741–770.
- 1639 Thompson, K. R., & Demirov, E. (2006). Skewness of sea level variability of the
 1640 world’s oceans. *Journal of Geophysical Research: Oceans*, 111. doi: 10.1029/
 1641 2004JC002839
- 1642 Todd, R. E. (2021). Gulf Stream mean and eddy kinetic energy: Three-dimensional
 1643 estimates from underwater glider observations. *Geophysical Research Letters*,
 1644 48. doi: <https://doi.org/10.1029/2020GL090281>
- 1645 Varela, R., DeCastro, M., Rodriguez-Diaz, L., Dias, J. M., & Gómez-Gesteira, M.
 1646 (2022). Examining the ability of CMIP6 models to reproduce the upwelling
 1647 SST imprint in the Eastern Boundary Upwelling Systems. *Journal of Marine
 1648 Science and Engineering*, 10(12). Retrieved from [https://www.mdpi.com/
 1649 2077-1312/10/12/1970](https://www.mdpi.com/2077-1312/10/12/1970) doi: 10.3390/jmse10121970
- 1650 Verdy, A., & Mazloff, M. R. (2017). A data assimilating model for estimating South-
 1651 ern Ocean biogeochemistry. *Journal of Geophysical Research: Oceans*, 122,
 1652 6968–6988. doi: 10.1002/2016JC012650
- 1653 Waldman, R., & Giordani, H. (2023). Ocean barotropic vorticity balances: theory
 1654 and application to numerical models. *Journal of Advances in Modeling Earth
 1655 Systems*, 15(4), e2022MS003276. doi: 10.1029/2022MS003276
- 1656 Wang, C., Zhang, L., Lee, S.-K., Wu, L., & Mechoso, C. R. (2014). A global per-
 1657 spective on CMIP5 climate model biases. *Nature Climate Change*, 4. doi: 10
 1658 .1038/NCLIMATE2118
- 1659 Wang, H., Legg, S. A., & Hallberg, R. W. (2015). Representations of the Nordic
 1660 Seas overflows and their large scale climate impact in coupled models. *Ocean
 1661 Modelling*, 86, 76–92. doi: 10.1016/j.ocemod.2014.12.005
- 1662 Wang, X., Key, J., Kwok, R., & Zhang, J. (2016). Comparison of Arctic sea ice

- 1663 thickness from satellites, aircraft, and PIOMAS data. *Remote Sensing*, 8(9),
1664 713.
- 1665 Winton, M., Adcroft, A., Dunne, J. P., Held, I. M., Shevliakova, E., Zhao, M., ...
1666 Zhang, R. (2020). Climate sensitivity of GFDL's CM4.0. *Journal of Advances*
1667 *in Modeling the Earth System*, 12. doi: 10.1029/2019MS001838
- 1668 Xu, X., Chassignet, E. P., Firing, Y. L., & Donohue, K. (2020). Antarctic Cir-
1669 cumpolar Current transport through Drake Passage: What can we learn from
1670 comparing high-resolution model results to observations? *Journal of Geophysi-*
1671 *cal Research: Oceans*, 125. doi: 10.1029/2020jc016365
- 1672 Xu, X., Hurlburt, H., Schmitz Jr, W., Zantopp, R., Fischer, J., & Hogan, P. (2013).
1673 On the currents and transports connected with the Atlantic meridional over-
1674 turning circulation in the subpolar North Atlantic. *Journal of Geophysical*
1675 *Research: Oceans*, 118(1), 502–516. doi: 10.1002/jgrc.20065
- 1676 Yan, X., Zhang, R., & Knutson, T. R. (2018). Underestimated AMOC variability
1677 and implications for AMV and predictability in CMIP models. *Geophysical Re-*
1678 *search Letters*, 45. doi: 10.1029/2018GL077378
- 1679 Yan, X., Zhang, R., & Knutson, T. R. (2019). A multivariate AMV index and asso-
1680 ciated discrepancies between observed and CMIP5 externally forced amv. *Geo-*
1681 *physical Research Letters*, 46. doi: 10.1029/2019GL082787
- 1682 Yeager, S. (2015). Topographic coupling of the Atlantic overturning and gyre cir-
1683 culations. *Journal of Physical Oceanography*, 45(5), 1258–1284. doi: 10.1175/
1684 JPO-D-14-0100.1
- 1685 Yeager, S., Castruccio, F., Chang, P., Danabasoglu, G., Maroon, E., Small, J., ...
1686 Zhang, S. (2021). An oversized role for the Labrador Sea in the multidecadal
1687 variability of the Atlantic overturning circulation. *Science Advances*, 7. doi:
1688 10.1126/sciadv.abh3592
- 1689 Zanna, L., Khatiwala, S., Gregory, J., Ison, J., & Heimbach, P. (2019). Global recon-
1690 struction of historical ocean heat storage and transport. *Proceedings of the Na-*
1691 *tional Academy of Science*. doi: 10.1073/pnas.1808838115
- 1692 Zhang, J., & Rothrock, D. (2003). Modeling global sea ice with a thickness and
1693 enthalpy distribution model in generalized curvilinear coordinates. *Mon. Wea.*
1694 *Rev.*, 131(5), 845–861.
- 1695 Zhang, L., Delworth, T. L., Cooke, W., Goosse, H., Bushuk, M., Morioka, Y., &
1696 Yang, X. (2021). The dependence of internal multidecadal variability in the
1697 Southern Ocean on the ocean background mean state. *Journal of Climate*,
1698 34(3), 1061–1080. doi: 0.1175/JCLI-D-20-0049.1
- 1699 Zhang, L., Delworth, T. L., Cooke, W., & Yang, X. (2019). Natural variability of
1700 Southern Ocean convection as a driver of observed climate trends. *Nature Cli-*
1701 *mate Change*, 9(1), 59–65.
- 1702 Zhang, R., Delworth, T. L., Rosati, A., Anderson, W. G., Dixon, K. W., Lee, H.-
1703 C., & Zeng, F. (2011). Sensitivity of the North Atlantic Ocean circula-
1704 tion to an abrupt change in the Nordic Sea overflow in a high resolution
1705 global coupled climate model. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, 116. doi:
1706 10.1029/2011JC007240
- 1707 Zhang, R., & Thomas, M. (2021). Horizontal circulation across density surfaces
1708 contributes substantially to the long-term mean northern Atlantic meridional
1709 overturning circulation. *Communications Earth & Environment*, 2. doi:
1710 10.1038/s43247-021-00182-y
- 1711 Zhang, R., & Vallis, G. K. (2007). The role of bottom vortex stretching on the
1712 path of the North Atlantic Western Boundary Current and on the Northern
1713 Recirculation Gyre. *Journal of Physical Oceanography*, 37, 2053–2080. doi:
1714 10.1175/JPO3102.1
- 1715 Zhao, M. (2020). Simulations of atmospheric rivers, their variability, and response to
1716 global warming using GFDL's new high-resolution general circulation model.
1717 *Journal of Climate*, 33, 10287–10303. doi: 10.1175/JCLI-D-20-0241.1

- 1718 Zhao, M., Golaz, J.-C., Held, I. M., Guo, H., Balaji, V., Benson, R., . . . Xiang, B.
1719 (2018a). The GFDL Global Atmosphere and Land Model AM4.0/LM4.0 - Part
1720 II: Model Description, Sensitivity Studies, and Tuning Strategies. *Journal of*
1721 *Advances in Modeling Earth Systems*, 10. doi: 10.1002/2017MS001209
- 1722 Zhao, M., Golaz, J.-C., Held, I. M., Guo, H., Balaji, V., Benson, R., . . . Xiang, B.
1723 (2018b). The GFDL Global Atmosphere and Land Model AM4.0/LM4.0 - Part
1724 I: Simulation Characteristics with Prescribed SSTs. *Journal of Advances in*
1725 *Modeling Earth Systems*, 10. doi: 10.1002/2017MS001208
- 1726 Zou, S., Petit, T., Li, F., & Lozier, M. S. (2024, April). Observation-based es-
1727 timates of water mass transformation and formation in the Labrador Sea.
1728 *Journal of Physical Oceanography*, -1(aop). Retrieved 2024-04-28, from
1729 <https://journals.ametsoc.org/view/journals/phoc/aop/JPO-D-23-0235>
1730 [.1/JPO-D-23-0235.1.xml](https://journals.ametsoc.org/view/journals/phoc/aop/JPO-D-23-0235.1.xml) (Publisher: American Meteorological Society
1731 Section: Journal of Physical Oceanography) doi: 10.1175/JPO-D-23-0235.1

The GFDL-CM4X climate model hierarchy, Part II: case studies

Stephen M. Griffies^{1,2}, Alistair Adcroft², Rebecca L. Beadling³, Mitchell Bushuk¹, Chiung-Yin Chang², Henri F. Drake⁴, Raphael Dussin¹, Robert W. Hallberg^{1,2}, William J. Hurlin¹, Hemant Khatri⁵, John P. Krasting¹, Matthew Lobo², Graeme A. MacGilchrist⁶, Brandon G. Reichl¹, Aakash Sane², Olga Sergienko², Maike Sonnewald⁷, Jacob M. Steinberg¹, Jan-Erik Tesdal², Matthew Thomas⁸, Katherine E. Turner², Marshall L. Ward¹, Michael Winton¹, Niki Zadeh¹, Laure Zanna⁹, Rong Zhang^{1,2}, Wenda Zhang², Ming Zhao¹

¹NOAA Geophysical Fluid Dynamics Laboratory, Princeton, USA

²Princeton University Atmospheric and Oceanic Sciences Program, Princeton, USA

³Department of Earth and Environmental Science, Temple University, Philadelphia, USA

⁴Department of Earth System Science, University of California, Irvine, USA

⁵Department of Earth, Ocean and Ecological Sciences, University of Liverpool, UK

⁶School of Earth and Environmental Sciences, University of St. Andrews, UK

⁷Computer Science Department, University of California, Davis, USA

⁸Centre for Environment Fisheries and Aquaculture Science, Suffolk, UK

⁹Courant Institute of Mathematical Sciences, New York University, New York, USA

November 23, 2024

Key Points:

- We present case studies of selected features of the GFDL-CM4X climate model from CMIP6 piControl, historical, and SSP5-8.5 simulations.
- Case studies include sea level, eastern boundary upwelling, sea ice, Southern Ocean circulation, and North Atlantic Ocean circulation.
- Refining ocean grid spacing from 0.25° to 0.125° has systematic improvements across a number of climate relevant features.

Corresponding author: Stephen Griffies, Stephen.M.Griffies@gmail.com

28 **Abstract**

29 This paper is Part II of a two-part paper that documents the CM4X (Climate Model
 30 version 4X) hierarchy of coupled climate models developed at the Geophysical Fluid Dy-
 31 namics Laboratory (GFDL). Part I of this paper is presented in Griffies et al. (2024).
 32 Here we present a suite of case studies that examine ocean and sea ice features that are
 33 targeted for further research, which include sea level, eastern boundary upwelling, Arc-
 34 tic and Southern Ocean sea ice, Southern Ocean circulation, and North Atlantic circula-
 35 tion. The case studies are based on experiments that follow the protocol of version 6
 36 from the Coupled Model Intercomparison Project (CMIP6). The analysis reveals a sys-
 37 tematic improvement in the simulation fidelity of CM4X relative to its CM4.0 predeces-
 38 sor, as well as an improvement when refining the ocean/sea ice horizontal grid spacing
 39 from the 0.25° of CM4X-p25 to the 0.125° of CM4X-p125. Even so, there remain many
 40 outstanding biases, thus pointing to the need for further grid refinements, enhancements
 41 to numerical methods, and/or advances in parameterizations, each of which target long-
 42 standing model biases and limitations.

43 **Plain Language Summary**

44 We examine simulations from a new climate model hierarchy, referred to as CM4X
 45 (Climate Model version 4X). The finer grid component of the hierarchy, CM4X-p125,
 46 outshines its coarser sibling, CM4X-p25, for certain processes of interest for climate stud-
 47 ies, though in others the results are not dramatically distinct. Each case study reveals
 48 the advances made by moving from the predecessor CM4.0 climate model to finer grid
 49 spacing in either the atmosphere or ocean. Even so, there remain many unresolved prob-
 50 lems that help to guide further research and development goals and strategies.

51 **1 Introduction and content of this paper**

52 This paper is Part II of a two-part paper that documents the CM4X hierarchy of
 53 coupled climate models, with Part I presented in Griffies et al. (2024). We developed
 54 CM4X to support research into the ocean and sea ice components of the earth climate
 55 system, with CM4X comprised of two coupled climate models, CM4X-p25 and CM4X-
 56 p125. These two models are identically configured, except for their ocean (and sea ice)
 57 horizontal grid spacing and bottom topography. In Part I from Griffies et al. (2024), we
 58 documented the remarkable thermal equilibration properties of CM4X-p125, and pro-
 59 posed the *mesoscale dominance hypothesis* to help explain the behavior. In the present
 60 paper, we work through a suite of case studies that focus on areas of planned research
 61 with CM4X.

62 As detailed in Section 3.1 of Griffies et al. (2024), we present results from follow-
 63 ing CMIP6 (Eyring et al., 2016) simulations.

- 64 • piControl: Pre-industrial control with radiative forcing fixed at year 1850. This
 65 experiment illustrates how the models drift from their initial conditions, taken from
 66 the early 21st century, and approach thermal equilibrium under pre-industrial forc-
 67 ing.
- 68 • Historical: 01January of year 101 from the piControl is used to initialize a histor-
 69 ical simulation that is run from 1850 to 2014. In this historical simulation, we did
 70 not account for temporal evolution in vegetation, land use, or CO2 fertilization.
- 71 • SSP5-8.5: 01January of year 2015 provides the initial condition for the CMIP6 SSP5-
 72 8.5 scenario experiment, which allows us to study how the CM4X models simu-
 73 late climate change through to 2100.

74 The case studies exemplify aspects of the science going into the model and the science
 75 emerging from the model simulations. The presentation generally follows a “show and
 76 tell” approach given that our primary aim in this paper is to document features of the
 77 new CM4X hierarchy, with many of these features to be more thoroughly examined in
 78 future studies.

79 We begin in Section 2 with a study of the global thermosteric sea level along with
 80 statistical patterns of dynamic sea level. This analysis reveals that the historical ther-
 81 mosteric sea level in the CM4X models is somewhat improved relative to CM4.0, and
 82 yet the patterns of sea level skewness in CM4.0 and CM4X remain in poor agreement
 83 in comparison to ocean reanalysis. In Section 3 we examine properties of the eastern bound-
 84 ary upwelling zones, which are regions of particular importance for biogeochemistry. Here
 85 we find an advance arises from the refined atmospheric model grid used in CM4X rel-
 86 ative to CM4.0 (see Section A1 of Griffies et al. (2024)), thus improving the fidelity of
 87 coastal wind patterns key to upwelling. Even so, long-standing biases in the low level
 88 clouds means that the upwelling zones remain far too warm relative to observations. Sec-
 89 tion 4 studies the Arctic Ocean and Southern Ocean sea ice properties, revealing again
 90 that the CM4X model represents an advance over the CM4.0 model, though with many
 91 longstanding biases remaining.

92 In Section 5 we study properties of the Southern Ocean simulation, with some fo-
 93 cus on the region near Antarctica given its importance to ongoing studies of ice shelf melt.
 94 A particularly encouraging feature of both CM4X-p25 and CM4X-p125 concerns the ab-
 95 sence of the unphysically large open ocean polynyas that plagued CM4.0 (Held et al.,
 96 2019) and its earth system model cousin ESM4.1 (Dunne et al., 2020). As a result, CM4X
 97 provides a versatile tool for performing perturbation experiments to examine, say, the
 98 role of fresh water melt around Antarctica such as in Beadling et al. (2022) and Tesdal
 99 et al. (2023), including examining the role of the ocean in the SST pattern effect (Armour
 100 et al., 2013; Andrews et al., 2018). We complete the case studies in Section 6 with a fo-
 101 cus on the North Atlantic circulation, considering both horizontal and overturning cir-
 102 culation features in the middle and high latitudes. The CM4X simulations show some
 103 advances over CM4.0 in the overturning and supolar gyre properties, and yet there re-
 104 main nontrivial biases in the overturning depth and attendant overflows (model is too
 105 shallow), as well as biases in the Gulf Stream structure (simulated jet does not penetrate
 106 far enough from the coast). We close the paper in Section 7 with concluding remarks on
 107 strategies for future ocean climate model development that are motivated by results from
 108 the CM4X model hierarchy.

109 2 Thermosteric and dynamic sea level

110 In this section we consider two aspects of sea level: global mean thermosteric sea
 111 level and patterns of dynamic sea level.

112 2.1 Global mean thermosteric sea level

113 Changes to global mean thermosteric sea level occur with seawater density changes
 114 affected by temperature changes. Although seawater density is a highly nonlinear func-
 115 tion of temperature, salinity, and pressure, we expect the time series for thermosteric sea
 116 level to reflect that for global mean temperature, with Figure 1 supporting this expec-
 117 tation. To generate this figure, we computed thermosteric sea level according to Section
 118 H9.5 of Griffies et al. (2016) (CMIP variable *zostoga*), using software described in Krasting
 119 et al. (2024) and with full-depth monthly mean fields. Notably, the CM4.0 piControl drift
 120 is larger than CM4X-p25, whereas there is negligible drift in CM4X-p125.

121 Figure 1 suggests that differences between CM4X-p25 and CM4X-p125 are mostly
 122 due to the difference in drift seen in the piControl runs. Removing a linear trend com-

ACRONYM	MEANING	CITATION OR SECTION
AM4	GFDL Atmospheric Model 4.0	Zhao et al. (2018b, 2018a)
CM2-O	GFDL climate model hierarchy 2.0	Delworth et al. (2006), Griffies et al. (2015)
C96	AM4 with cubed-sphere (≈ 100 km)	Zhao et al. (2018b, 2018a)
C192	AM4 with cubed-sphere (≈ 50 km) in CM4X	Zhao (2020)
CMIP6	Coupled Model Intercomparison Project 6	Eyring et al. (2016)
CM4.0	GFDL Climate Model 4.0 (0.25° ocn & C96 atm)	Held et al. (2019)
CM4X	GFDL Climate Model hierarchy	this paper
CM4X-p25	CM4X w/ 0.25° ocn and C192 atm	this paper
CM4X-p125	CM4X with 0.125° ocn and C192 atm	this paper
CM4X-p25-C96	CM4X with 0.25° ocn and C96 atm	3
ESM4.1	GFDL Earth System Model 4.1	Dunne et al. (2020)
GFDL	Geophysical Fluid Dynamics Laboratory	–
MOM6	Modular Ocean Model version 6	Adcroft et al. (2019), Griffies et al. (2020)
NWA12	NorthWest Atlantic 1/12° model	6.1 and Ross et al. (2023)
OM4.0	GFDL Ocean/Sea-ice Model 4.0 (0.25°)	Adcroft et al. (2019)
SIS2	Sea Ice Simulator version 2	Delworth et al. (2006), Adcroft et al. (2019)
AABW	Antarctic Bottom Water	5
AAIW	Antarctic Intermediate Water	5
ACC	Antarctic Circumpolar Current	5
AIS	Antarctic Ice Shelf	5
AMOC	Atlantic Meridional Overturning Circulation	6
ASC	Antarctic Slope Current	5
CDW	Circumpolar Deep Water	5
EBUS	eastern boundary upwelling system	3
DSW	Dense Shelf Water	5
NADW	North Atlantic Deep Water	6
MKE	mean kinetic energy	6.1
MLD	mixed layer depth	6
OSNAP	Overturning in the North Atlantic Subpolar Program	6
RAPID	Rapid Climate Change Programme	6
RMSE	root-mean-square error	4
SAMW	Sub-Antarctic Mode Water	5
SIC	Sea Ice Concentration	4
SIE	Sea Ice Extent	4
SIT	Sea Ice Thickness	4
SIV	Sea Ice Volume	4
WMT	watermass transformation	5.2 and 6.4

Table 1. Acronyms used in this paper, their meaning, and relevant citation or section. The upper portion refers to model related acronyms and the lower portion to oceanographic and statistical related acronyms.

123 puted from the piControl leads to very similar global thermal expansion in the histor-
 124 ical and SSP5-8.5 simulations (Figure 2). Evidently, the nonlinear effects noted by Hallberg
 125 et al. (2013) are not revealed by these two simulations, presumably since their piCon-
 126 trol states have not drifted too far apart after 100 years.

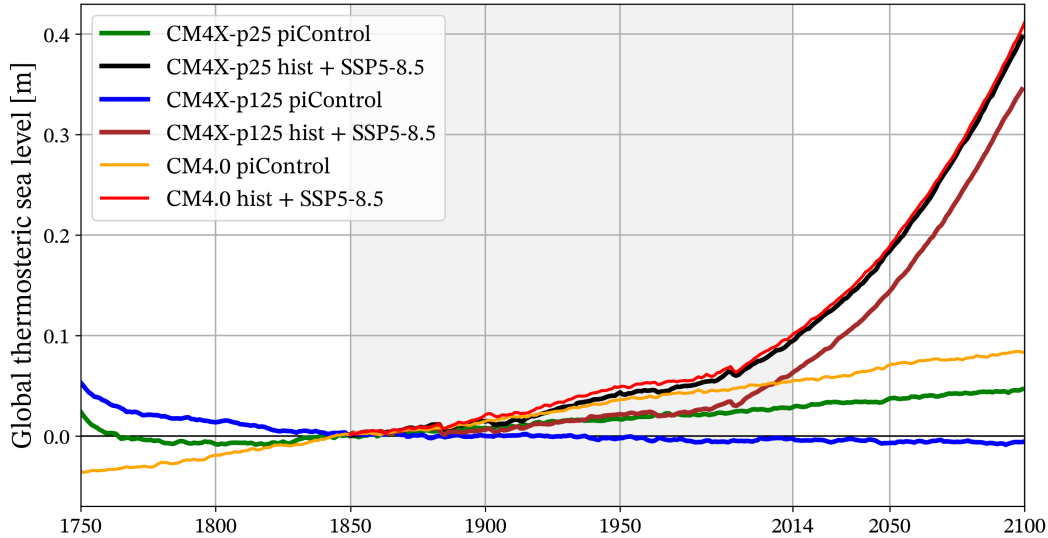


Figure 1. Global thermosteric sea level in piControl, historical (1850-2014), and SSP5-8.5 (2014-2100) simulations using CM4X and CM4.0 climate models. Historical simulations for CM4X-p25 and CM4X-p125 branch from the corresponding piControl at year 101, whereas CM4.0 is branched from its piControl at year 251. This different branching explains why the CM4.0 piControl does not line up with the CM4X piControls. Furthermore, CM4.0’s later branching means that its initial cooling phase seen in Part I (Griffies et al., 2024) is outside of the time range of this figure, so that the CM4.0 piControl exhibits a nearly linear drift throughout.

127 During the 20th and early 21st centuries, the observed global-mean sea level ex-
 128 hibited significant increases, with thermosteric rise becoming increasingly significant in
 129 recent decades (Frederikse et al., 2020). Figure 2 shows changes relative to the year 2002-
 130 2018 time mean, plotted over the historical simulations (from year 1850 through 2014)
 131 and eight years of the SSP5-8.5 projection (years 2015 to 2022). We accounted for model
 132 drift by removing the long term linear trend in the corresponding piControl run from
 133 each historical + SSP5-8.5 time series. We also compare model results to multiple ob-
 134 servation based analyses.

135 In Figure 2 we see that CM4.0 shows a nearly flat thermosteric sea level during 1940–1990,
 136 with similar behavior found for many other CMIP6 models discussed by Jevrejeva et al.
 137 (2021). In contrast, the CM4X simulations better align with the thermosteric sea level
 138 rise found by the observations during this period. Recent decades have seen an upward
 139 acceleration of thermosteric sea level rise (Dangendorf et al., 2019), with the CM4.0 and
 140 CM4X simulations also showing an acceleration. However, the models appear to over-
 141 estimate the observational trend since 1990, indicative of the large transient climate sen-
 142 sitivity found in CM4.0 (Winton et al., 2020). We qualify this point by noting the mod-
 143 els are mostly within the observational product uncertainty ranges, and further updates
 144 of Ishii et al. (2017), including data up to 2022, diverge from the other observations and
 145 align more closely with the models.

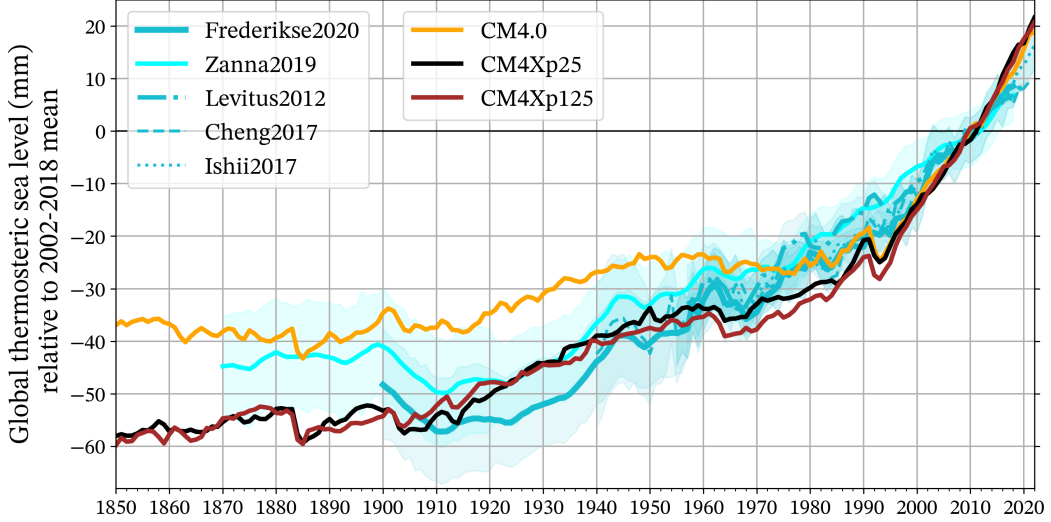


Figure 2. Historical and projected thermosteric sea level derived from CM4.0 and CM4X simulations, along with observational estimates. Models are plotted over the entire historical period (1850-2014), including years 2015-2022 from the SSP5-8.5 projections. Observational estimates are depicted by cyan-shaded lines with dark-solid (Frederikse et al., 2020), light-solid (Zanna et al., 2019), dash-dotted (Levitus et al., 2012), dashed (Cheng et al., 2017) and dotted (Ishii et al., 2017). The global mean thermosteric sea level estimates by Levitus et al. (2012), Cheng et al. (2017) and Ishii et al. (2017) do not include the deep ocean contribution (below 2000 meters). Note that the thermosteric sea level time series for CM4.0 and CM4X were detrended by subtracting the long-term linear trend in the piControl from the combined historical and SSP5-8.5 scenario time series. The linear trend was derived from a linear fit over the time period of the piControl run, matching the branch-off year and duration of the historical and SSP5-8.5 scenario simulations (250 years).

146

2.2 Statistical measures of dynamic sea level fluctuations

147

148

149

150

151

152

We consider statistical properties of the daily mean dynamic sea level (zos as in Griffies et al. (2016)), thus allowing for a quantitative characterization of spatial structure of sea level fluctuations. In particular, we focus on the standard deviation and skewness computed over the 20-year segment 1995-2014 of the historical simulation. In fact, the standard deviation was already presented in Figure 3 of Part I (Griffies et al., 2024) as part of our discussion of mesoscale eddy activity. Here we present the skewness.

153

154

155

To compute the statistics, we generate a 20-year climatology of the daily mean dynamic sea level over the historical period 1995-2014, denoted by $\overline{\text{zos}}$. We then compute anomalies relative to the climatology

156

$$\text{zos}'(t_n) = \text{zos}(t_n) - \overline{\text{zos}}(t_{\text{mod}(n,365)}), \quad (1)$$

157

158

159

where t_n is the day within the $N = 20 * 365$ total number of days, and $t_{\text{mod}(n,365)}$ is the climatological day. The standard deviation and skewness, computed at each horizontal ocean grid cell, are given by

160

$$s = \left[\frac{1}{N} \sum_{n=1}^N [\text{zos}'(t_n)]^2 \right]^{1/2} \quad \text{and} \quad \mathcal{S} = \frac{\sum_{n=1}^N [\text{zos}'(t_n)]^3}{N s^3}. \quad (2)$$

161 The sea level standard deviation has dimensions of length whereas skewness is dimen-
 162 sionless. We compare results from CM4X-p25 and CM4X-p125, and include the 1/12°
 163 GLORYS12 analysis from Lellouche et al. (2021) as a benchmark.

164 2.3 Skewness

165 Skewness is a third-order statistic that quantifies the asymmetry of a distribution.
 166 A positive skewness means that fluctuations are biased positive relative to a Gaussian
 167 distribution, and vice versa for negative skewness. K. R. Thompson and Demirov (2006)
 168 and Hughes et al. (2010) noted that sea level skewness is positive on the poleward side
 169 of strong eastward currents (e.g., Gulf Stream, Kuroshio) and negative on the equator-
 170 ward side, so that strong currents are generally aligned with the zero contour.

171 As seen in Figure 3, CM4X-p25 contains no clear zero skewness signature of the
 172 Gulf Stream jet, contrary to that found in GLORYS12. CM4X-p125 shows some hint
 173 of a zero skewness contour, but far less coherent than in GLORYS12. The Kuroshio Cur-
 174 rent in CM4X-p25 is also poorly revealed by the CM4X-p25 skewness, whereas the skew-
 175 ness in CM4X-p125 resembles GLORYS12 though with a muted signature. The Agul-
 176 has region in the CM4X simulations suffers from the complement bias found in the west-
 177 ern boundary currents. Namely, Agulhas eddies in the CM4X simulations remain some-
 178 what more coherent than found in GLORYS12, thus producing a nontrivial positive skew-
 179 ness signature reaching into the central portion of the South Atlantic, with this signa-
 180 ture in the models far larger than found in GLORYS12.

181 As noted by K. R. Thompson and Demirov (2006), tropical sea level skewness is
 182 dominated by large patterns associated with variability such as the El Niño-Southern
 183 Oscillation and Indian Ocean variability. The CM4X models generally show a muted trop-
 184 ical variability relative to GLORYS12, which is consistent with a muted tropical sea sur-
 185 face temperature variability as revealed by the power spectra in Figure 10 of Part I (Griffies
 186 et al., 2024). Correspondingly, the positive skewness in GLORYS12 extending along the
 187 coasts of North and South America is missing in both CM4X-p25 and CM4X-p125.

188 2.4 Conclusions regarding sea level

189 Figure 2 shows that both CM4X simulations reduce thermosteric sea level biases
 190 found in CM4.0, and yet that result is possibly due to simplifications of the land model
 191 as detailed in Section 2.4 and Appendix A of Part I (Griffies et al., 2024). The patterns
 192 for dynamic sea level standard deviation (Figure 3 in Part I) and skewness expose non-
 193 trivial biases in the middle latitude boundary currents. These biases are reduced with
 194 CM4X-p125 relative to CM4X-p25, and yet they suggest a need for either improved par-
 195 ameterizations or, as emphasized by Chassignet and Xu (2017), substantially finer grid
 196 spacing. We find a highly muted CM4X tropical variability as revealed by the sea level
 197 skewness, thus revealing how sea level skewness complements the sea surface tempera-
 198 ture power spectra shown in Figure 10 of Part I (Griffies et al., 2024), which also shows
 199 muted tropical sea surface temperature variability.

200 3 Eastern boundary upwelling systems

201 Eastern boundary upwelling systems (EBUS) are among the most biologically pro-
 202 ductive areas of the World Ocean (Strub et al., 2013). They are characterized by a sharp
 203 drop in the sea surface temperature near the coast, which results from upwelling of cooler
 204 interior waters through Ekman suction and lateral Ekman transport driven by equator-
 205 ward wind stresses. In Figure 4 we present summer SST taken from CM4X-p125. By
 206 showing the summertime season we clearly expose the cool upwelling waters in contrast
 207 to the warm surrounding waters. As summarized by Richter (2015), many climate mod-
 208 els exhibit large biases in the SST in eastern boundary regions due to both a lack of cloud

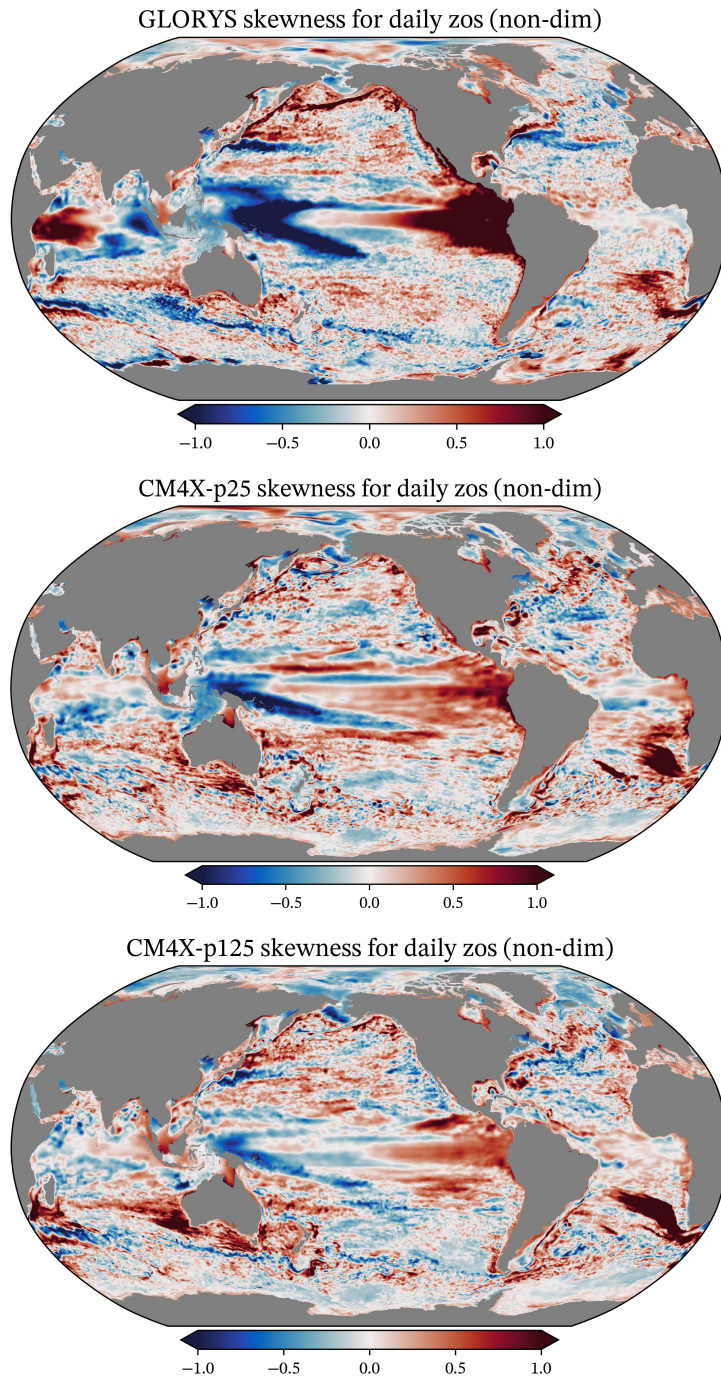


Figure 3. Skewness (non-dimensional) for the daily mean dynamic sea level from GLORYS12 (Lellouche et al., 2021) (top panel), and CM4X-p25 (middle panel) and CM4X-p125 (lower panel). Each figure is created from the deviation of the daily mean sea level relative to the climatological mean for that day of the year, as detailed in Section 2.2. Each climatology is created from years 1995-2014.

209 cover (in particular stratocumulus decks) and weaker than observed upwelling favorable
 210 winds (see also C. Wang et al. (2014)). The CM4X models are similarly lacking the ap-

211 appropriate cloud cover in EBUS. Compared to cloud cover estimates from Kaspar et al.
 212 (2009), both CM4X-p25 and CM4X-p125 have at best 20% less cloud cover over EBUS
 213 and as much as 40% less in regions in the Pacific systems, thus resulting in the warm
 214 SST biases presented in Figure 13 of Part I (Griffies et al., 2024). Gordon et al. (2000)
 215 shows that a more realistic marine stratocumulus significantly improves the annual cycle
 216 of SST and ocean dynamics in the tropics. Representation of upwelling favorable winds
 217 is the second source of SST biases in EBUS. In this section, we focus on improvements
 218 to SST biases from the 50 km atmosphere in CM4X models.

219 3.1 Modeling eastern boundary upwelling systems

220 Because of their importance to the marine-based economy, eastern boundary up-
 221 welling systems have been extensively studied with ocean and climate models. The im-
 222 pact of wind stress on upwelling characteristics is typically addressed in a regional con-
 223 text, such as the studies by Albert et al. (2010), Jacox and Edwards (2012), Junker et
 224 al. (2015), Small et al. (2015), and Sylla et al. (2022). Furthermore, sensitivity of up-
 225 welling regions to climate change is a topic of great interest, such as studied by Bakun
 226 et al. (2015), Rykaczewski et al. (2015), and Bograd et al. (2023). We here consider the
 227 representation of upwelling in the CM4X climate models during their historical simu-
 228 lations. We focus on the four upwelling systems shown in Figure 4: California and Peru
 229 in the Pacific and Canary and Benguela in the Atlantic.

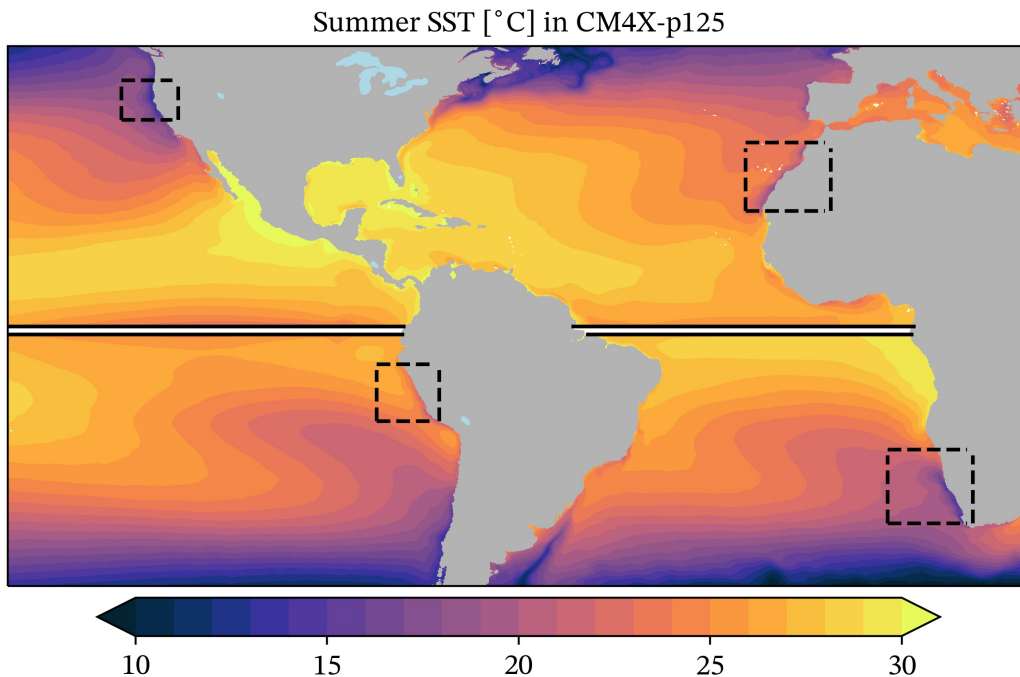


Figure 4. Sea surface temperature from CM4X-p125, during summer months (July-September in northern hemisphere, January-March in southern hemisphere) averaged over years 1980-2014. The boxes indicate the four eastern boundary upwelling systems considered in our analysis: California, Peru, Canary and Benguela. We place a white stripe at the equator since we map the summer months for both hemisphere, and so there is a jump at the equator.

230 Because of the fine spatial scales involved in coastal upwelling, both atmosphere
 231 and ocean models with relatively coarse grids are limited in their ability to capture the

232 relevant dynamical processes. Fine resolution is needed in the atmosphere to represent
 233 the coastal wind stresses and their curl, and fine resolution is needed in the ocean to re-
 234 alize upwelling localized near the coast. Varela et al. (2022) found that refined grid spac-
 235 ing allows many CMIP6 climate models to improve their simulation of coastal SST rel-
 236 ative to earlier model classes. For example, the CM4.0 climate model captures the im-
 237 print of upwelling using its C96 atmosphere (approximately 100 km) and 0.25° ocean.
 238 Further refining the atmospheric grid to C192 (approximately 50 km) in CM4X leads
 239 us to the question of its impact on the upwelling systems, as does refinement of the ocean
 240 grid from CM4X-p25 to CM4X-p125. To help address these questions we include a com-
 241 panion experiment, CM4X-p25-C96, which uses the C96 atmosphere along with the same
 242 ocean model configuration as CM4X-p25.

243 **3.2 Winds and SSTs in the upwelling regions**

244 In Figure 5 we show the alongshore wind stress and wind stress curl as a function
 245 of the distance to the coast and as averaged over the four upwelling regions. The along-
 246 shore/equatorward wind stress remains stronger nearshore with the C192 atmosphere,
 247 with a drop confined to the inner 100 km from the coast instead of 150 km found in CM4X-
 248 p25-C96. This result holds for both CM4X-p25 and CM4X-p125, which is expected since
 249 the ocean grid spacing is not a leading order effect on the wind stress near the coast. The
 250 sharper wind drop near the coast found with the C192 atmosphere results in a greater
 251 wind stress curl in the nearshore region (within 50 km from the coast) and a decrease
 252 in the 50-100 km band. The CM4X experiments are compared with the SCOW estimates
 253 (Risien & Chelton, 2008) based on QuikSCAT satellite measurements. Except for the
 254 California system, modeled alongshore wind stresses are stronger than observed in the
 255 100-300 km band. In all regions, the modeled wind drop-off at the coast is steeper than
 256 in the SCOW estimates, resulting in a stronger wind stress curl at the coast.

257 The distinct alongshore wind and wind stress curl lead to differences in the result-
 258 ing SST profiles as averaged over the four eastern boundary regions (Figure 6). The CM4X
 259 results are typically biased warm offshore in the Pacific, whereas they are in better agree-
 260 ment in the Atlantic. The C192 atmosphere leads to an SST that drops faster in the 50-
 261 150 km band in all eastern boundary regions. This result has a favorable impact in the
 262 California system where it compensates for a warm offshore bias, and yet the SST gra-
 263 dient is stronger than observed. In the Peru system, the SST gradient is in good agree-
 264 ment with observations and leads to a much improved simulation using the C192 atmo-
 265 sphere. In the Benguela system, the SST drop at the coast is not present using the C96
 266 atmosphere, whereas the CM4X experiments using the C192 atmosphere are superior.
 267 Finally, the stronger SST gradient in the CM4X simulations with the C192 atmosphere
 268 overshoots the observed values in the Canary system, whereas this region is better cap-
 269 tured using the C96 atmosphere.

270 **3.3 Conclusions regarding eastern boundary upwelling**

271 Ekman mechanics accounts for two key processes important for the upwelling re-
 272 gions: the cross-shore Ekman transport is proportional to alongshore wind stress (Smith,
 273 1968) and Ekman suction is proportional to the wind stress curl (Enriquez & Friehe, 1995;
 274 Pickett & Paduan, 2003). As noted in Jacox and Edwards (2012), cross-shore Ekman
 275 transport dominates in a narrow coastal band (within 50 km of the coast), whereas Ek-
 276 man suction creates small but important upwelling velocities in a broader area extend-
 277 ing from outside the coastal band to 200-300 km offshore (Jacox & Edwards, 2012).

278 Results from the CM4X experiments suggest that reduction in wind stress curl in
 279 the 50-200 km band, and its intensification in the narrow nearshore area, favor a stronger
 280 cross-shore SST gradient. In the CM4X models using the C192 atmosphere, Ekman suc-
 281 tion is concentrated in the nearshore area at the deficit of the broader offshore region.

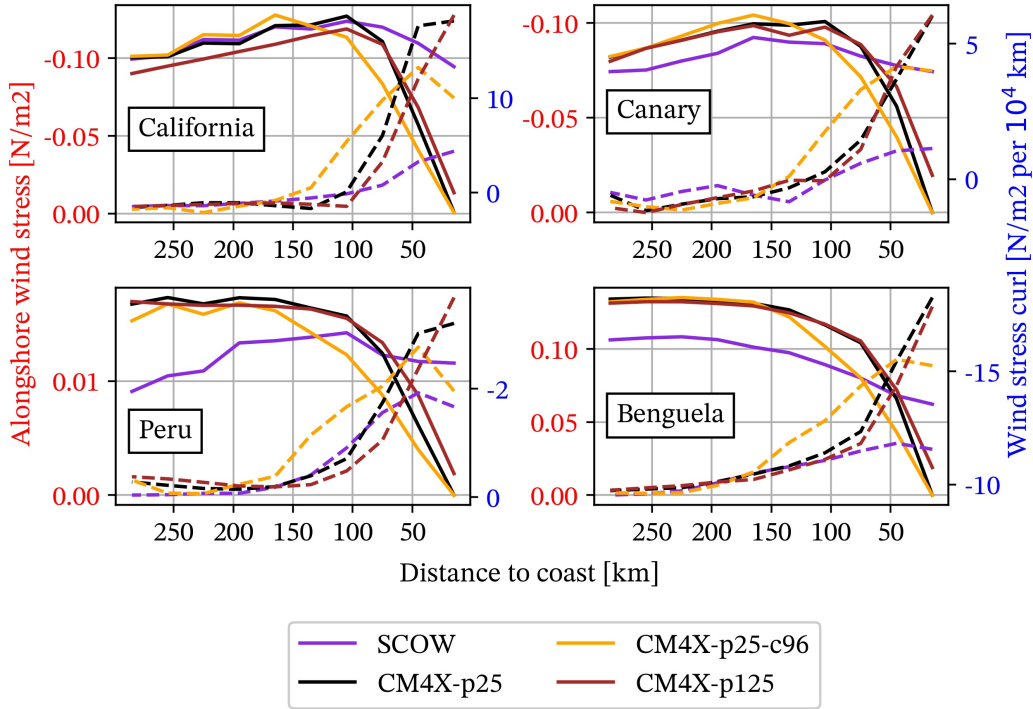


Figure 5. Alongshore wind stress (solid lines/red ticks) and wind stress curl (dashed lines/blue ticks) in the four major eastern boundary upwelling systems during the summer months of 1980-2014. For coastal upwelling at these latitudes, the β term (see equation (2) of Taboada et al. (2018)) is neglected. Gridded data is averaged over the boxes of Figure 4. Note the distinct vertical axes: signs can be reversed so that wind stress decreases at the coast and wind stress curl increases. CM4X-p25-c96 uses the C96 atmosphere model, whereas the other models use the C192 atmosphere. Satellite measurements from SCOW (Risien and Chelton (2008)) are added for reference although they cover a shorter time period (1999-2009). Note the distinct vertical axes on the panels.

282 The cross-shore Ekman transport with the C192 atmosphere remains strong closer to
 283 the coast than with the C96 atmosphere. This result suggests that strengthening of the
 284 Ekman transport part of the upwelling in the 50-150 km band, in conjunction with the
 285 concentration of the wind stress curl at the coast, favors the upwelling. These results are
 286 consistent with previous works from Gent et al. (2010) and Small et al. (2015) in which
 287 intensification of the coastal winds leads to stronger upwelling at the coast and overall
 288 reduction in SST bias.

289 The simulated cross-shore Ekman transport at the coast is weaker than the SCOW
 290 estimates but stronger offshore in all but the California system, with an intersect rang-
 291 ing from 50 to 100 km depending on the region and experiment considered. Since cross-
 292 shore Ekman transport is expected to dominate in the inner 50 km to the coast, this dom-
 293 inance should lead to decreased coastal upwelling, which contrasts to the CM4X SST gra-
 294 dients of Figure 6. In addition, the Ekman suction part of the upwelling is remarkably
 295 consistent with satellite estimates in the offshore part (distance > 100 km) with the C192
 296 atmosphere. The C96 atmosphere departs largely from these estimates in the 100-150 km
 297 band, which should lead to more Ekman suction upwelling velocities. Even so, we do not
 298 find this upwelling signal appears in the SST gradients. We suspect that the biases are

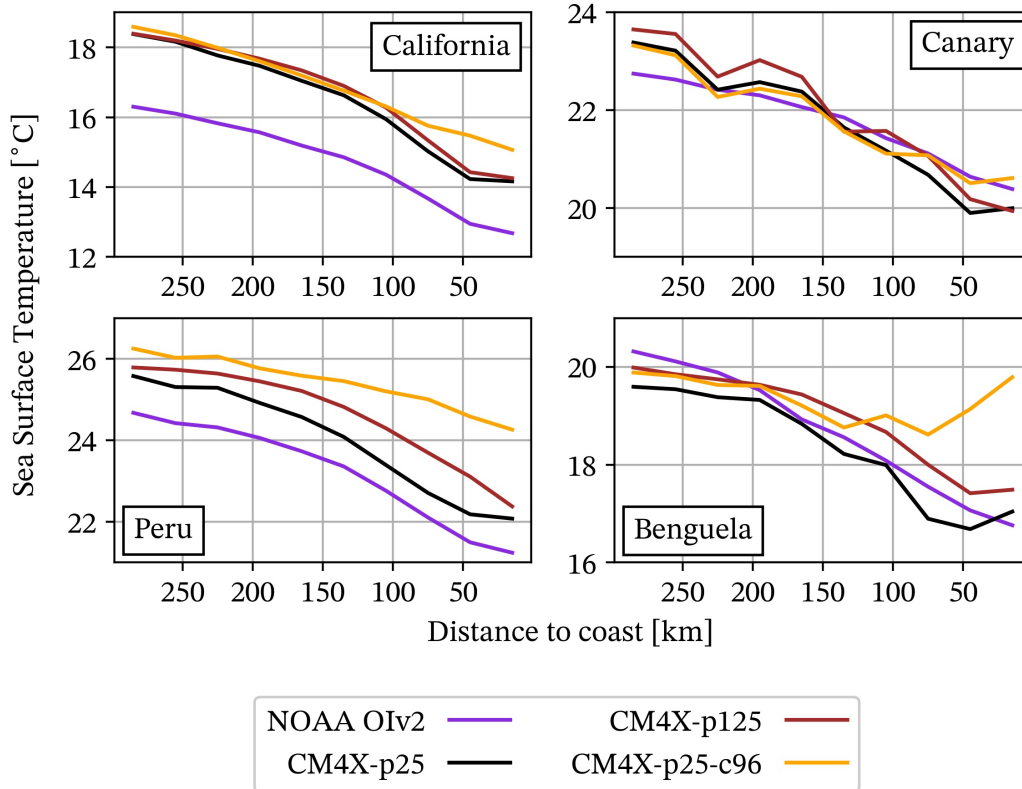


Figure 6. Sea surface temperature in the four major eastern boundary upwelling systems during the summer months of 1980-2014. Results are averaged over the boxes of Figure 4. We include the satellite estimate from NOAA OIv2 (Huang et al., 2020) over the period 1982-2014. Note the different temperature scales on the vertical axes.

299 modified only slightly due to the more dominant issues with atmospheric model’s biases
 300 in representing low level clouds in the eastern boundary upwelling regions, with these
 301 biases a well known feature of atmospheric models (e.g., Richter (2015); Ceppi et al. (2024))
 302 that remain a topic of ongoing research.

303 4 Sea ice in the Arctic Ocean and Southern Ocean

304 In this section, we analyze the simulated Arctic Ocean and Southern Ocean (“Antarc-
 305 tic”) sea ice within the CM4X model hierarchy, focusing on the historical and SSP5-8.5
 306 experiments. We also include results from CM4.0 as a point of comparison. To maxi-
 307 mize use of the most recent observations, which include record low sea ice conditions,
 308 we compute climatologies and trends over 1979-2023 (as opposed to 1979-2014, with 2014
 309 the end of the historical experiment). Doing so requires appending years 2015-2023 from
 310 the SSP5-8.5 scenario simulations to the historical simulations. We consider this addi-
 311 tional model forcing uncertainty worth the benefits of an additional nine years of obser-
 312 vational data.

313 4.1 Arctic Ocean sea ice

314 Figure 7a plots Pan-Arctic sea ice extent (SIE) climatologies computed over 1979–
 315 2023 across the model hierarchy. The seasonal cycle of Pan-Arctic SIE is well simulated

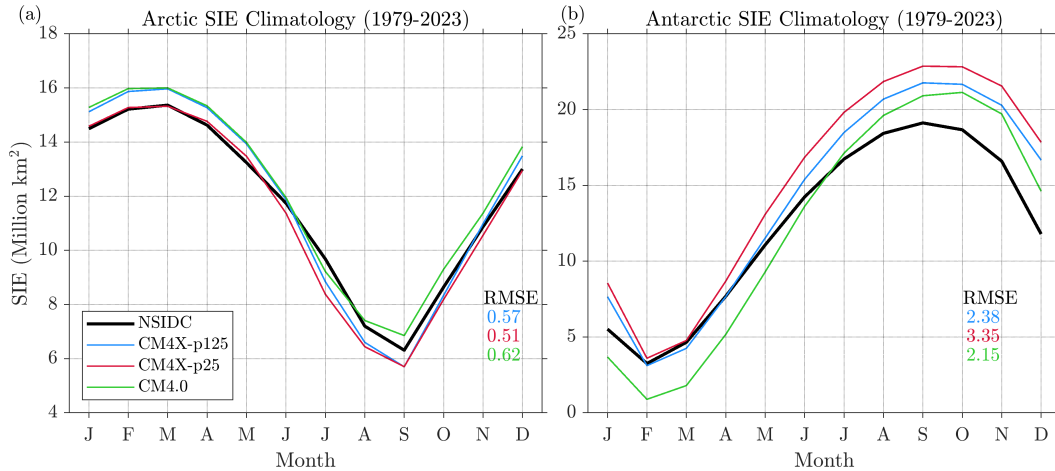


Figure 7. Pan-Arctic and Pan-Antarctic sea ice extent (SIE) climatologies (10^6 km^2) computed over the years 1979–2023 from satellite observations (black), CM4X-p125 (blue), CM4X-p25 (red), and CM4.0 (green). Pan-Arctic and Pan-Antarctic SIE are defined as the area integral of all grid cells covered by at least 15% sea ice concentration (SIC) in the northern and southern hemispheres, respectively. Root-mean-square error (RMSE) are computed between the simulated and observed seasonal cycles and shown in colored text. The observed SIE is computed using passive microwave satellite sea ice concentration observations from the NOAA/National Snow and Ice Data Center (NSIDC) Climate Data Record (CDR) of SIC, version 4 (Data Set ID: G02202; Meier et al. (2021)).

316 by both CM4X models and both models show improvements relative to the CM4.0 sim-
 317 ulation. The RMS errors of the Pan-Arctic SIE climatology are $0.57 \times 10^6 \text{ km}^2$ and $0.51 \times$
 318 10^6 km^2 in the CM4X-p125 and CM4X-p25 models, respectively, which are lower than
 319 the median CMIP5 model RMSE of $1.45 \times 10^6 \text{ km}^2$ (Shu et al., 2015) and the CM4.0
 320 RMSE of $0.62 \times 10^6 \text{ km}^2$. CM4X-p25 has Pan-Arctic SIE improvements in non-summer
 321 months relative to CM4.0, and has a negative summer bias which is similar in magni-
 322 tude to CM4.0’s positive summertime bias. CM4x-p125 is generally similar to CM4.0
 323 in winter and spring and similar to CM4X-p25 in summer and autumn months.

324 The climatological sea ice concentration (SIC) biases of the models are shown in
 325 Figure 8. The spatial pattern of winter Arctic SIC bias is similar across the models (top
 326 row in Figure 8), implying that the improved winter Pan-Arctic SIE simulation of CM4X-
 327 p25 primarily results from cancellation of positive and negative SIC errors. In winter months,
 328 the models have positive biases (too much ice coverage) in the Greenland-Iceland-Norwegian
 329 (GIN), Barents, and Bering Seas and negative biases in the Labrador Sea and the Sea
 330 of Okhotsk. These winter SIC biases closely mirror the patterns of SST bias (compare
 331 with Figure 14 from Part I of Griffies et al. (2024)). The notable positive SIC bias in
 332 the GIN and Barents Seas has been persistent across earlier generations of GFDL mod-
 333 els, such as CM2.1, ESM2M, ESM2G, and CM3 (Delworth et al., 2006; Dunne et al., 2012;
 334 Griffies et al., 2011), possibly related to a combination of too much poleward ocean heat
 335 transport and too much ice export through Fram Strait (see Figure 9). The finer grid
 336 spacing in CM4X-p125, with its enhanced mesoscale eddy activity, does not ameliorate
 337 this bias.

338 The CM4X models have similar patterns and magnitudes of summer SIC bias (sec-
 339 ond row of Figure 8), which differ from the SIC biases of CM4.0. The main improvement
 340 in CM4X is the reduced positive bias in the Beaufort, Chukchi, and East Siberian Seas.

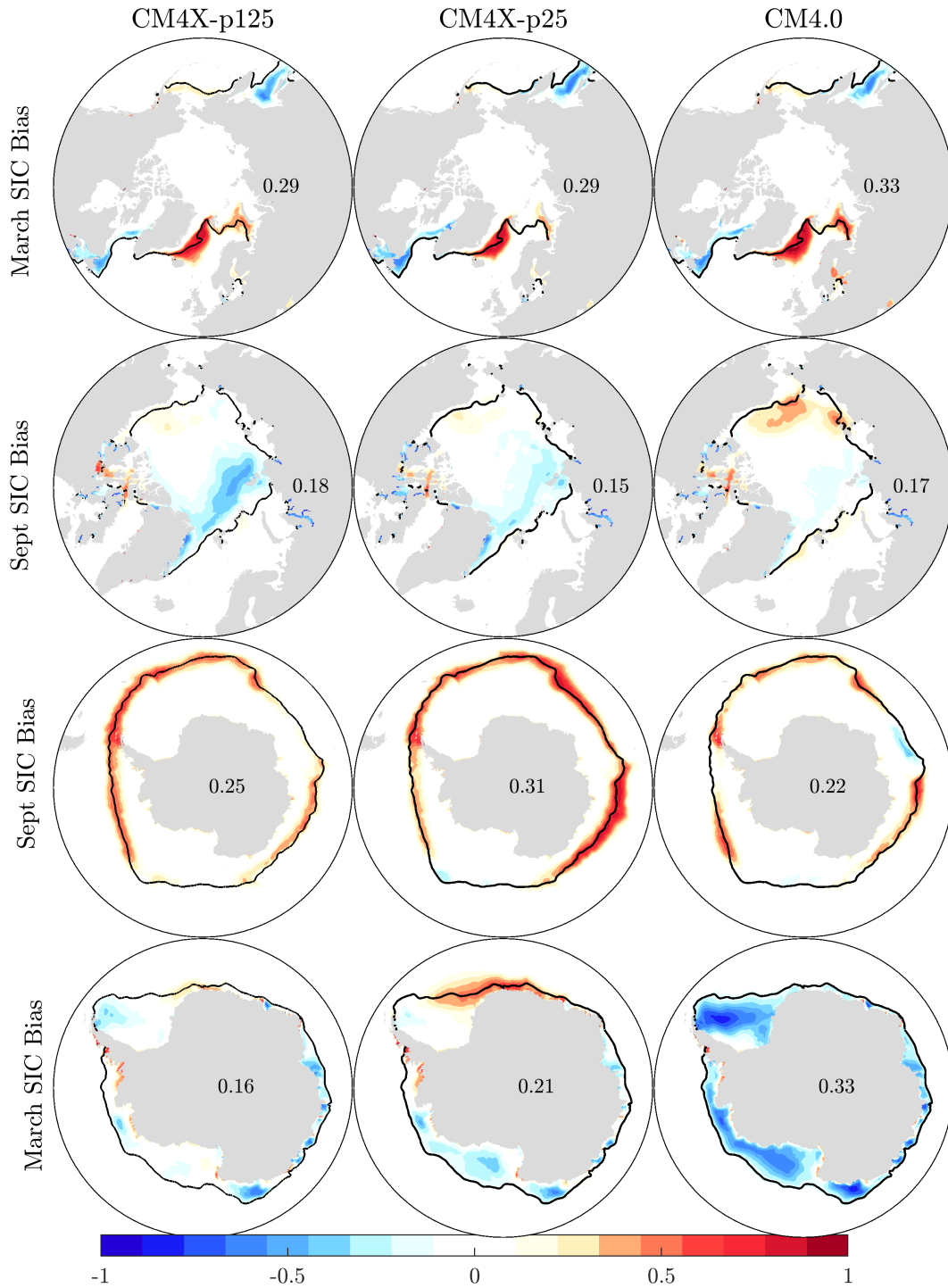


Figure 8. Arctic and Southern Ocean sea ice concentration (SIC) climatological biases (model minus NSIDC CDR observations) in March and September computed over 1979–2023. The black contours indicate the observed climatological sea ice edge position (15% SIC contour). Black text indicates the SIC RMSE area-averaged over the zone of SIC variability, defined as all grid points where the model or observed monthly SIC standard deviation exceeds 5%.

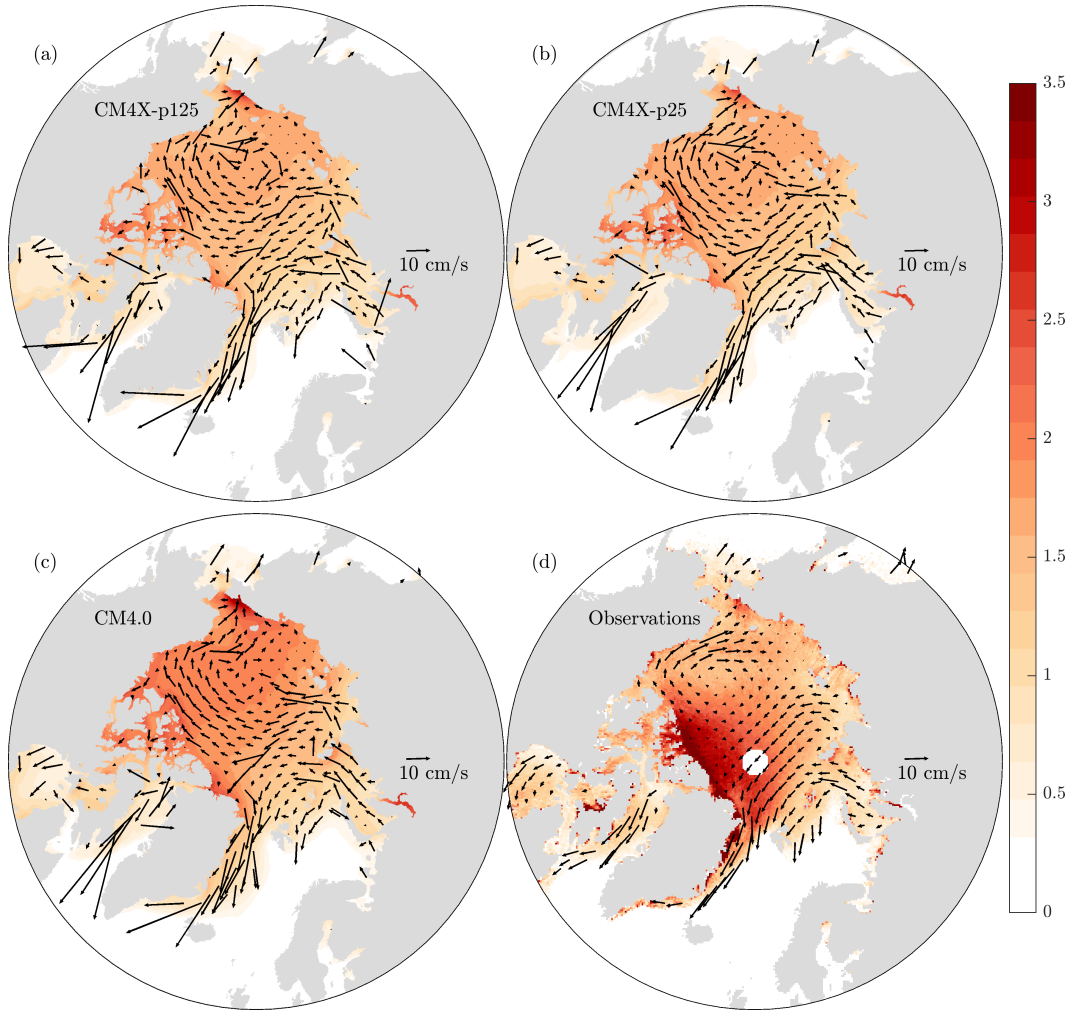


Figure 9. March Arctic sea ice thickness (SIT) climatologies (m; shading) and climatological DJFM sea ice drift (cm/s; vectors) in CM4X, CM4.0, and observations computed over the period 2011–2023. The SIT observations come from the Alfred-Wegener-Institute monthly SIT product (Ricker et al., 2014) and span 2011–2023. The sea ice drift observations are from the low-resolution daily sea ice drift product of the EUMETSAT Ocean and Sea Ice Satellite Application Facility (OSISAF) and span 2010–2023 (Lavergne et al., 2010).

341 This summer SIC bias in CM4.0 is associated with an erroneous pattern of winter sea
 342 ice thickness (SIT), which has the model’s thickest ice located in the Beaufort, Chukchi
 343 and East Siberian Seas rather than north of Greenland and Ellesmere Island as found
 344 in the observations (see Figures 9c,d). This anomalously thick winter ice in the Beaufort,
 345 Chukchi, and East Siberian Seas leads to delayed melt in these regions, resulting
 346 in a spatially coincident positive bias in summer SIC. We find that the CM4X models
 347 share a similar bias in SIT spatial pattern, however, their mean SIT is reduced, result-
 348 ing in lower summer SIC throughout most of the Arctic (Figures 9a,b). This thinner mean
 349 state also results in an exacerbated negative SIC bias in the Greenland Sea and along
 350 the northern boundaries of the Barents, Kara, and Laptev Seas, which is a degradation
 351 relative to CM4.0. One region that is unchanged is the Canadian Arctic Archipelago which
 352 has a consistent positive summer SIC bias across CM4.0, CM4X-p25, and CM4X-p125.

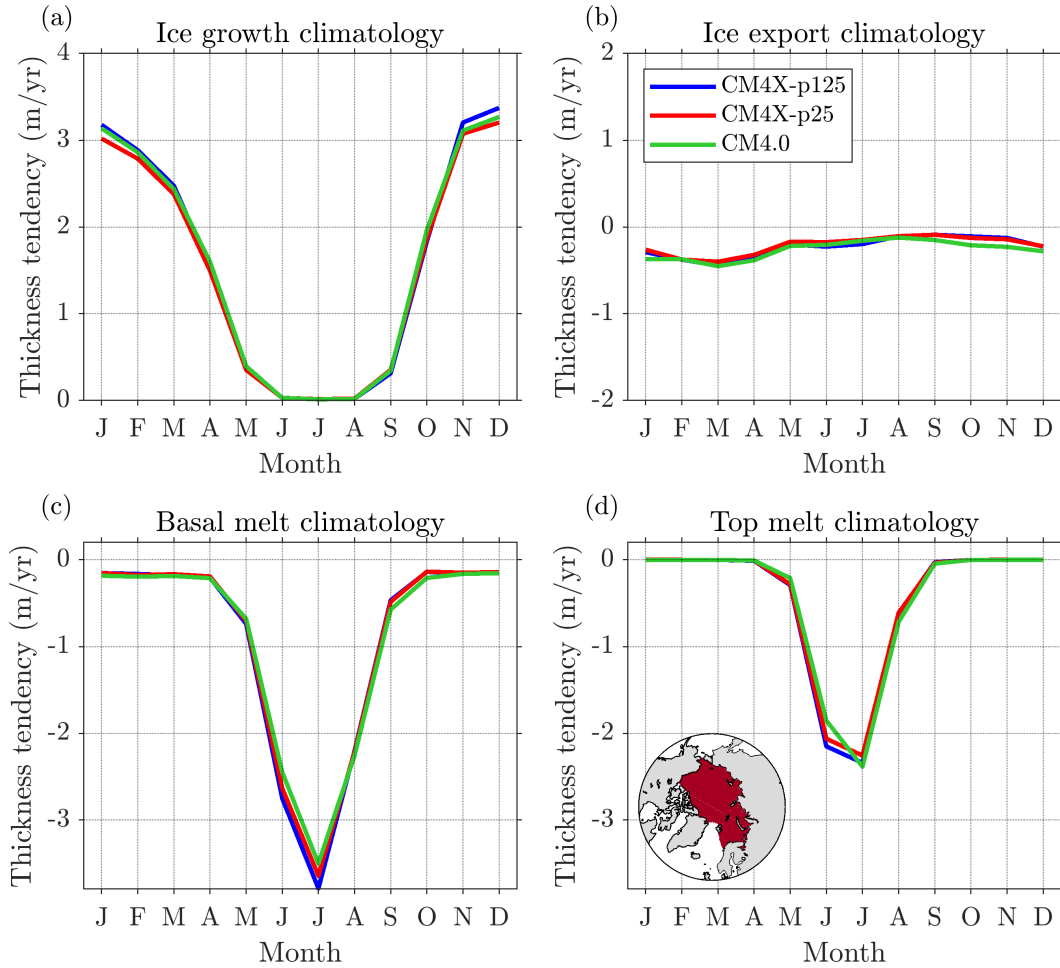


Figure 10. Arctic sea ice mass budget climatologies computed over the Central Arctic basin domain shown in panel (d) over the time period 1979–2023. The mass budget consists of sea ice thickness (SIT) tendency terms (m/yr) corresponding to congelation and frazil ice growth (a), mass transport convergence (b), basal melt (c), and top melt (d). Positive values correspond to mass gain and negative values correspond to mass loss. The y-axis range is the same across the panels, thus allowing for direct comparison of the various terms.

353 Figure 10 shows Arctic sea ice mass budget climatologies computed following the
 354 methodology of Keen et al. (2021), which averages mass budget terms over a Central Arc-
 355 tic domain (see inset of Figure 10d). This domain encompasses the region of thickest Arc-
 356 tic ice and its boundaries include all flux gates to the North Atlantic and North Pacific
 357 sectors. The sea ice mass budget consists of a dynamic tendency term associated with
 358 ice mass transport convergence (export) and thermodynamic tendency terms associated
 359 with congelation and frazil ice growth, basal melt, and top melt. All terms are defined
 360 such that positive values indicate mass gain and negative values indicate mass loss and
 361 are expressed as a thickness tendency in m/yr (note that the SIS2 model uses a constant
 362 sea ice density of 905 kg/m^3). The thinner Arctic ice in CM4X primarily results from
 363 increased summer basal and top melt relative to CM4.0. The CM4X models have less
 364 mass loss due to ice export in autumn. This reduced autumn ice export in CM4X is likely
 365 associated with the thinner and less extensive mean state in these models, as their ice
 366 drift patterns are similar to CM4.0 (see Fig. 9). CM4X-p125 has a similar SIT mean state

367 to CM4X-p25, but has more winter growth, potentially associated with enhanced ice for-
 368 mation in sea ice leads in this higher resolution model.

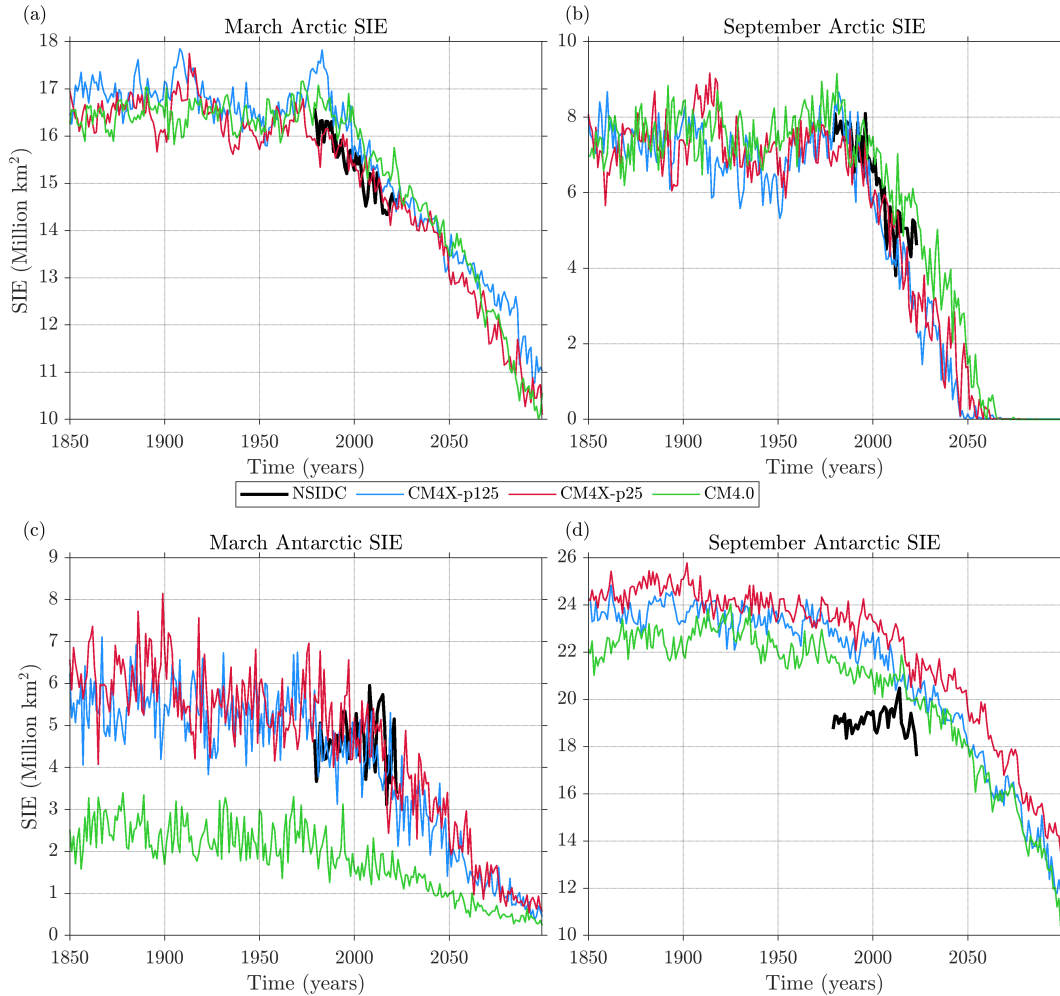


Figure 11. Time series of Arctic and Southern Ocean sea ice extent (SIE) in March and September in CM4X-p125 (blue), CM4X-p25 (red), CM4.0 (green), and NSIDC observations (black) in March and September. The simulations use CMIP6 Historical (1850–2014) and SSP5-8.5 forcings (2015–2099).

369 We next consider the time evolution of Arctic SIE and sea ice volume (SIV) in Fig-
 370 ures 11 and 12. Each model simulates SIE trends in March and September in reason-
 371 able quantitative agreement with the observed SIE decline. Given the large degree of in-
 372 ternal variability in Arctic SIE trends, we do not expect a perfect match between obser-
 373 vations and a single model realization (Jahn et al., 2016; DeRepentigny et al., 2020).
 374 The trend differences between the CM4X and CM4.0 historical simulations and obser-
 375 vations are smaller than the typical ranges estimated by single-model initial conditional
 376 large ensembles performed with other GCMs (Horvat, 2021), suggesting that the CM4X
 377 and CM4.0 models are not inconsistent with observed trends. There are some trend dif-
 378 ferences between the CM4X and CM4.0 models, but multi-member ensembles are nec-
 379 essary to determine if differences are statistically robust. CM4X and CM4.0 each sim-
 380 ulate substantial decadal-to-multidecadal variability over the 20th century. This low-frequency

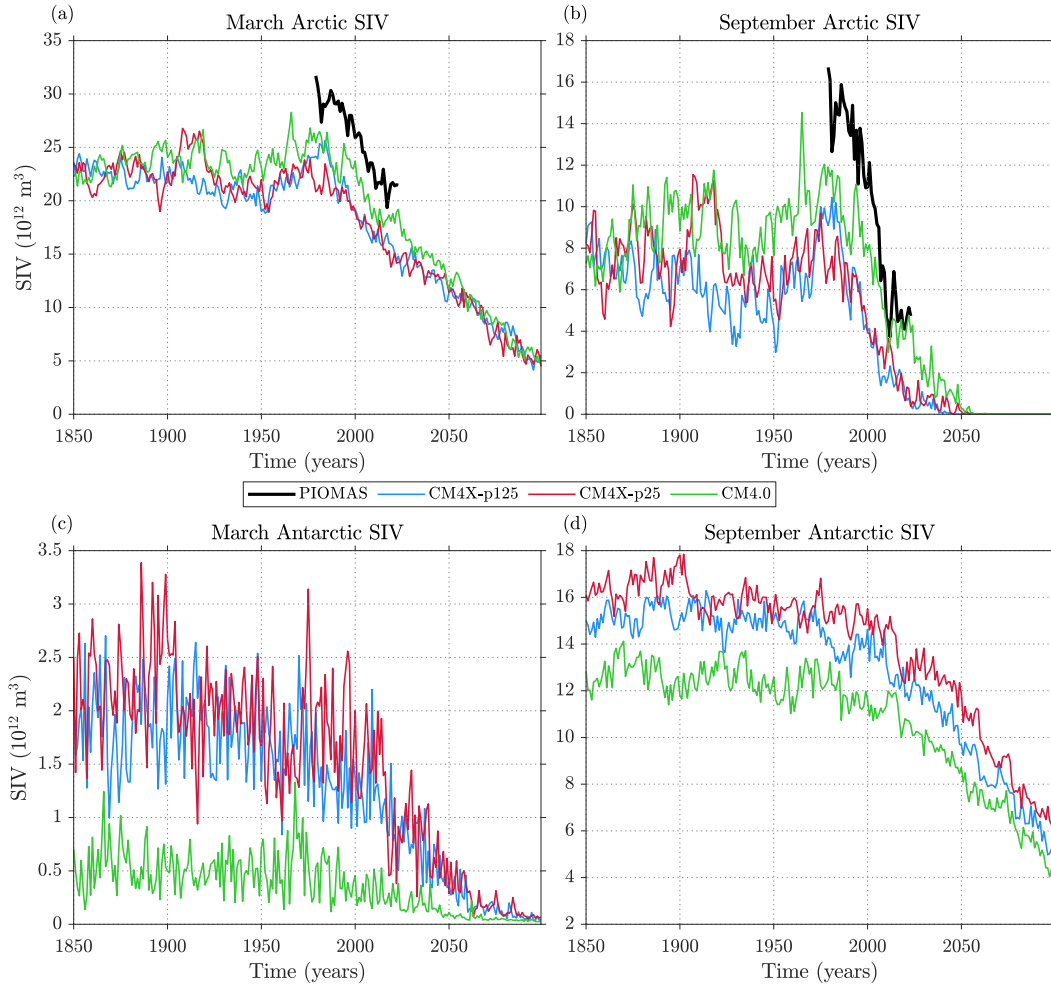


Figure 12. Time series of Arctic and Antarctic sea ice volume (SIV) in March and September in CM4X-p125 (blue), CM4X-p25 (red), CM4.0 (green), and PIOMAS sea ice thickness (SIT) reanalysis (black) in March and September. The simulations use CMIP6 Historical (1850–2014) and SSP5-8.5 forcings (2015–2099). The PIOMAS data spans 1979–2023 and is based on an assimilation system that incorporates SIC, SST, and atmospheric reanalysis constraints (J. Zhang & Rothrock, 2003).

381 variability becomes notably muted under the high-forcing SSP5-8.5 scenario used over
 382 the 21st century.

383 Figure 12 shows that the models are biased thin relative to the Pan-Arctic Ice Ocean
 384 Modeling and Assimilation System (PIOMAS; J. Zhang and Rothrock (2003)) SIT re-
 385 analysis, a product that has reasonably good agreement with available in situ, aircraft,
 386 and satellite observations of SIT (X. Wang et al., 2016; Landy et al., 2022). The CM4X
 387 models have a larger thin bias than CM4.0, but similar SIV timeseries to each other. This
 388 result suggest that the thinner ice in CM4X-p125 relative to CM4.0 is not the result of
 389 refined ocean grid spacing. The models simulate a strong decline of Arctic SIV in all months
 390 of the year (Figure 12). Despite their mean state SIV biases, the models simulate sim-
 391 ilar rates of historical SIV loss to PIOMAS.

392 Under the SSP5-8.5 forcing scenario, the models simulate a complete loss of sum-
 393 mer Arctic SIE and SIV over the 21st century. The first ice-free summers occur in the
 394 years 2040, 2038, and 2052 in the CM4X-p125, CM4X-p25, and CM4.0 models, respec-
 395 tively (defined here as $SIE < 10^6 \text{ km}^2$). This ice-free timing is consistent with the ice-
 396 free range of 2015–2052 as estimated by selected CMIP6 models (SIMIP Community, 2020;
 397 Jahn et al., 2024). All three models also reach ice free conditions in the months of July–
 398 November by the year 2100 (not shown).

399 **4.2 Southern Ocean sea ice**

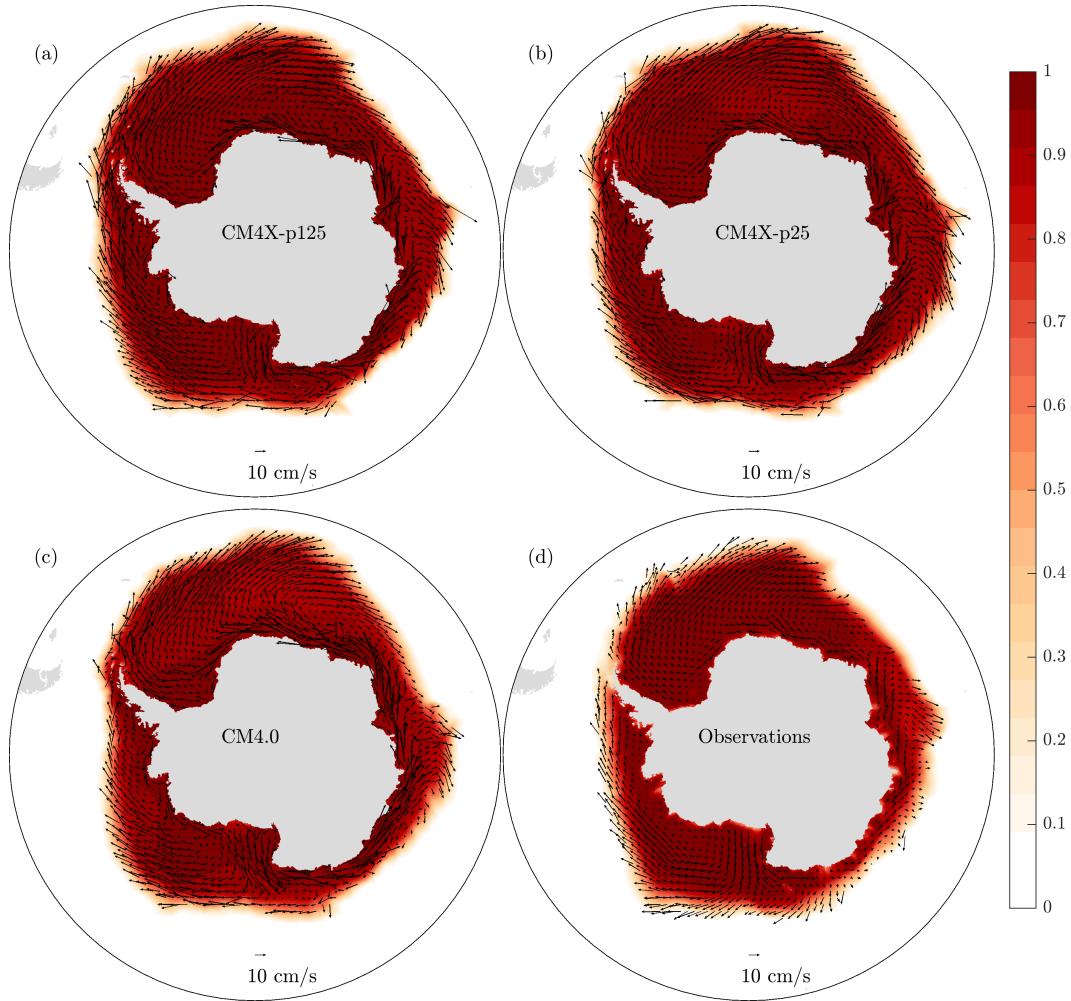


Figure 13. September Southern Ocean SIC climatologies (shading) and climatological JJAS sea ice drift (cm/s; vectors) in CM4X, CM4.0, and observations computed over the period 2011–2023. SIC and sea ice drift observations are from NSIDC and OSISF, respectively. Note that the OSISAF southern hemisphere drift observations span the period 2013–2023.

400 CM4.0, CM4X-p25, and CM4X-p125 each capture the asymmetric seasonal cycle
 401 of Southern Ocean SIE, with five months of ice retreat and seven months of ice advance
 402 (Figure 7b). Compared to the Arctic, the models' SIE biases are generally larger in the
 403 Southern Ocean. CM4.0 has an exaggerated Southern Ocean SIE seasonal cycle with too
 404 little sea ice in austral summer and too much sea ice in austral winter. The CM4X mod-
 405 els have more extensive Southern Ocean sea ice than CM4.0 in all months of the year,

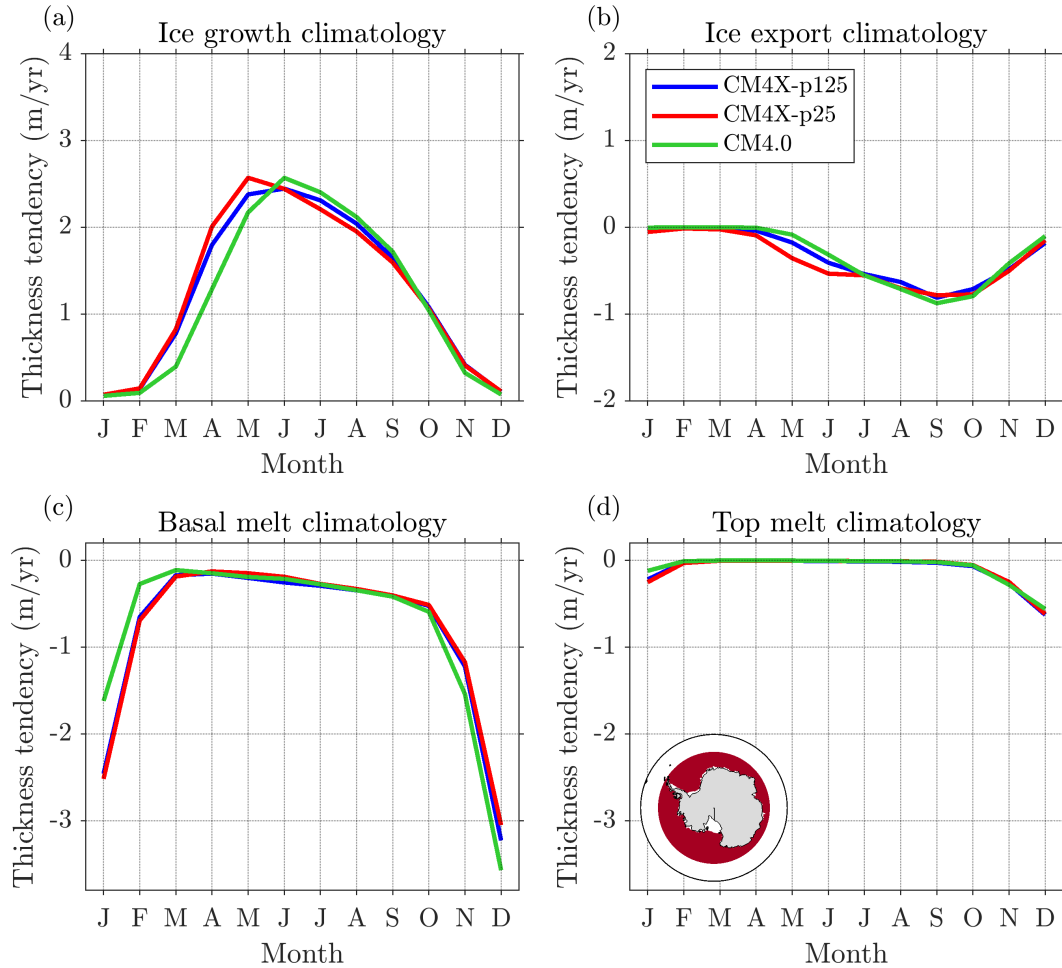


Figure 14. Southern Ocean sea ice mass budget climatologies computed over all gridpoints south of 63°S as shown in panel (d) over the period 1979–2023. The mass budget consists of SIT tendency terms (m/year) corresponding to congelation and frazil ice growth (a), mass transport convergence (b), basal melt (c), and top melt (d). Positive values correspond to mass gain and negative values correspond to mass loss. The y-axis range is the same across the panels, thus allowing for direct comparison of the various terms, and for comparing to the Arctic mass budget in Figure 10.

406 likely associated with the increased near-infrared land ice albedo values that were used
 407 in CM4X in order to promote Southern Ocean ventilation and production of AABW (see
 408 Appendix A4 in Part I (Griffies et al., 2024)). These higher albedos result in a cooler
 409 Southern Ocean surface climate with more sea ice than CM4.0. The increased sea ice
 410 coverage in CM4X improves upon the CM4.0 model biases in summer months yet ex-
 411 acerbates the winter sea ice biases. The RMS errors of the Pan-Antarctic SIE climatol-
 412 ogy are $2.38 \times 10^6 \text{ km}^2$, $3.35 \times 10^6 \text{ km}^2$, and $2.15 \times 10^6 \text{ km}^2$ in CM4X-p125, CM4X-
 413 p25, and CM4.0, respectively, which can be compared to the CMIP5 multi-model mean
 414 RMSE of $3.42 \times 10^6 \text{ km}^2$ (Shu et al., 2015). A low bias in summer Southern Ocean sea
 415 ice is a ubiquitous bias across CMIP5 and CMIP6 models (Roach et al., 2020), which
 416 the CM4X models ameliorate.

417 Figure 8 shows climatological Southern Ocean SIC biases. We find that the spatial
 418 pattern of summer SIC is well captured by the CM4X-p125 model, whereas CM4X-

419 p25 simulates too much sea ice in the Weddell Sea and too little in the Ross Sea (bot-
 420 tom row of Figure 8). All three models fail to simulate summer sea ice along the coast-
 421 lines of the Indian Ocean and West Pacific sectors, which are regions with substantial
 422 landfast sea ice coverage (Fraser et al., 2023). We note that this sea ice model does not
 423 include a landfast ice parameterization. The summer SIC RMSE values of both CM4X
 424 models are reduced relative to CM4.0, which has negative SIC biases throughout the sum-
 425 mer sea ice zone. All three models have positive winter SIC biases that are relatively cir-
 426 cumpolar, however the biases are progressively stronger in CM4.0, CM4X-p125, and CM4X-
 427 p25 (third row of Fig. 8). CM4.0 has negative SIC biases within the sea ice pack in the
 428 Weddell Sea near Maud Rise, suggestive of too much vertical mixing and a tendency to
 429 form open-ocean polynyas in this region. These negative SIC biases are not present in
 430 the CM4X models.

431 The climatological winter Southern Ocean sea ice drift is shown in Figure 13. The
 432 general patterns of observed Southern Ocean sea ice drift are well captured by the mod-
 433 els, with each model simulating northward sea ice export in the Weddell and Ross Seas,
 434 westward drift along the Antarctic coastal current, and strong eastward drift associated
 435 with the Antarctic circumpolar current. The models have drift speeds that are gener-
 436 ally too fast relative to observations. This bias may contribute to the models' positive
 437 biases in wintertime SIC, since stronger drift implies a greater northward export of sea
 438 ice. We also find that the drift speeds along the Antarctic coastal current are notably
 439 higher than observed, especially in the zone of landfast sea ice along the eastern Antarc-
 440 tic coastline. This overly mobile sea ice shows that the model is unable to simulate land-
 441 fast ice, and this potentially underpins the negative summer SIC biases in this region.

442 Figure 14 shows Southern Ocean sea ice mass budgets computed over the region
 443 south of 63°S (see inset of panel d). This region was chosen to encompass the primary
 444 zone of sea ice growth and melt while also capturing the dominant flux gates for sea ice
 445 export. Relative to CM4.0, the CM4X models show a clear shift in sea ice growth to ear-
 446 lier in the autumn season, consistent with the higher glacier albedos and cooler surface
 447 climate in CM4X (see Appendix A3 in Part I (Griffies et al., 2024)). The CM4X mod-
 448 els also have more total annual sea ice growth, forming approximately an additional 0.1m
 449 of sea ice each year. The CM4X models also have more sea ice export during the autumn
 450 months, likely associated with the enhanced sea ice growth and thicker sea ice produced
 451 over these months. The dominant melt contributions come from basal melt, with the CM4X
 452 models showing a later spring onset of basal melt compared to CM4.0, consistent with
 453 the higher albedo and cooler surface climate in these runs. We also note that, compared
 454 to the Arctic, Southern Ocean sea ice has larger basal melt contributions during win-
 455 ter months, which tend to increase as winter mixed layers deepen.

456 Figures 11c,d and Figures 12c,d show time evolution of Southern Ocean SIE and
 457 SIV, respectively. Roach et al. (2020) showed that nearly every CMIP6 model simulates
 458 a negative Southern Ocean SIE trend in both summer and winter, failing to capture the
 459 observed trends which are close to zero in these seasons. This behavior is also the case
 460 for the CM4X and CM4.0 models, which simulate declines of Southern Ocean SIE in all
 461 months of the year over the period 1979–2023. This mismatch in modeled and observed
 462 trends may have contributions from missing meltwater forcing from Antarctic ice sheet
 463 and ice shelf melt (Bronsele et al., 2018; Schmidt et al., 2023), systematic coupled model
 464 errors (Purich et al., 2016; Kay et al., 2016; Rackow et al., 2022), and internal climate
 465 variability (Meehl et al., 2016; L. Zhang et al., 2019). The CM4X and CM4.0 models sim-
 466 ulate ice free Southern Ocean conditions (defined here as $SIE < 10^6 \text{ km}^2$) in January–
 467 March by the year 2100, with CM4.0 reaching ice free states much earlier than CM4X.
 468 CM4X-p125 and CM4X-p25 have their first ice-free February in years 2049 and 2050,
 469 respectively, whereas CM4.0 simulates an ice free February states intermittently through-
 470 out the 20th century.

471

4.3 Conclusions regarding the sea ice simulations

472

473

474

475

476

477

478

479

480

481

482

483

484

485

486

487

488

489

490

Both CM4X models provide credible simulations of the Pan-Arctic sea ice mean state and trends, however the models simulate notable regional SIC errors, which are likely a combination of sea ice model physics errors and coupled model errors that originate in the atmospheric and oceanic components. It is notable that the spatial pattern of SIC and SIT model errors are very similar across the $1/4^\circ$ and $1/8^\circ$ CM4X configurations, and closely resemble the error patterns of the GFDL-ESM4.1 (Dunne et al., 2020) and GFDL-SPEAR (Bushuk et al., 2022) models, which have nominal horizontal grid spacings of $1/2^\circ$ and 1° , respectively. This similarity suggests that sea ice model errors are relatively insensitive to horizontal grid spacing across the $1/8^\circ$ – 1° range. Models in this range are not eddy resolving in the Arctic Ocean basin and Subpolar seas (see Figure 1 from Part I (Griffies et al., 2024)), and it is possible that a clearer impact of fine horizontal grid spacing would emerge in models that are fully eddy resolving in the Arctic. These eddy-resolving grids represent scales below the formal length scale of validity for viscous-plastic sea ice rheologies (Feltham, 2008). Even so, recent work has shown that the viscous-plastic rheology can simulate good agreement with observed sea ice drift and deformation even with 1 km grid spacing (Hutter et al., 2018). Key Arctic sea ice priorities for future model development include improving the spatial pattern of SIT, improving the magnitude and pattern of sea ice drift, and improving the persistent positive SIC bias in the GIN and Barents Seas.

491

492

493

494

495

496

497

498

499

500

501

Compared to the Arctic, the CM4X models have larger errors for the Southern Ocean sea ice mean state and trends, which is also a generic property across most CMIP models (Shu et al., 2015). For Southern Ocean sea ice, there appears to be a modest benefit from refined ice-ocean grid spacing, as CM4X-p125 has slightly reduced biases relative to CM4X-p25. It is notable that CM4X ice-ocean resolution does not clearly influence historical Southern Ocean sea ice trends, as CM4X-p125 and CM4X-p25 have comparable SIE trends across all months of the year. Key Southern Ocean sea ice priorities for future model development include improving the significant positive biases in wintertime SIC, reducing sea ice drift speeds, adding a representation of landfast Antarctic sea ice, improving simulated summer SIC in East Antarctica, and improving the simulation of SIE trends across all seasons.

502

5 Southern Ocean

503

504

505

506

507

508

509

510

511

512

513

514

515

516

517

518

519

520

521

The Southern Ocean plays a dominant role in anthropogenic heat and carbon uptake (Frölicher et al., 2015; Roemmich et al., 2015; DeVries et al., 2019), thus the representation of physical processes in this region is critical for accurately simulating the transient climate response. The Southern Ocean is home to the strongest current on the planet, the Antarctic Circumpolar Current (ACC), which acts as the primary pathway for inter-basin exchange of physical and biogeochemical tracers. Intimately linked to the structure of the ACC, the Southern Ocean is also home to a meridional overturning circulation whose deep branch ventilates the densest waters in the World Ocean, namely the Antarctic Bottom Water (AABW), and whose intermediate branch plays a large role in the oceanic sequestration of anthropogenic heat and carbon (see Morrison et al. (2022) for a review of physical processes). Additionally, the waters on and just offshore of the Antarctic continental shelf in the subpolar Southern Ocean directly influence the mass balance of the Antarctic Ice Sheet and thus dynamics in this region exert a strong influence on global sea level rise (Paolo et al., 2015). Indeed, such concerns about sea level rise have placed a growing appreciation for the important role of Antarctic shelf processes in the global climate system. Recent work has emphasized the need for improved model representation of ocean dynamics near to and along the Antarctic shelf, including the Antarctic Slope Current (ASC) and Antarctic Coastal Current (ACoC) (A. F. Thompson et al., 2018; Moorman et al., 2020; Purich & England, 2021; Beadling et al., 2022).

Mesoscale eddies, as well as jets and boundary currents, play a central role in the dynamics of the ACC and ASC, the meridional overturning circulation, and shelf-ocean exchange (e.g., Goddard et al. (2017); Stewart et al. (2018, 2019)). Hence, this region provides strong motivation to refine ocean grid spacing for studying the role of the Southern Ocean in climate. Although the CM4X models remain too coarse to resolve many key processes on the shelf (e.g., see Figure 1 from Part I (Griffies et al., 2024)), they succeed in pushing the envelope of global climate models by offering a refined representation of flows on the shelf and slope (grid spacing is roughly 7 km at 70°S in CM4X-p125), thus offering a tool to probe the role of these currents on larger scale climate.

5.1 Features of the horizontal circulation

The ACC has been a topic of study with large-scale and fine resolution numerical models since the 1990s, following the pioneering efforts of the FRAM project (FRAM Group, 1991) and further pursued across a grid resolution hierarchy by Hallberg and Gnanadesikan (2006). These studies, and many more, have helped to establish the fundamental importance of the ACC for large scale climate dynamics (Rintoul et al. (2001); Rintoul and Naveira Garabato (2013); Rintoul (2018)). Despite this fundamental importance, many coupled climate models still struggle to accurately represent the mean-state ACC strength and structure (Beadling et al., 2020). For the CM4X models, the ACC is revealed by a strong eastward zonal flow comprised of multiple jet-like structures such as seen in Figures 4 and 5 of Part I (Griffies et al., 2024), as well as Figure 15 shown here. Many details of the stronger ACC flow patterns are similar between CM4X-p25 and CM4X-p125, reflecting the deep reaching nature of Southern Ocean currents that are affected by bottom topography and thus generally follow f/H contours (f is the Coriolis parameter and H is the bottom depth). We also commented on this feature of the Southern Ocean in Figure 5 from Griffies et al. (2024), where much of the kinetic energy in the Southern Ocean is dominated by the depth averaged velocity.

Moving south towards Antarctica, we encounter the westward flowing (ASC) along the continental slope. As reviewed by A. F. Thompson et al. (2018), the ASC is present in most regions around Antarctica, with the notable exception of the West Antarctic Peninsula and westward until reaching the Amundsen Sea.

Though transporting far less mass than the ACC, there is a growing appreciation for the impacts of the ASC on regional and global climate. In particular, as reviewed by Beadling (2023), the ASC acts as a barrier to meltwater originating from Antarctic ice shelves leaving the continental shelf, and conversely as a barrier to relatively warm Circumpolar Deep Waters penetrating towards the continental shelf from the north. As encountered in modeling studies such as Goddard et al. (2017); Moorman et al. (2020); Lockwood et al. (2021); Beadling et al. (2022); Tesdal et al. (2023), a realistically strong ASC introduces a fundamentally new dynamical regime into the Southern Ocean that is absent from coarse models (roughly those ocean models with horizontal grids coarser than 0.25°). Given the extremely small Rossby deformation radius along the Antarctic continental slope/shelf region (see Figure 1 from Part I (Griffies et al., 2024)), it is likely that global models will fail to accurately represent the full dynamical impacts of the ASC until reaching toward 1 km horizontal grid spacing.

In Figure 15 we display two meridional-depth sections, one through the Drake Passage and one south of Tasmania. Here we see the deep reaching eastward jet-like flows found in both sections, along with distinct westward flows. The westward flows are generally weaker and found particularly at depth and, for the Tasmanian section, we find the strong westward flowing ASC along the Antarctic continental slope. Note the rather weak flow in the Tasmanian section for latitudes between approximately 60°S and 55°S, with the upper flow weakly westward and deep flows very weak. The topography between these regions is rather fine scale, suggesting that this “rough” topography acts to weaken

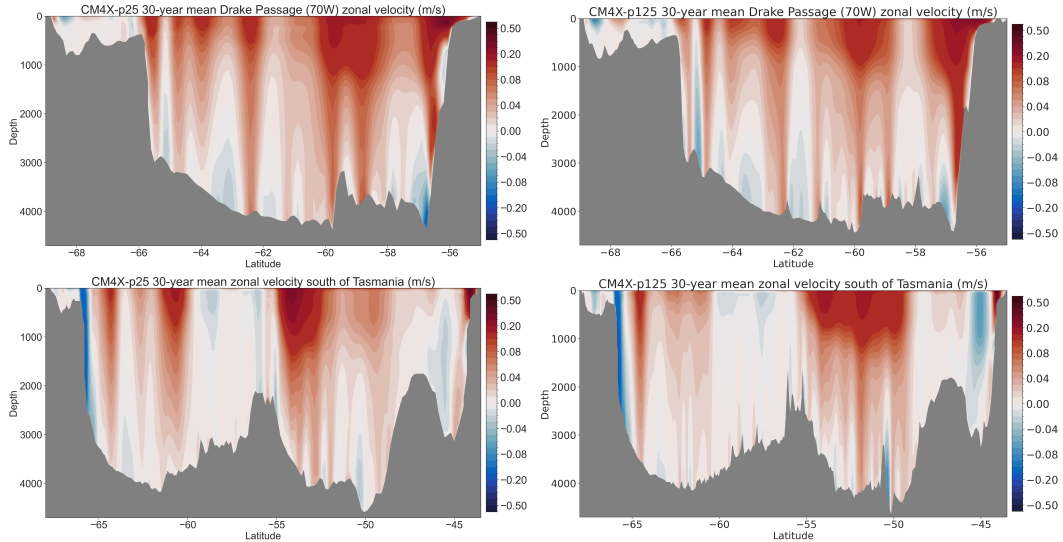


Figure 15. 30 year mean zonal velocity along a longitude within the Drake Passage (upper row) and south of Tasmania (lower row). Note the deep reaching zonal flows, with some deep reaching westward flows. Also note that strong and deep reaching westward flowing Antarctic Slope Current seen in the section south of Tasmania, whereas this current is largely absent in the Drake Passage section (see A. F. Thompson et al. (2018) for a review). The colorbars are the same for all panels, though the latitude range differs for the top row and bottom row.

573 the otherwise deep reaching flow. This feature of the flow over the rough topography may
 574 suggest a role for the rough bottom modes of LaCasce (2017). Even so, the horizontal
 575 flow does *not* generally vanish at the bottom, which contrasts to the assumptions of LaCasce
 576 (2017). Indeed, the Drake Passage section of CM4X-p125 is notable for its bottom en-
 577 hanced westward flows. It is notable that all eastward flows are surface intensified (equiv-
 578 alent barotropic), whereas some of the westward flows in the open ACC, and particu-
 579 larly in the Drake Passage section, are bottom intensified. The presence of deep west-
 580 ward jets in the vicinity of the ACC have been noted in previous observational studies
 581 and high resolution simulations (Xu et al., 2020).

582 In Figure 16 we show the Drake Passage transport, which provides a traditional
 583 measure summarizing the zonal flow in the ACC. CM4X-p25 is roughly 10-15 Sv stronger
 584 than CM4X-p125 throughout the historical simulation, with CM4X-p125 consistent with
 585 the CMIP6 ensemble mean whereas CM4X-p25 is consistent with the lower end of the
 586 observational based estimates. After roughly 100 years of spin-up, both piControl simu-
 587 lations exhibit multi-decadal fluctuations of roughly 10 Sv. For the historical simula-
 588 tion, CM4X-p125 shows a slight decrease whereas CM4X-p25 is roughly unchanged. Both
 589 models show a decline during the SSP5-8.5 until around year 2060, at which point the
 590 strength stabilizes (CM4X-p25) or begins to rebound (CM4X-p125).

591 5.2 Ventilation, watermass transformation, and overturning circulation

592 The CM4X mixed layer depths in Figure 9 from Part I (Griffies et al., 2024) re-
 593 veals a narrow band of deep mixing on the Antarctic continental shelf where dense shelf
 594 water (DSW) forms and then subsequently overflows down the continental slope, venti-
 595 lating the deep ocean and leading to the formation of AABW (Rintoul & Naveira Gara-
 596 bato, 2013; Rintoul, 2018). In Figure 17 we display bottom temperature and salinity on
 597 the Antarctic continental shelf, defined here as the region landward of the 1000-m iso-

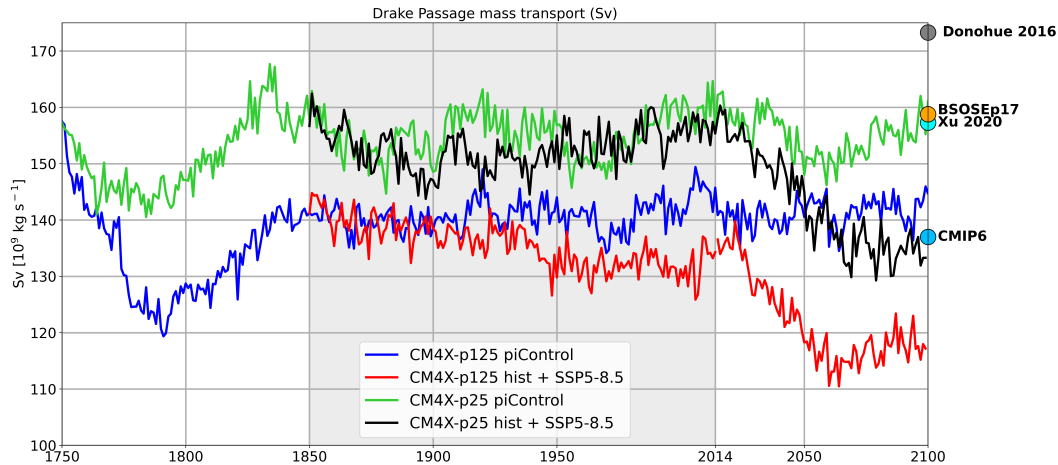


Figure 16. Time series of annual mean mass transport through the Drake Passage in units of Sverdrup (10^9 kg s^{-1}) for the CM4X simulations. The gray shaded region is the historical portion of the simulation. The colored markers on the right edge of the plot indicate the observed estimate of the total flow through the Drake Passage from the cDrake array from Donohue et al. (2016), based on an observation period of 2007 to 2011; the observationally-constrained Biogeochemical Southern Ocean State Estimate (Verdy & Mazloff, 2017) at 1/6-degree and integrated from 2013–2018; the 1/12th HYbrid Coordinate Ocean Model (Xu et al., 2020); and the CMIP6 Drake Passage transport ensemble mean of historical simulations averaged from 1986 to 2005 (Beadling et al., 2020).

598 bath. These shelf properties play a central role in determining the volume and forma-
 599 tion rate of DSW and influence the stability of ice shelves ringing the continent. Both
 600 CM4X-p25 and CM4X-p125 versions produce spatial distributions of bottom temper-
 601 ature and salinity qualitatively consistent with observations, yet with notable differences
 602 in magnitudes in specific regions. For bottom temperatures, both the CM4X models are
 603 more consistent with observations than that simulated by most models within the CMIP6
 604 ensemble, which exhibit significant biases (e.g., Figure S8 from Purich and England 2021).
 605 CM4X-p125 exhibits a warmer and slightly more saline West Antarctic shelf compared
 606 to CM4X-p25. The West Antarctic shelf regime is characterized as a “warm shelf” (Thomp-
 607 son et al., 2018) where upward sloping isopycnals and the lack of an ASC allows warm
 608 Circumpolar Deep Water (CDW) to readily access the shelf. The warmer West Antarc-
 609 tic bottom temperatures in CM4X-p125 are consistent with a slightly warmer mean-state
 610 off shore reservoir of CDW compared to CM4X-p25. CM4X-p125 also exhibits a much
 611 fresher East Antarctic shelf that could be related to its stronger ASC compared to CM4X-
 612 p25.

613 The spatial pattern of surface watermass transformation (WMT) across the dens-
 614 est waters confirm that both versions of CM4X simulate DSW formation and subsequent
 615 down slope flow in realistic locations along the Antarctic shelf (Jacobs, 2004; Silvano et
 616 al., 2023), highlighting the shelves around Weddell Sea, Prydz Bay, Adelie Land, and the
 617 Ross Sea (Figure 18). The red shading in Figures 18a,b shows the mean surface WMT
 618 per unit area across σ_2 (potential density referenced to 2000 dbar) classes for the period
 619 1975-2012, focusing on the densest water classes. Choosing the densest waters available
 620 in each region captures the spatial distribution of where DSW formation occurs that con-
 621 tributes to the formation of AABW. The bottom age distribution (green shading in Fig-
 622 ures 18a,b) illustrates the pathways of newly formed dense waters from the Antarctic
 623 slope to the abyssal ocean. These patterns align with the known AABW pathways iden-

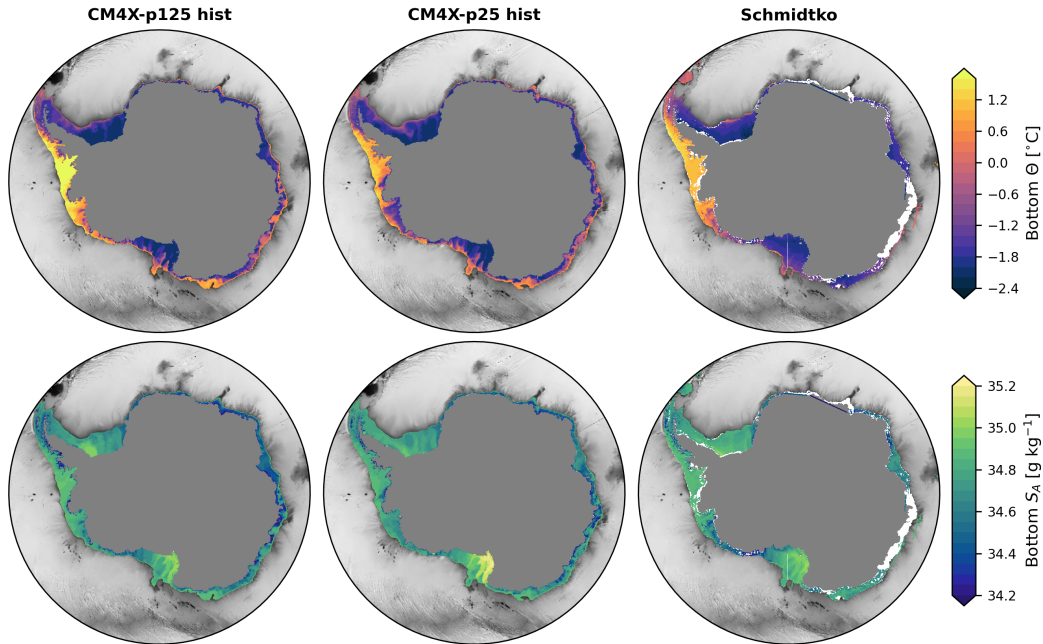


Figure 17. Temperature and salinity along the bottom of the Antarctic shelf from the CM4X models and as compared to the observational based analysis of Schmidtko et al. (2014). The fields are averages for the period 1975-2012, which is the time period used by Schmidtko et al. (2014). We define the shelf as the region with depth shallower than 1000 m.

624 tified from observational studies (e.g., Silvano et al. (2023)) and is consistent with pas-
 625 sive tracers studies using a reanalysis-forced model (Solodoch et al., 2022).

626 The total DSW formation over the Antarctic continental shelf, estimated as the
 627 maximum surface WMT, is approximately 5 Sv and occurs for $\sigma_2 > 37$, with CM4X-
 628 p25 exhibiting a slightly greater DSW formation compared to CM4X-p125 (Figure 18c).
 629 Furthermore, the surface WMT is shifted towards higher σ_2 by around 0.1 in CM4X-
 630 p25 compared to CM4X-p125, especially in the Ross Sea sector (dashed lines in Figure
 631 18c), which is consistent with the formation of higher salinity waters in this region (Fig-
 632 ure 17). The Ross Sea sector shows the highest WMT rates compared to other regions,
 633 while the Weddell Sea sector (dotted lines in Figure 18c) also exhibits significant WMT,
 634 in agreement with observational estimates identifying these two regions as the major sources
 635 of DSW and AABW (Silvano et al., 2023).

636 To interpret Figure 18c, it is important to note at what densities positive WMT
 637 occurs. Both the Ross and Weddell sections in Figure 18c represent the majority of the
 638 WMT in the range of $\sigma_2 > 37$. Adding these two together explains the bulk contribu-
 639 tion to dense water formation required for AABW. Other regions over the Antarctic shelf
 640 show positive WMT. However, these transformations occur at generally lighter densi-
 641 ties ($\sigma_2 < 37$). As shown in Figure 7 from Part I (Griffies et al., 2024), the bottom cell
 642 overturning is associated with waters denser than $\sigma_2 = 37$, indicating that any surface
 643 WMT at lighter densities are not expected to contribute to AABW formation and bot-
 644 tom cell overturning.

645 The spatial pattern in bottom age (Figures 18a,b) is also consistent with the differ-
 646 ence in surface WMT between the two CM4X models, and the dominant role of sur-
 647 face WMT in the Ross and Weddell sections, showing slightly younger bottom waters

648 in CM4X-p25 along the AABW pathways due to the higher density waters formed on
 649 the shelf, emanating away from the Ross and Weddell Seas. The total DSW formation
 650 rate of approximately 5 Sv in both CM4X model configurations is on the lower end of
 651 the observational range, which spans 5-15 Sv (Silvano et al., 2023). However, this for-
 652 mation rate is a significant improvement compared to most CMIP6 models (Heuzé, 2021),
 653 suggesting that both CM4X simulations capture the relevant processes responsible for
 654 DSW and AABW production.

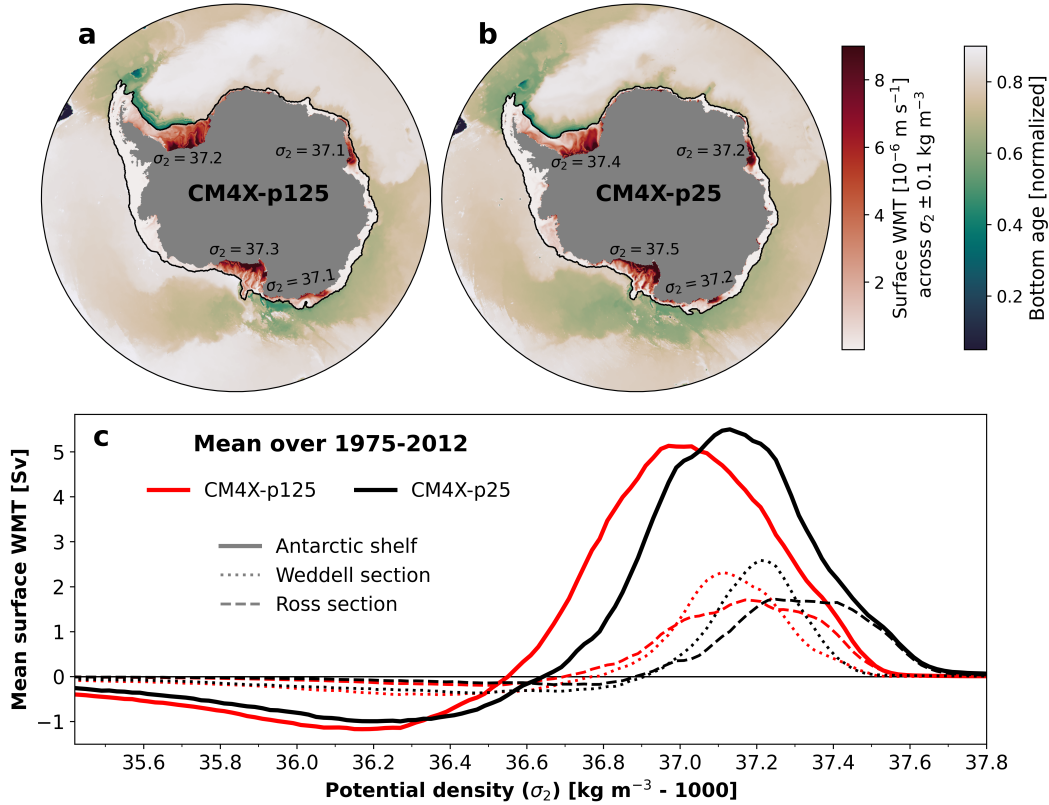


Figure 18. Surface water mass transformation (WMT) on the Antarctic continental shelf and bottom water age distribution over the abyssal Southern Ocean in (a) CM4X-p125 and (b) CM4X-p25. The red shading in panels a and b represent the time mean (1975-2012) surface WMT per unit area across σ_2 potential density classes (potential density referenced to 2000 dbar), separately determined in the four key DSW formation regions based on the densest water class. For the Weddell, Prydz/Adelie, and Ross shelves the surface WMT is mapped across σ_2 isopycnals of 37.2, 37.1 and 37.3 in CM4X-p125, and 37.4, 37.2 and 37.5 in CM4X-p25. The green shading in panels a and b represents the bottom age tracer at year 2009, normalized to the total simulation length (100 years of spinup + 1850-2009 historical = 260 years). (c) Mean (1975-2012) surface WMT in σ_2 integrated over the Antarctic shelf, Weddell (62°W-10°E) and Ross section (154°E-134°W) for CM4X-p125 (red lines) and CM4X-p25 (black lines).

655 The overturning circulation streamfunction offers a means to both measure and to
 656 visualize ventilation of the ocean interior. As a complement to the pole-to-pole over-
 657 turning in Figure 7 from Part I (Griffies et al., 2024) that illustrates connections between
 658 the Southern Ocean and North Atlantic, in Figure 19 we focus on the Southern Ocean
 659 overturning. The AABW cell is the densest cell (blue counterclockwise cell) associated

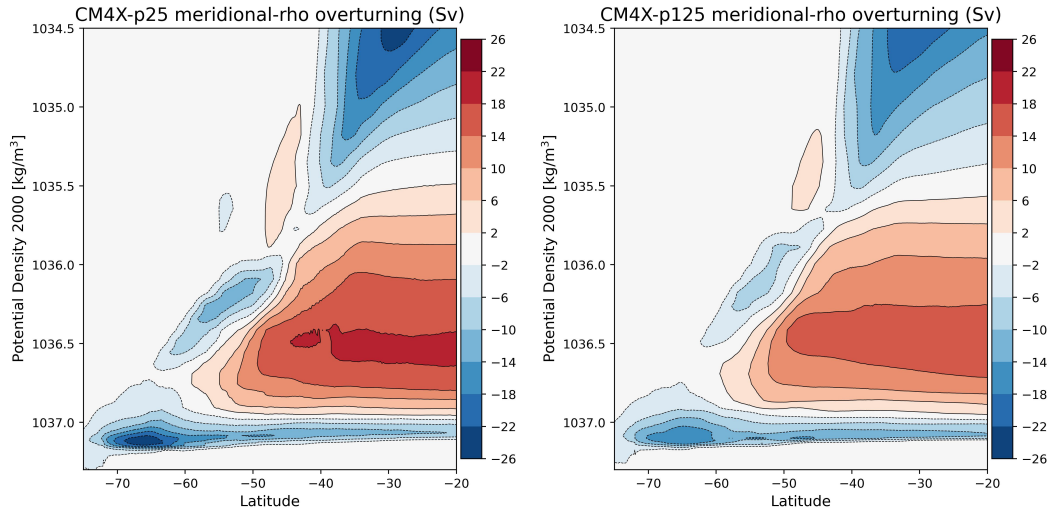


Figure 19. Meridional-density (ρ_{2000}) overturning circulation in the Southern Ocean as computed using time mean flow from years 1980-2009, with CM4X-p25 on the left and CM4X-p125 on the right.

660 with waters formed via DSW production on the Antarctic shelf and subsequent overflow
 661 and entrainment into the abyssal ocean (i.e., the processes shown in Figure 18). CM4X-
 662 p25 shows slightly larger formation around 65°S-70°S, and yet the AABW signal is slightly
 663 stronger in CM4X-p125 upon reaching 30°S. This disagreement between the strength of
 664 the AABW cell in the subpolar region and at 30°S indicates potentially larger interior
 665 mixing in CM4X-p25 which erodes the strong AABW transport away from the subpo-
 666 lar region. The other (blue) counterclockwise overturning cell is split into two sections
 667 in CM4X-p25 and CM4X-p125, though it is nearly connected in CM4X-p125. In the low
 668 latitudes, this cell is associated with subtropical mode waters. As discussed by Hallberg
 669 and Gnanadesikan (2006) (see their Section 3a), the merging of this cell southward across
 670 45°S results from meridional mass transport from transient mesoscale eddies, with such
 671 eddy variability stronger in CM4X-p125 (e.g., East Australian Current, Agulhas Rings).
 672 The dense flow in the red clockwise cell is associated with North Atlantic Deep Water
 673 (NADW) and Circumpolar Deep Water (CDW) moving south, with a portion of this wa-
 674 ter lightened into Antarctic Intermediate Water (AAIW) and another portion densified
 675 into AABW.

676 5.3 Multi-decadal fluctuations in the piControl simulations

677 In Figure 20 we show the time series for the Drake Passage transport from the pi-
 678 Control simulations in CM4X as well as CM4.0. As described by Held et al. (2019), the
 679 large amplitude multi-decadal fluctuations in CM4.0 are associated with very large (i.e.,
 680 super) polynyas in the Ross Sea. Such polynyas also appear in the ESM4 simulation of
 681 Dunne et al. (2020). In contrast, we do not find these super-polynyas in either CM4X-
 682 p25 or CM4X-p125, with both models exhibiting more modest multi-decadal fluctuations.
 683 One hypothesis for the absence of super-polynyas in CM4X relates to the increase in land
 684 ice albedo relative to CM4.0, resulting in a slightly cooler Antarctic climate and thus sup-
 685 porting more intermittent ventilation with smaller polynyas, rather than the buildup of
 686 massive subsurface heat charging the super-polynyas in CM4.0 (L. Zhang et al., 2021).
 687 This hypothesis comes with a caveat, however, since the land ice albedos used in CM4X
 688 are the same as ESM4, and yet ESM4 also suffers from the extremely strong polynyas.

689 We thus suspect that the full story for polynya events involves multiple factors, includ-
 690 ing winds, sea ice, and ice shelves.

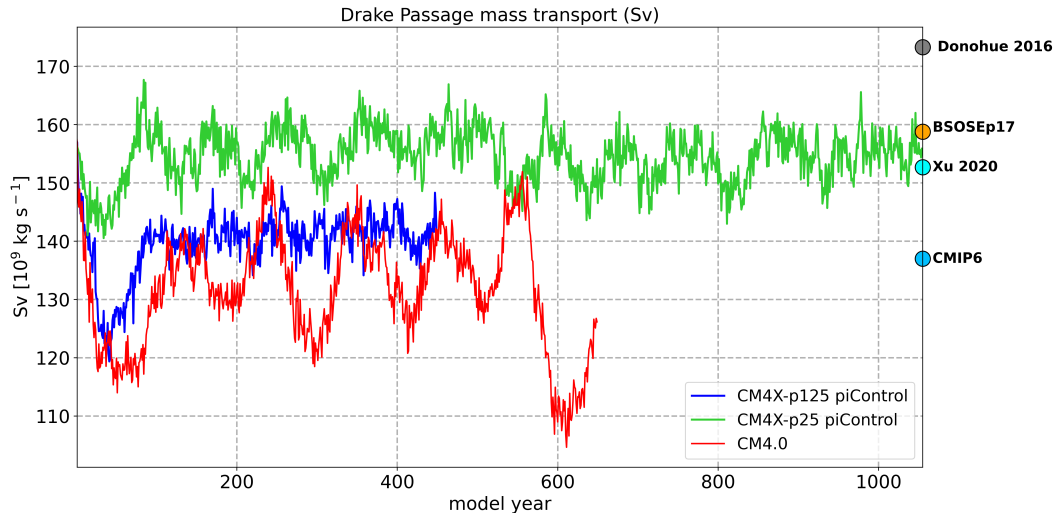


Figure 20. Time series of annual mean mass transport through the Drake Passage in units of Sverdrup (10^9 kg s^{-1}) for the piControl simulations from CM4X and CM4.0.

691 As a further means to distinguish the CM4X Southern Ocean simulations from CM4.0,
 692 Figure 21 provides time series for Antarctic shelf salinity, circulation strength of the bot-
 693 tom overturning cell, AABW transport at 30°S , as well as Hovmöller diagrams of sur-
 694 face water mass transformation due to heat fluxes in σ_2 . Here we again see signatures
 695 of the super-polynyas in CM4.0 whereas both CM4X simulations exhibit smaller ampli-
 696 tude fluctuations. The variability in CM4.0 highlights how the occurrence of large open-
 697 ocean polynyas lead to a series of interconnected changes in physical processes within
 698 the Southern Ocean. The CM4.0 piControl exhibits marked multi-decadal oscillations
 699 in shelf salinity, offshore heat loss, and dense water formation, seen in Figure 21 as pos-
 700 itive excursions of surface WMT at the densest open waters ($\sigma_2 > 37$). These episodes
 701 of enhanced dense water formation directly impact the large-scale circulation, as evidenced
 702 by the concurrent peak in the strength of the bottom overturning cell, followed by in-
 703 creased AABW transport at 30°S . Furthermore, the same multi-decadal fluctuations are
 704 seen in the Drake Passage transport (Figure 20), illustrating the connection between dense
 705 water formation, overturning and the strength of the ACC.

706 The multi-decadal oscillations are still present in the CM4X-p25 piControl simu-
 707 lations, but are more muted compared to CM4.0. We observe variability in the subpo-
 708 lar cell strength that oscillates around 20 Sv with a clear periodicity. This muted vari-
 709 ability is also reflected in the Antarctic shelf salinity and the offshore surface WMT. Thus,
 710 there is some intrinsic variability that is still apparent in the quarter degree piControl
 711 runs, consistent with L. Zhang et al. (2021), occurring at higher frequency and with weaker
 712 amplitude when land ice albedo is increased. Figures 20 and 21 suggest that the oscil-
 713 lations do not have as large an impact across different parts of the Southern Ocean in
 714 CM4X-p25 as they do in CM4.0. Interestingly, these oscillations are not as clearly seen
 715 in the CM4X-p125 version, which could be due to the shorter run time.

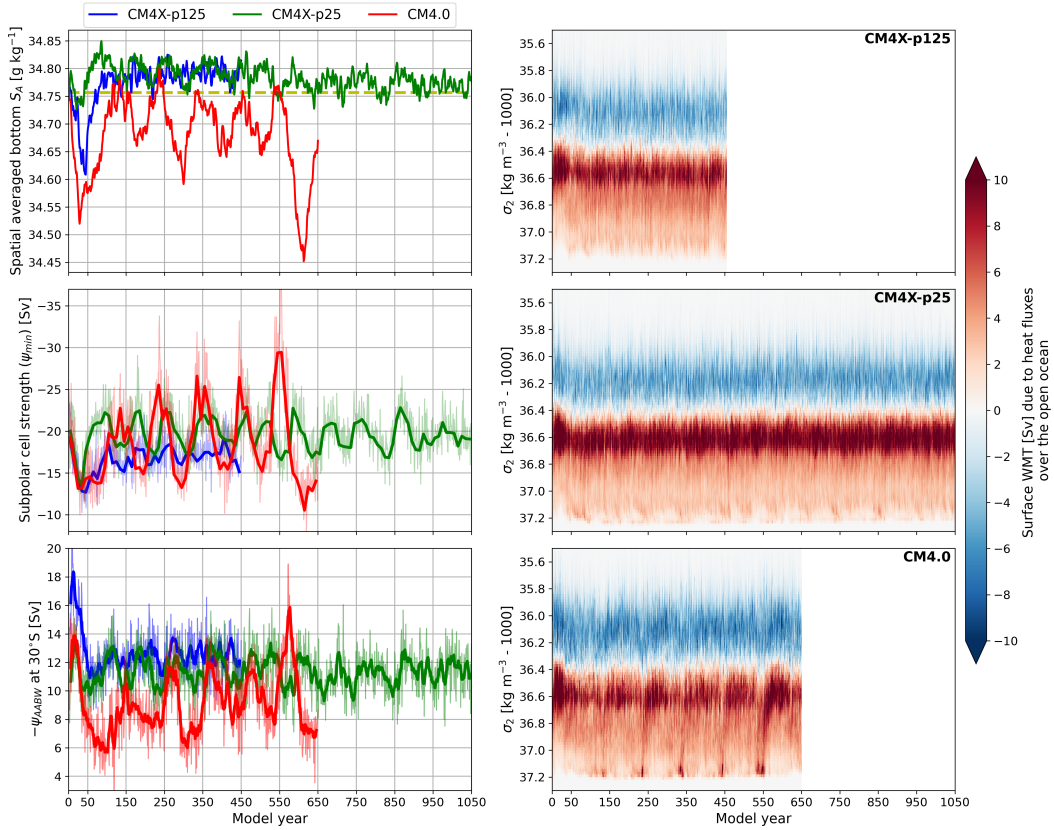


Figure 21. Time series for the annual mean salinity as area averaged around the bottom of the Antarctic shelf (upper left), circulation strength of the bottom overturning cell (middle left) and AABW transport at 30S (lower left) for CM4X-p125, CM4X-p25 and CM4.0 piControl simulations. The finer lines in the middle and lower left panels are annual means. The thick lines in the middle panel are decadal means, while the thicker lines in the lower panel are 10-year running means. The right panels show Hovmöller diagrams of surface forced water mass transformation in σ_2 -space (potential density referenced to 2000 dbar) over the open Southern Ocean due to heat fluxes in CM4X-p125 (upper), CM4X-p25 (middle) and CM4.0 (lower). When calculating the area-average in the upper left panel we define the Antarctic shelf as the region with depths shallower than 1000 m. The yellow dashed line in the upper left denotes the observation-based climatological mean of Antarctic shelf salinity from Schmidtko et al. (2014).

716

5.4 Transient climate response

717

718

719

720

721

722

723

724

725

726

In Figure 22 we provide a suite of five time series for various properties around the Southern Ocean during the piControl spin-up, historical, and SSP5-8.5 scenario, that emphasize the coupling of properties between the shelf and open ocean. This coupling is also found in the shelf-open-ocean diagnostics presented in Figure 21. A key take away from Figure 22 is the general agreement in the transient response regardless of slight differences in the mean-state. Both models show a steep drop in shelf salinity at the start of the SSP5-8.5 simulation driven by freshening associated with an enhanced hydrological cycle and sea ice melt (and decreased sea ice formation) under increased warming. This drop also coincides with a sharp acceleration of the ASC in both models. The temporal pattern of ASC acceleration differs depending on location as the mean-state ASC

727 is influenced by different dynamics along the shelf (Huneke et al., 2022). However, a strong
 728 ASC acceleration is consistently found from years 2014 to 2060 regardless of location.

729 The increased strength of the ASC also likely contributes to the consistent response
 730 found in shelf salinity via a positive feedback mechanism established between shelf fresh-
 731 ening that enhances the ASC and thus leading to more freshwater trapping on the shelf
 732 (Moorman et al., 2020; Lockwood et al., 2021; Beadling et al., 2022). Despite initial dif-
 733 ferences in the strength of the subpolar cell, with CM4X-p25 showing stronger abyssal
 734 overturning, both models exhibit a similar magnitude of decline in bottom cell strength
 735 by the end of the 21st century under the SSP5-8.5 scenario. CM4X-p125 displays a steady
 736 weakening over time, whereas CM4X-p25 experiences a more abrupt reduction. Never-
 737 theless, both models demonstrate comparable trends in AABW export at 30S, highlight-
 738 ing consistent responses to the transient conditions throughout the historical and SSP5-
 739 8.5 simulations. Investigating the differences between these two models and the mech-
 740 anisms driving the response in shelf and open-ocean processes under SSP5-8.5 is a topic
 741 of further investigation.

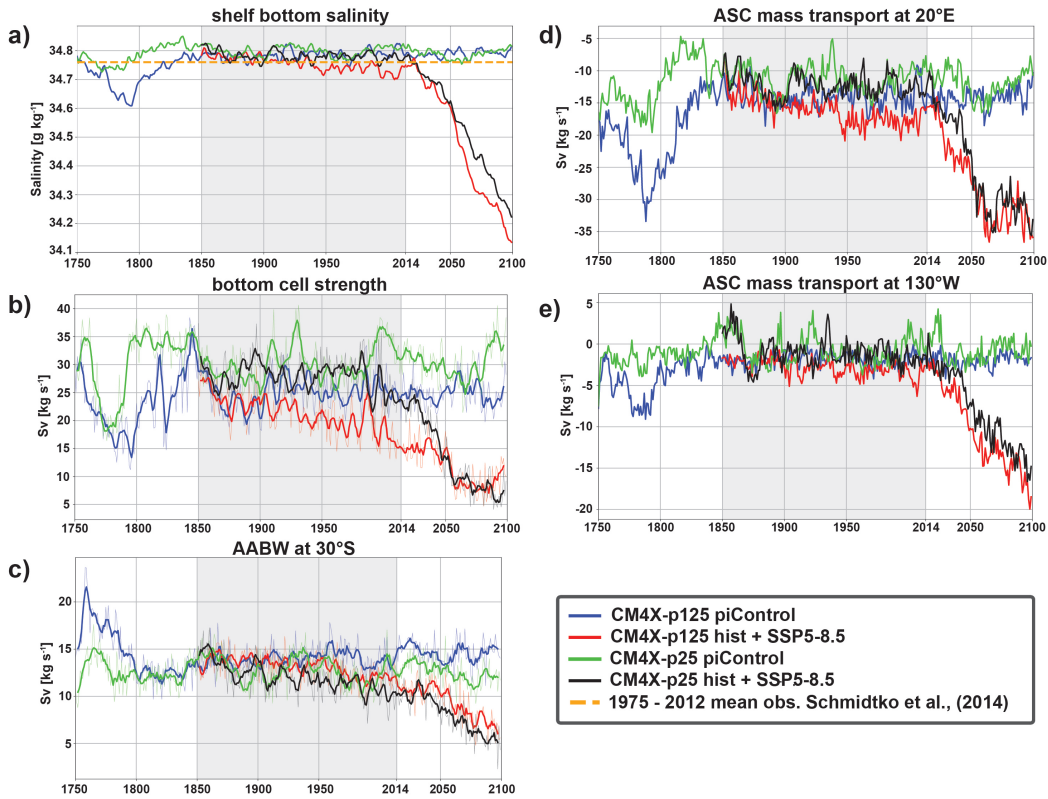


Figure 22. Time series for various properties around the Southern Ocean during the piControl spin-up, historical, and SSP5-8.5 scenario. a) Spatially averaged continental shelf bottom salinity b) circulation strength of the bottom overturning cell, c) AABW volume transport at 30°S, e) ASC strength at 20°E and f) ASC strength at 130°W. The ASC strength is shown at two different locations due to its flow characteristics being governed by different dynamics around the continental shelf (A. F. Thompson et al., 2018). The finer lines in panels b and c are annual means, while thicker lines in panels b and c are 5-year running means. When calculating the area-average in panel a, we define the Antarctic shelf as the region with depths shallower than 1000 m. The yellow dashed line in the upper left denotes the observation-based climatological mean of Antarctic shelf salinity from (Schmidtko et al., 2014).

742 5.5 Conclusions regarding the Southern Ocean simulations

743 The credible representation of Southern Ocean properties in CM4X opens up op-
 744 portunities to study fully coupled Southern Ocean processes and Antarctic margin dy-
 745 namics. The largest improvement in the CM4X models relative to previous generation
 746 GFDL models (CM4.0 and ESM4), is the lack of large amplitude multi-decadal oscilla-
 747 tions associated with super polyna events. The presence of such large amplitude vari-
 748 ability in CM4.0 prevented a suitable control run from which to branch perturbation ex-
 749 periments. Since the super-polynya-driven variability imprinted on the global climate
 750 and the Southern Ocean mean state, they made it nontrivial to interpret signal and “noise”
 751 in transient response to forcing perturbation experiments (Beadling et al., 2022; Tesdal
 752 et al., 2023).

753 Particularly notable features of the CM4X Southern Ocean simulation include the
 754 credible representations of Antarctic shelf hydrography, realistic locations of DSW pro-
 755 duction and overflow, and resolution of a strong ASC along the continental slope. A re-
 756 alistic representation of shelf properties and dynamics along the shelf-slope is required
 757 for examining shelf-open-ocean interactions, improving confidence in the thermal forc-
 758 ing of the AIS in a transient climate, and providing boundary conditions for dynamical
 759 ice sheet models. The credibility of CM4X near and along the Antarctic margin is en-
 760 couraging for the utility of studying high latitude processes and for coupling with dy-
 761 namical ice sheet models.

762 Additionally, with differing horizontal grid spacing providing for different degrees
 763 of representation of ocean mesoscale features, the CM4X suite is well positioned to probe
 764 the role of the ocean mesoscale within the climate system. Slight differences identified
 765 here between CM4X-p25 and CM4X-p125 in their velocity structure, Drake Passage trans-
 766 port, and Southern Ocean overturning may be linked to differing representation of mesoscale
 767 features and topography. Future work will aim at disentangling the sources of these dif-
 768 ferences between the two models and understanding whether these differences imprint
 769 on the transient climate response.

770 6 North Atlantic circulation

771 In this section we survey the horizontal and meridional overturning circulation fea-
 772 tures of the North Atlantic portion of the CM4X simulations, with comparisons made
 773 to observational estimates and other models, when available.

774 6.1 Gulf Stream

775 Here we focus on the Gulf Stream representation in CM4X as it compares to the-
 776oretical expectations, observed three dimensional structure (Todd, 2021), and the rep-
 777resentation in a 1/12 degree regional ocean simulation also using the MOM6 dynamical
 778 core (NWA12, Ross et al. (2023)).

779 *Expectations from previous studies*

780 Past efforts to determine controls on the simulated Gulf Stream have focused on
 781 the latitude of separation from the coast, as well as behavior of the jet and mesoscale
 782 eddies post separation (Chassignet & Marshall, 2008). This latitude of separation and/or
 783 the mean latitude of the Gulf Stream extension is often associated with a temperature
 784 front or the zero barotropic vorticity contour (Section 6.2). In this section we consider
 785 jet coherence and jet location relative to the continental slope. This analysis finds that
 786 once leaving the coast, the CM4X simulations have a rather diffuse and meandering Gulf
 787 Stream jet that is, unfortunately, rather distinct from observational measurements.

788 Fundamentally, Gulf Stream fidelity depends on model horizontal grid spacing relative to the first baroclinic Rossby radius of deformation. At middle latitudes, Hallberg
 789 (2013) (see also Figure 1 from Part I (Griffies et al., 2024)) reveals a requirement of approximately 0.25° over the deep ocean (deeper than 3000 m) and approximately 0.125°
 790 closer to the coast (500 m < depth < 3000 m). Since the Gulf Stream ‘leans’ on the
 791 U.S. east coast continental shelf prior to separation, we expect accurate simulations require grid spacing to be at or finer than 0.125°.
 792
 793
 794

795 Gulf Stream simulation features also depend on the spatial structure of wind forcing, deep western boundary current strength, bathymetric slope resolution, and model
 796 viscosity parameterizations that moderate resolved mesoscale turbulence (Hurlburt and Hogan (2000), Parsons (2006), Chassignet and Marshall (2008), Ezer (2016), Chassignet
 797 and Xu (2017), and Debret et al. (2022)). Chassignet and Marshall (2008) show how choices of biharmonic and/or Laplacian viscosity control the latitude of separation, determine
 798 the presence or absence of standing eddies, and shape downstream instability behavior. The authors demonstrate that use of a low biharmonic viscosity can result in early separation
 799 and the presence of a standing eddy near Cape Hatteras, while use of a Laplacian can result in flow that is too laminar and a Gulf Stream that does not penetrate
 800 into the North Atlantic interior.
 801
 802
 803
 804
 805

806 *Plan view and vertical sections of the Gulf Stream*

807 Qualitative plan view comparisons of surface mean kinetic energy (MKE) in CM4X
 808 simulations, NWA12, and observations reveal the initial latitude of separation from the
 809 coast as too far south (Fig. 23a-d). The observed time mean latitude of separation is approximately 37.5°N while in CM4X-p25 it is approximately 31°N and in CM4X-p125
 810 approximately 32°N. This shift northwards with refined grid spacing continues when comparing to the 1/12° regional ocean model, where Gulf Stream separation occurs at approximately
 811 37°N. As discussed by Chassignet and Marshall (2008), this characterization of the Gulf Stream separation and particular focus on jet coherence and the horizontal
 812 spreading of mean kinetic energy centers on the impact of viscosity choices on flow around the Charleston Bump. In both CM4X simulations use of a relatively low biharmonic
 813 viscosity value, as well representation limitations associated with relatively coarse horizontal resolution, are likely the cause of early separation.
 814
 815
 816
 817
 818

819 Upstream of separation, surface MKE is greater in CM4X-p125 than in CM4X-p25 and closer to observed magnitudes. This increase in Gulf Stream strength in CM4X-p125
 820 may be responsible for more realistic flow around the the Charleston Bump compared to CM4X-p25. The vertical extent of this relative increase is seen in a zonal cross-section
 821 at 29.5°N (Figure 24a-d). While the depth penetration of the Gulf Stream is similar in all panels, CM4X-p125 upper-ocean northward velocity (at depths shallower than 300 m)
 822 is over 50% larger than in CM4X-p25.
 823
 824
 825

826 Differences between CM4X and observations and NWA12 are more significant post separation. In both CM4X-p25 and CM4X-p125, the eastward flowing jet rapidly dissipates
 827 post separation, resulting in a diffuse field of eddies that meander further north than observed eddy activity. Correspondingly, MKE is spread across roughly 30°N to
 828 40°N, and dissipates moving eastward. Cross-sections at Cape Hatteras and at 70.5°W (Figure 24e-l) reveal the vertical structure of velocity to rapidly decrease with increasing
 829 depth. Compared to observations and NWA12, the CM4X Gulf Stream structure is far too surface intensified and horizontally diffuse. At 1800 m, a depth greater than that
 830 at which gliders collected measurements in Todd (2021), the spatial distribution of MKE appears similar in CM4X and NWA12. Noted differences between CM4X-p25 and CM4X-
 831 p125 include the near barotropic standing eddy in CM4X-p25 (Figures 23c,f) and a more energetic deep slope current north of 37.5°N in CM4X-p25.
 832
 833
 834
 835
 836
 837

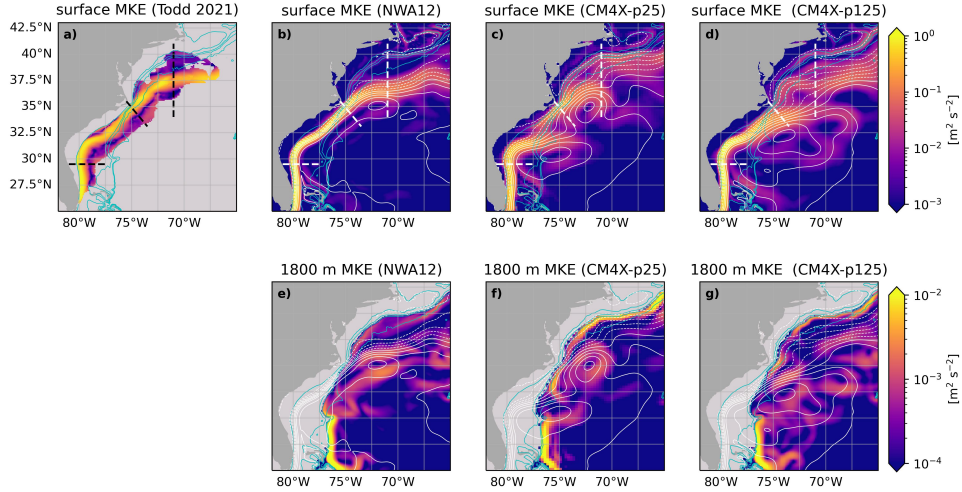


Figure 23. a) Time mean surface kinetic energy (MKE) derived from observations collected between 2015-06 and 2020-7 (Todd, 2021) (note log color scale). Blue contours identify the 100 m, 1000 m, 2000 m, and 3000 m isobaths. Black dashed lines are the locations of zonal, Cape Hatteras, and meridional cross-sections in Figure 24. b) 2010-2014 time mean surface kinetic energy from the NWA12 $1/12^\circ$ degree regional ocean model (Ross et al., 2023). Time mean sea surface height contours are added in white. c) Same as b) but for CM4X-p25. d) Same as b) but for CM4X-p125. e-g) Mean kinetic energy as in b-d) at 1800 m (note colormap scale change).

838

6.2 Barotropic vorticity

839

840

841

842

843

844

845

846

847

Interactions between deep ocean flows and sloping bathymetry result in bottom stretching and bottom pressure torques, influencing the western boundary currents and ocean circulation (Hughes & De Cuevas, 2001; R. Zhang & Vallis, 2007; Waldman & Giordani, 2023; Khatri et al., 2024). We investigate how spatial resolution differences between CM4X-p25 and CM4X-p125 affect the strength of the North Atlantic gyre circulations. For this purpose, we use the linear steady-state barotropic vorticity budget, which is often used to study how surface winds and bathymetry control ocean gyres (Stommel, 1948; Holland, 1967). Following Yeager (2015), we use the streamfunction, ψ , form of the barotropic vorticity budget

848

$$\underbrace{\int_{x_w}^x V dx}_{\psi} \approx \underbrace{\frac{1}{\beta} \int_{x_w}^x J(p_b, H) dx}_{\psi_{BPT}} + \underbrace{\frac{1}{\beta \rho_0} \int_{x_w}^x \hat{z} \cdot (\nabla \times \tau_s) dx}_{\psi_{\tau_s}} \quad (3)$$

849

850

851

852

853

854

Here, V is the vertically integrated meridional velocity, β is the meridional derivative of the Coriolis parameter, p_b is bottom pressure, H is ocean depth, τ_s is the surface wind stress, x_w represents the western continental boundary and ρ_0 is the Boussinesq reference density. Note that contributions from friction and nonlinear terms are not included, as these contributions are relatively small in time-mean vorticity balances (see Khatri et al. (2024) for a complete vorticity budget analysis and diagnosis methodology).

855

856

The time-mean spatial patterns of subtropical and subpolar gyres are well captured by the combined effects of bottom pressure torque and surface wind stress (Figure 25).

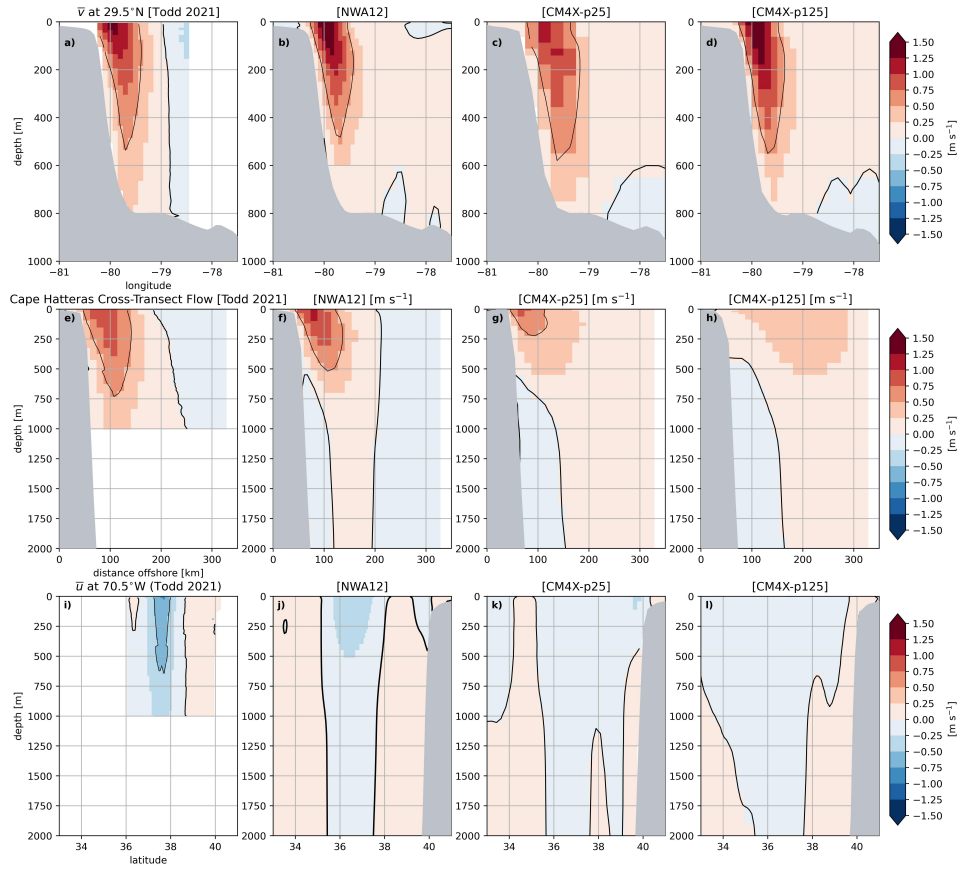


Figure 24. a-d) Time mean meridional velocity at 29.5°N as a function of depth and longitude from Todd (2021) (2015-202), NWA12 (2010-2014), CM4X-p25 (2010-2014), and CM4X-p125 (2010-2014) (note log color scale). Heavy black contour is the 0 value, light black solid/dashed contours are 0.5 and -0.5 m s^{-1} , and gray shading is the model bathymetry (NWA12 bathymetry is used in panel a). e-h) Time mean cross-transect velocity extending southwest of Cape Hatteras. i-l) Time mean zonal velocity at 70.5°W . Positive velocities are those into the page.

857 Surface winds control the meridional flow in open ocean gyres, while the return flow in
 858 western boundary currents is driven by bottom pressure torques (compare Figures 25a1-
 859 a2 with 25d1-d2, also see (Yeager, 2015)). However, in the Iceland basin and Nordic Seas,
 860 bottom friction and other vorticity terms are more important in guiding the meridional
 861 transport (not shown).

862 Comparing CM4X-p25 and CM4X-p125 reveals that refined ocean grid spacing leads
 863 to a stronger time-mean subtropical gyre transport, while the subpolar gyre transport
 864 is weaker. In CM4X-p25, the maximum transport in the subtropical gyre and minimum
 865 transport in the subpolar gyre are 25 Sv and -44 Sv, respectively (Figures 25a1, 25e).

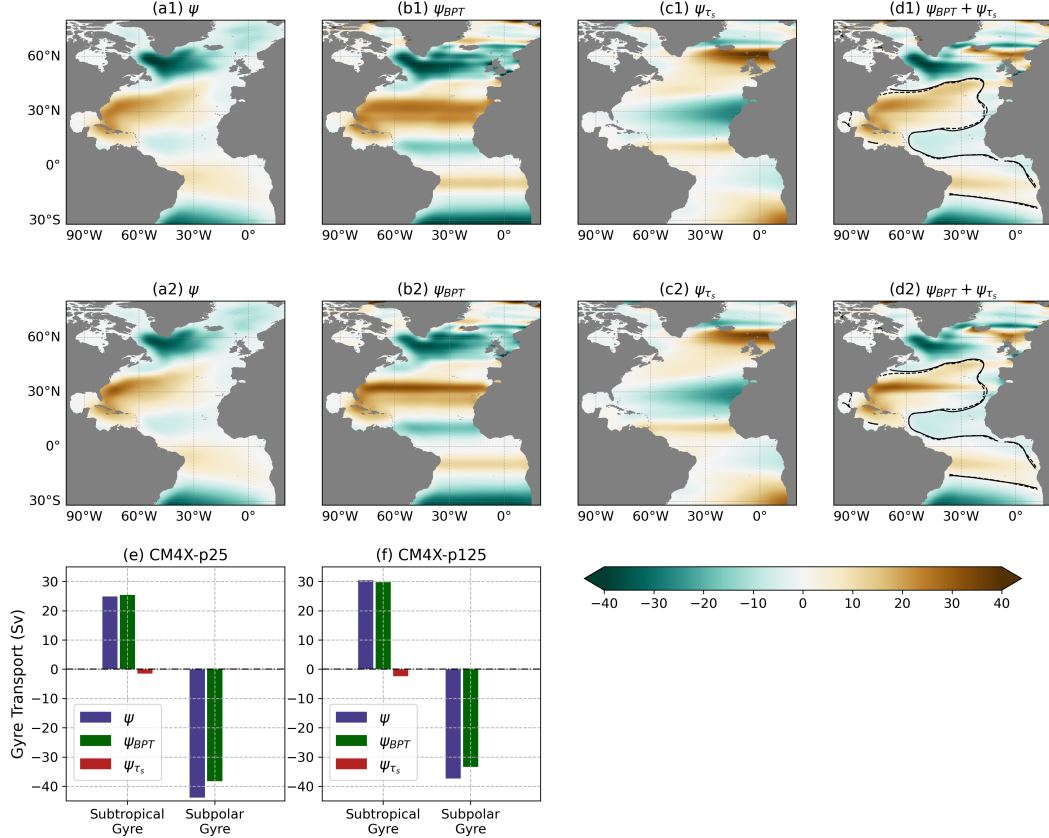


Figure 25. Barotropic streamfunction (in Sv) estimated using vorticity budget terms in equation (3) (30-year time-mean). The top row (panels a1-d1) show the CM4X-p25 piControl and the bottom row (panels a2-d2) show CM4X-p125 piControl. Panels (e,f) show the subtropical and subpolar gyre transports (estimated as the maximum or minimum of the barotropic streamfunction) and the associated contributions from ψ_{BPT} and ψ_{τ_s} (note that ψ_{τ_s} transports in the subpolar gyre are too small to see). Spatial maps in panels (d1-d2) are sums of maps shown in panels (b1-b2) and (c1-c2), and the solid (CM4X-p25) and dashed black (CM4X-p125) curves represent the zero streamfunction contour lines, which are used to infer the latitudinal position of the Gulf Stream located between the subtropical and subpolar gyres. To filter out the small-scale variability and grid-scale noise in vorticity diagnostics (Khatri et al., 2024), spatial maps are spatially smoothed to 10° resolution using the GCM-Filters from Loose et al. (2022).

866 On the other hand, in CM4X-p125, subtropical and subpolar gyre transports are 30 Sv
 867 and -37 Sv (Figures 25a2, 25f). These differences in gyre strength are primarily associ-
 868 ated with differences in bottom pressure torque (compare Figures 25b1 and 25b2), which
 869 is affected by the finer scale bathymetry and better resolved mesoscale deep flows in CMX-
 870 p125 relative to CM4X-p25. These changes in gyre transports agree with changes in mag-
 871 nitudes of bottom pressure torques and the corresponding streamfunction transports, ψ_{BPT} .

872 Similar strengthening in the subtropical gyre with increased ocean model resolution
 873 has been observed in many climate models (Meccia et al., 2021). Moreover, the south-
 874 ward subpolar transport of 37 Sv in CM4X-p125 is close to estimates from Xu et al. (2013),
 875 who determined the southward transport in the Labrador Sea near 53°N to be approx-
 876 imately 39 Sv.

877

6.3 Atlantic meridional overturning circulation (AMOC)

878

879

880

881

882

883

884

885

886

887

888

889

890

891

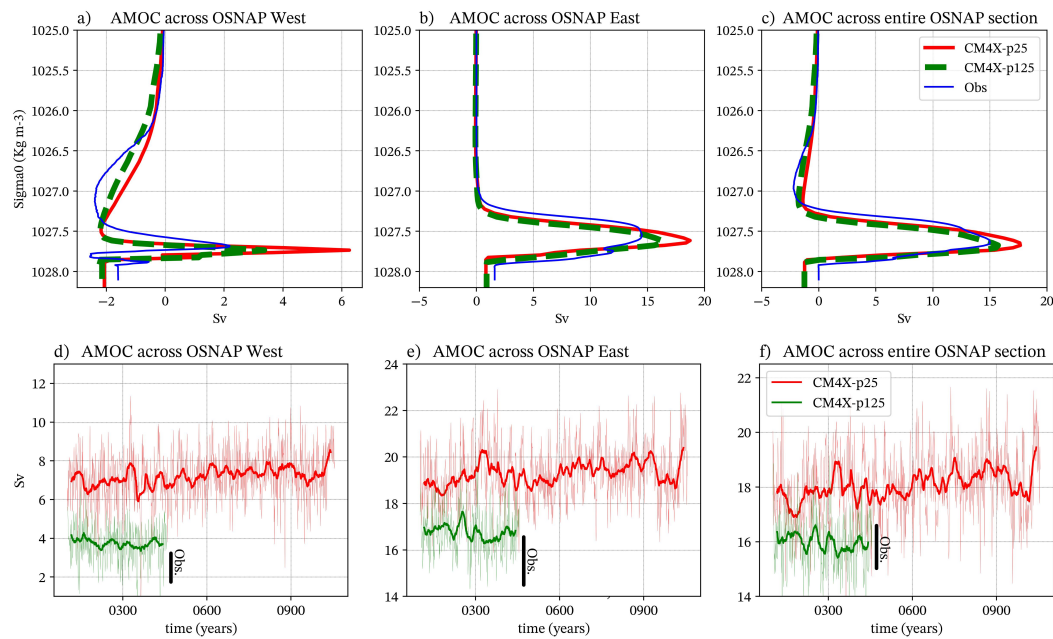


Figure 26. Top row: Climatological annual mean density space AMOC streamfunction across OSNAP West, OSNAP East, and the full OSNAP section for CM4X-p25, CM4X-p125, and the OSNAP observations over the period of 2014-2020. Bottom row: Time series of the maximum AMOC strength across OSNAP West, OSNAP East, and the full OSNAP section, in comparison with the OSNAP observations over the period of 2014-2020. The time series are smoothed with a 10-year running mean. The dark lines in bottom rows depict the ranges (mean \pm one standard deviation of rolling annual mean) of observations.

892

893

894

895

896

897

898

Figure 26 shows that CM4X-p125 has a maximum climatological density space AMOC strength across OSNAP West that has been reduced relative to CM4X-p25, with CM4X-p125 results closer to recent OSNAP observations of 2 Sv (Lozier et al., 2019; Li et al., 2021). The modeled maximum climatological density space AMOC strength across OSNAP East (or across the entire OSNAP section) has also been improved with CM4X-p125 relative to CM4X-p25, with Figure 26 showing CM4X-p125 values closer to the OSNAP observations. The modeled maximum climatological subpolar AMOC in density

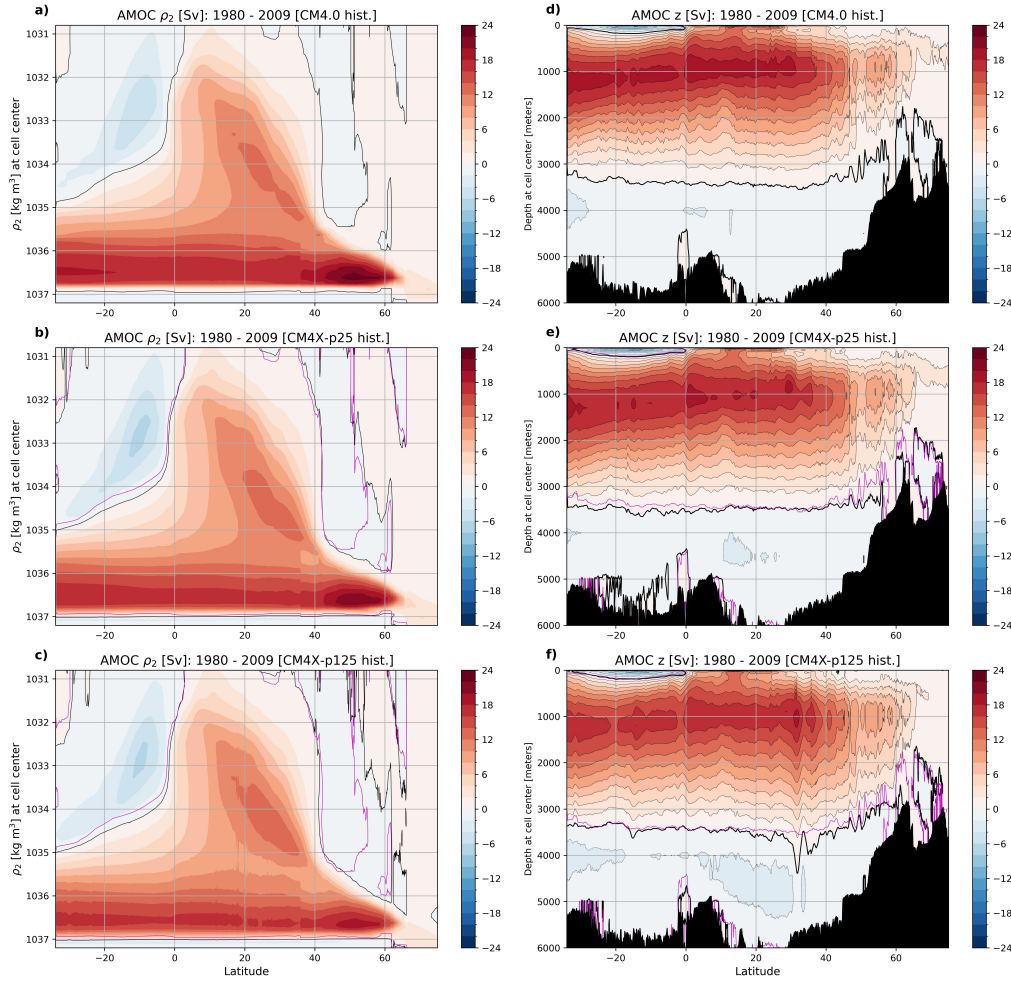


Figure 27. Climatological annual mean Atlantic meridional overturning circulation (AMOC) streamfunction as a function of latitude in potential density (ρ_2 , a,b,c) and geopotential (d,e,f) for the historical simulations over the period of 1980-2009 using CM4.0, CM4X-p25, and CM4X-p125. In CM4X-p25 and CM4X-p125 panels, the magenta contour identifies the zero contour of CM4.0. Contours are shown at 2 Sv increments. The figure includes transport in the Atlantic, Arctic, Mediterranean, and Baltic basins.

899 space is reduced in CM4X-p125 compared to that in CM4X-p25 (Figure 27), which is
 900 consistent with the improvement across OSNAP West and East (Figure 26).

901 Since both CM4X-p125 and CM4X-p25 have the same atmosphere model, improve-
 902 ments in the CM4X-p125 mean state subpolar AMOC are likely due to its refined hor-
 903 izontal ocean grid spacing compared to CM4X-p25. Improvements in the simulated max-
 904 imum AMOC strength across OSNAP West in CM4X-p125 (Figure 26a,d) is likely linked
 905 to its improved and reduced Labrador Sea winter deep convection area compared to that
 906 simulated in CM4X-p25, as reflected in the climatological winter mixed layer depth (MLD)
 907 seen in Figure 28. The Labrador Sea winter MLD in CM4X-p25 is unrealistically deep
 908 and broad, which is likely related to the under-representation of the dense overflows en-
 909 tering the Labrador Sea and the less resolved mesoscale eddy restratification (Tagklis
 910 et al., 2020). The winter Labrador Sea MLD is improved (shoaled) in CM4X-p125, which
 911 has a slightly better representation of the dense overflows across the OSNAP section as

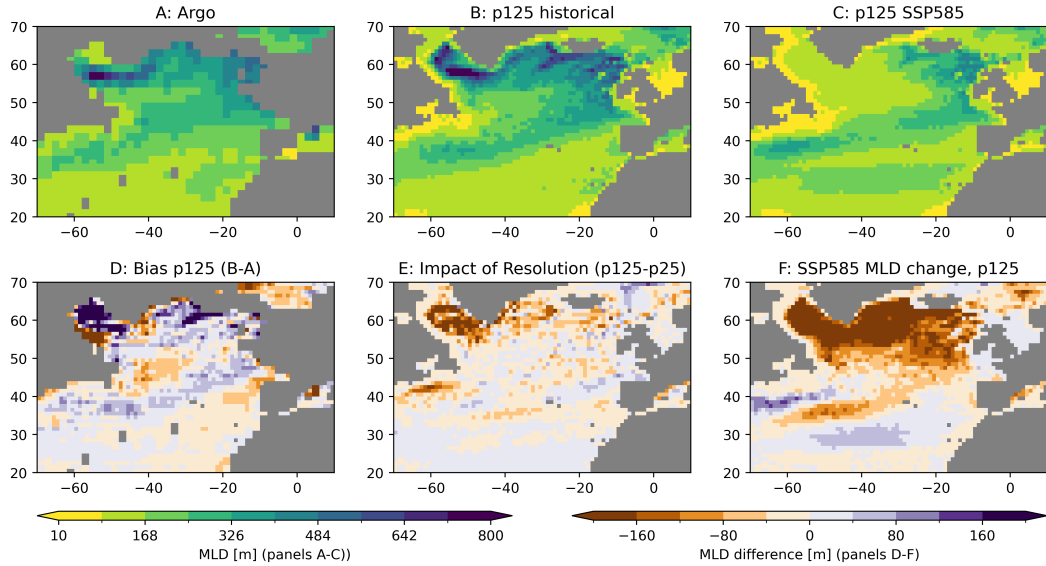


Figure 28. Winter climatology of the North Atlantic maximum mixed layer depth from Argo (years 2004-2023) (Argo, 2023), as well as years 2000-2014 (historical simulation) and years 2085-2099 (SSP5-8.5 simulation) from CM4X-p25 and CM4X-p125, computed as in Figure 9 from Part I (Griffies et al., 2024) Panel A: estimates from the Argo profiling floats; Panel B: results from CM4X-p125 historical experiment; Panel C: CM4X-p125 SSP5-8.5 simulation. Panel D shows the differences between CM4X-p125 and Argo (Panels B-A), whereas Panel E shows the difference between CM4X-p125 and CM4X-p25 (with a shoaling of MLD in CM4X-p125 relative to CM4X-p25). Finally, Panel F shows the impacts from the SSP5-8.5 climate change, showing years 2084-2099 minus years 2000-2014 (Panels C-B) from CM4X-p125. Note that differences documented in Panels D and E are robust to a longer time average over model years 1955-2014.

912 seen in Figure 29, as well as a stronger resolved mesoscale eddy restratification. How-
 913 ever, neither CM4X-p125 nor CM4X-p25 simulate the observed winter deep convection
 914 in the Greenland Sea.

915 Over the subpolar North Atlantic, horizontal circulations across sloping isopycnals
 916 play an important role in density-space AMOC, and a Sigma-Z diagram was designed
 917 to illustrate the role of horizontal circulations in density-space (R. Zhang & Thomas, 2021).
 918 Across OSNAP East, both CM4X-p125 and CM4X-p25 simulate the horizontal circula-
 919 tion contribution (positive inflow and negative outflow canceled at the same depth level,
 920 but not at the same density level), which corresponds to that observed in the upper ocean
 921 (Figure 30). However, both models underestimate the horizontal circulation contribu-
 922 tion compared to that observed in the deep ocean (Figure 30). This modeling bias in the
 923 deep ocean is related to the underestimation of the Nordic Sea overflows (i.e. Denmark
 924 Strait overflow and Iceland-Scotland overflow) and associated recirculation in both CM4X-
 925 p125 and CM4X-p25 (Figure 29). With refined horizontal grid spacing, CM4X-p125 has
 926 a slightly better representation of the Nordic Sea overflows and associated recirculation
 927 (Figure 29), and thus a slightly better representation of the horizontal circulation con-
 928 tribution in the deep ocean (Figure 30). Although the difference between CM4X sim-
 929 ulations and the observation in the density space AMOC streamfunction across OSNAP
 930 East does not appear pronounced (Figure 26), the Sigma-Z diagram clearly reveals dif-
 931 ferences in the simulated deep ocean AMOC structure in Figure 30.

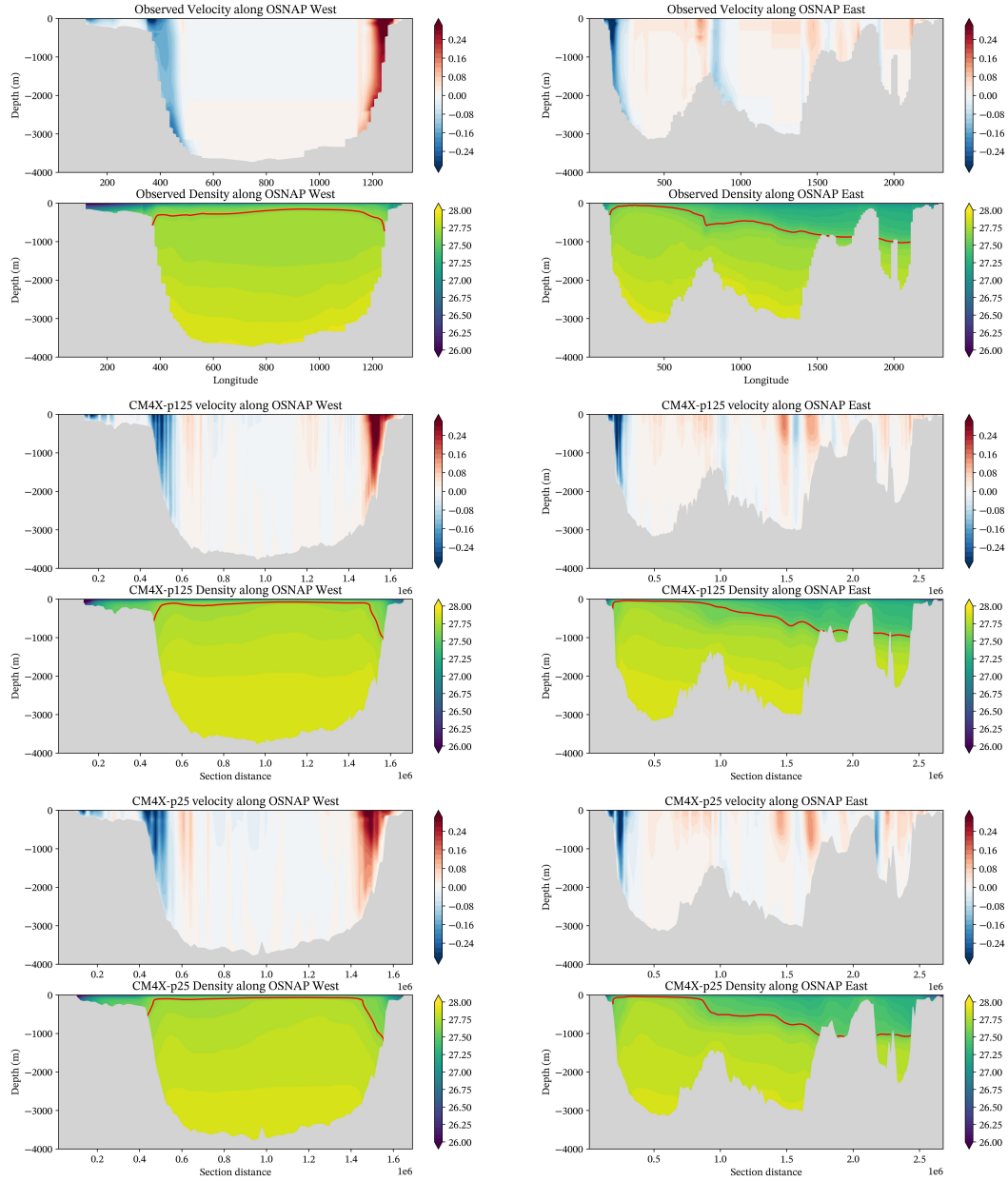


Figure 29. Mean velocity and potential density across OSNAP West (left) and OSNAP East (right). The top two rows show the OSNAP observations averaged over years 2014-2020 from Fu et al. (2023). The middle two row shows CM4X-p125 as averaged over years 2014-2020. The bottom two rows show CM4X-p25 as averaged over years 2014-2020.

932 Across OSNAP West, the horizontal circulation contribution to the density space
 933 AMOC in the upper ocean is too strong and too deep in CM4X-p25 compared to that
 934 estimated from observations (Figure 31). However, in CM4X-p125, the horizontal
 935 circulation contribution becomes less strong and shallower, which then compares better with
 936 the field measurements than CM4X-p25 (Figure 31). This improvement in CM4X-p125
 937 is related to the improved (reduced) Labrador Sea winter deep convection area (Figure
 938 28) and the better resolved Labrador Sea boundary current in CM4X-p125 (Figure 29).
 939 Consistently, the density contrast between the Labrador Sea boundary outflow and in-

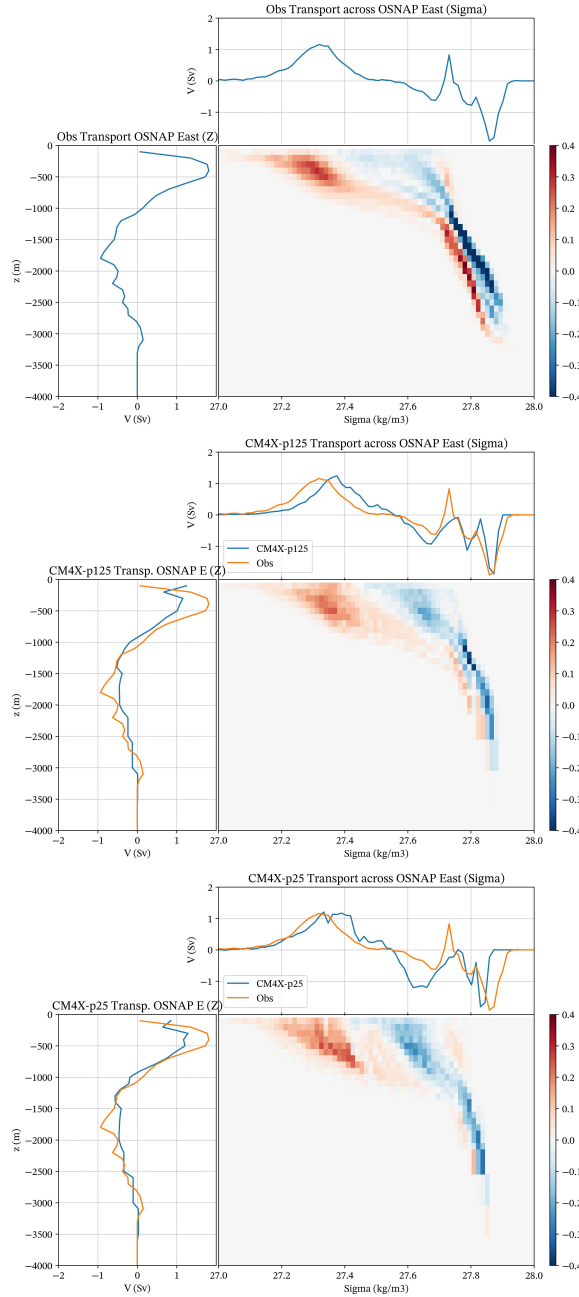


Figure 30. Sigma-z diagram of volume transport across OSNAP East for OSNAP observations (Fu et al., 2023) (top), CM4X-p125 (middle), and CM4X-p25 (bottom), all computed over years 2014-2020. The color shading in each panel shows the integrated volume transport (Sv) across each subsection over each potential density (σ_0 ; potential density referenced to 0 dbar) bin (x-axis) and depth (z) bin (y-axis); the integrated transport across each subsection over each potential density bin summed over the entire depth range is shown in the blue curve above; the integrated transport across each subsection at each depth bin summed over the entire potential density range is shown in the blue curve on the left. The line plots for the CM4X results have the OSNAP measurements plotted for easier comparison.

940 flow is reduced and thus the maximum density space AMOC across OSNAP West (mainly
 941 contributed by the horizontal circulation) becomes weaker in CM4X-p125 compared to
 942 that simulated in CM4X-p25 (Figure 26a,d). The observed density structure between
 943 the Labrador Sea boundary outflow and inflow is almost symmetric (Figure 29), consis-
 944 tent with a very weak horizontal circulation contribution (Figure 31) and thus a very weak
 945 maximum density space AMOC strength across OSNAP West (Figure 26a,d) in obser-
 946 vations.

947 Across the RAPID section in the subtropical North Atlantic, both CM4X-p125 and
 948 CM4X-p25 simulate a similar maximum AMOC strength as that estimated from the RAPID
 949 program (Cunningham et al., 2007; McCarthy et al., 2015; Smeed et al., 2018), but the
 950 penetration depth of the simulated AMOC is much shallower than that observed (Fig-
 951 ure 32). The simulated shallow AMOC across the RAPID section is a typical bias found
 952 in many models due to deficiencies representing the dense and deep-penetrating Nordic
 953 Sea overflows (Danabasoglu et al., 2010; R. Zhang et al., 2011; Danabasoglu et al., 2014;
 954 H. Wang et al., 2015). The penetration depth of the simulated AMOC across the RAPID
 955 section is slightly deeper in CM4X-p125 than that in CM4X-p25 (Figure 27d,e,f and Fig-
 956 ure 32) due to slightly better representation of the Nordic Sea overflows in CM4X-p125.

957 The simulated multidecadal AMOC variability across the RAPID section in both
 958 CM4X-p125 and CM4X-p25 piControl simulations (Figure 33) is much weaker than the
 959 observationally-based estimate (Yan et al., 2018). The simulated historical AMOC across
 960 the RAPID section in both CM4X-p125 and CM4X-p25 has less pronounced multidecadal
 961 variations than simulated in CM4.0 (Figure 34). The pronounced multidecadal AMOC
 962 variations in CM4.0 (e.g., an increase up to 19 Sv and decline afterwards) are mainly in-
 963 duced by multidecadal changes in external radiative forcing (e.g. anthropogenic aerosols)
 964 as also found in many CMIP6 models (Menary et al., 2020), which are unrealistic and
 965 opposite to those indicated by the observed AMOC fingerprint (Yan et al., 2019) and
 966 inconsistent with further observational measures (Held et al., 2019; Menary et al., 2020;
 967 Robson et al., 2022). The improved historical AMOC changes simulated in CM4X are
 968 likely related to the refined horizontal atmospheric grid spacing used by CM4X (50 km)
 969 compared to that employed in CM4.0 (100 km) (see Appendix A1 in Part I (Griffies et
 970 al., 2024)). Previous studies have shown that climate models with coarse horizontal at-
 971 mospheric grid spacing overestimate aerosol indirect effect (Donner et al., 2016; Sato et
 972 al., 2018; Zhao et al., 2018a). The impact of the horizontal atmospheric grid spacing on
 973 the aerosol indirect effect deserves more future investigation. The static vegetation ap-
 974 proach (no land use change, no CO2 fertilization effect, and no demography change) em-
 975 ployed in CM4X historical simulations might also contribute to the different simulated
 976 historical AMOC changes compared to those simulated in CM4.0 (again, see Appendix
 977 A2 in Part I (Griffies et al., 2024)). Additional experiments in future studies are needed
 978 to fully understand the improvement in simulated historical AMOC changes in CM4X.
 979 In Figure 34 we also show the AMOC strength for the SSP5-8.5 scenario experiment, whereby
 980 the AMOC weakens starting around year 2000 in CM4.0 and CM4X, with the year 2100
 981 strength in each model less than half their pre-industrial strength.

982 6.4 Watermass transformation in the subpolar North Atlantic

983 Figure 35 shows the time-mean of the water mass budget (diagnosed following Drake
 984 et al. (2024)) in potential density coordinates,

$$985 \quad \partial_t \mathcal{M}_{\geq} = \Psi_{\geq} + \mathcal{S}_{\geq} + \mathcal{G} \quad (4)$$

986 for two key regions of the Subpolar North Atlantic. $\mathcal{M}_{\geq} = \mathcal{M}_{\geq}(\sigma_2, t)$ is the mass of
 987 water denser than σ_2 at time t within a given region; Ψ_{\geq} is the total transport into the
 988 region for waters denser than σ_2 ; \mathcal{S}_{\geq} is direct addition of seawater mass from boundary
 989 fluxes; and \mathcal{G} is the total water mass transformation rate (positive when it tends to in-
 990 crease the mass of denser water). We further decompose $\Psi_{\geq} = \sum \Psi_{\geq}^{(\text{boundary})}$ into con-

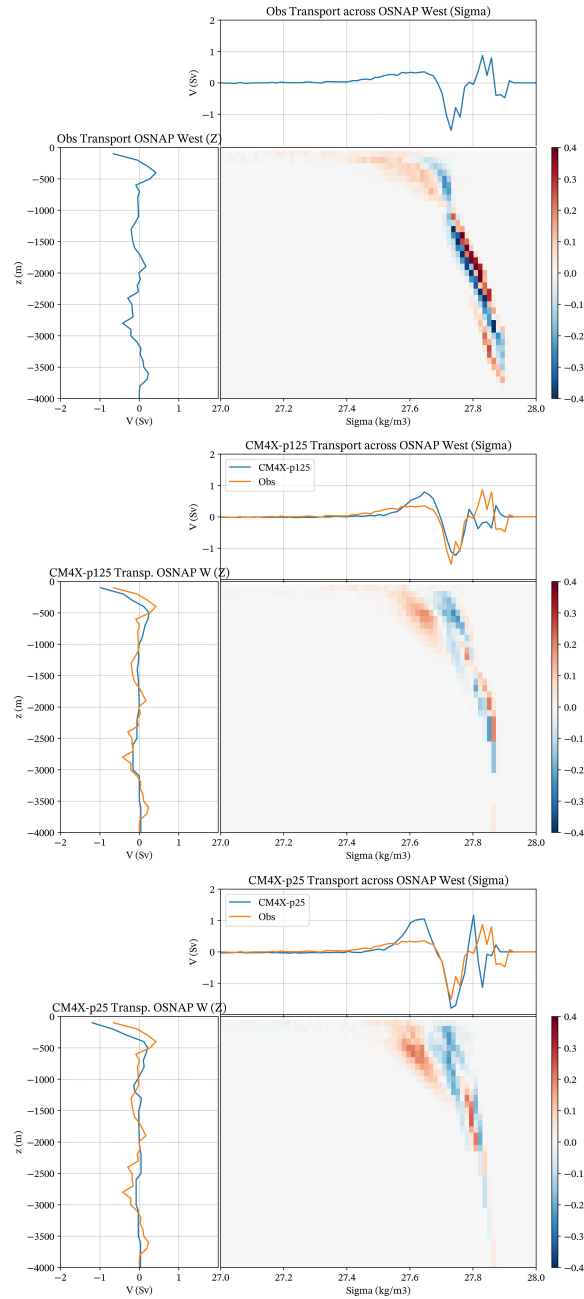


Figure 31. The Sigma-z diagram of volume transport across OSNAP West for OSNAP observations (Fu et al., 2023) (top), CM4X-p125 (middle), and CM4X-p25 (bottom), all computed over years 2014-2020. The color shading in each panel shows the integrated volume transport (Sv) across each subsection over each potential density (σ_0) bin (x-axis) and depth (z) bin (y-axis); the integrated transport across each subsection over the entire depth range is shown in the blue curve above; the integrated transport across each subsection at each depth bin summed over the entire potential density range is shown in the blue curve on the left. The line plots for the CM4X results have the OSNAP measurements plotted for easier comparison.

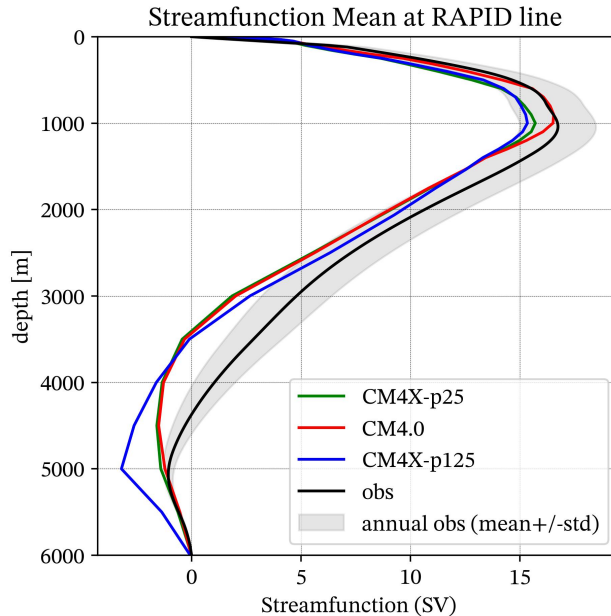


Figure 32. Climatological annual mean AMOC streamfunction strength across the RAPID section (26.5°N) for the models computed over years 2004-2022 using CM4.0, CM4X-p25, and CM4X-p125, in comparison with the RAPID observations over the period of 2004-2022.

991 tributions from different sections along the regions' boundaries and $\mathcal{G} \equiv \sum \mathcal{G}^{(\text{process})}$
 992 to distinguish contributions from boundary fluxes $\mathcal{G}^{(\text{BF})}$ (primarily due to air-sea fluxes
 993 of heat, salt, and freshwater), parameterized mixing processes $\mathcal{G}^{(\text{mix})}$, and spurious nu-
 994 merical mixing $\mathcal{G}^{(\text{Spu})}$. All terms are diagnosed directly from mass, heat, and salt ten-
 995 dencies, except for the spurious numerical mixing $\mathcal{G}^{(\text{Spu})}$, which we identify as the bud-
 996 get residual (see Drake et al. (2024) for details). Because we use monthly-mean budget
 997 tendencies that are binned online into depth coordinates, however, some error may be
 998 introduced by the omission of sub-monthly correlations between the tendencies and σ_2 .

999 In the Labrador Sea (Figure 35a,b), there is a nearly perfect time-mean balance
 1000 between surface-forced water mass transformations (peaking at -7 Sv at $\sigma_2 = 36.6\text{ kg/m}^3$)
 1001 and export across the OSNAP-West section. Contributions from other terms, such as
 1002 the inflow of dense water through Davis Strait and local transformation by mixing pro-
 1003 cesses, are negligible. In the Irminger Sea and Iceland Basin (Figure 35c,d), by contrast,
 1004 the peak surface-forced water mass transformation is weaker (10 Sv) and occurs at a lighter
 1005 density (36.2 kg/m^3) than what is exported southward across the OSNAP-East section,
 1006 which peaks at 15 Sv for waters denser than $\sigma_2 = 36.4\text{ kg/m}^3$. The difference between
 1007 the transformation and overturning transport is due to 1) relatively dense Nordic Sea
 1008 waters overflowing across the Greenland Scotland Ridge (peaking at 36.6 kg/m^3) and 2)
 1009 spurious numerical entrainment of the lighter surface-forced waters (as opposed to pa-
 1010 rameterized entrainment, which is relatively weak). These model results are qualitatively
 1011 consistent with the observation-based analysis of (Evans et al., 2023), in that the total
 1012 surface-forced water mass transformation peaks at a lighter density than the overturn-
 1013 ing across OSNAP and that interior mixing processes play a non-negligible role in this
 1014 transformation. In both cases, the differences between CM4Xp25 and CM4Xp125 are
 1015 relatively modest: due to slightly less spurious numerical mixing, CM4Xp125 appears
 1016 to export less deep water across OSNAP-East at the peak density but more at the high-
 1017 est densities.

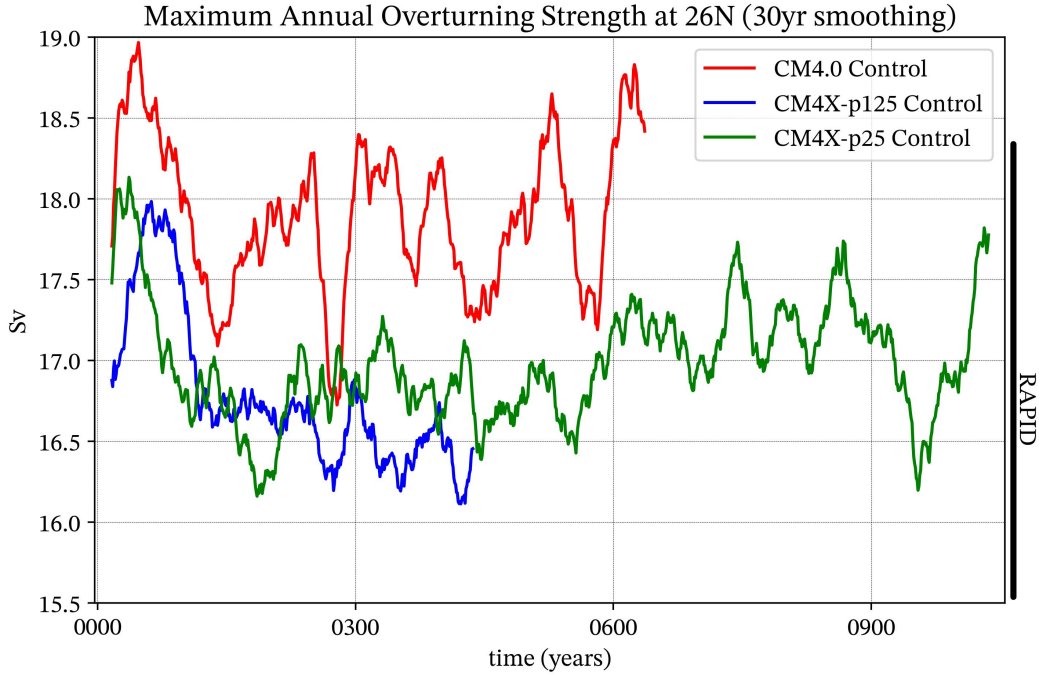


Figure 33. Time series of the maximum annual mean AMOC strength across the RAPID section (26.5°N) for the preindustrial control simulations using CM4.0, CM4X-25, and CM4X-p125. The time series are smoothed with a 30-year running mean. The dark line on the right depicts the range (mean \pm one standard deviation of annual mean) of the observed maximum annual mean AMOC strength across the RAPID section over the period of 2004-2022.

1018 Figure 35e shows the spatial distribution of surface-forced water mass transforma-
 1019 tions at the isopycnal of peak export across the OSNAP arrays in each region. In the
 1020 Irminger Sea and Iceland Basin, transformations are concentrated immediately down-
 1021 stream of the Denmark Strait, further downstream along the East Greenland Current,
 1022 along the Reykjanes Ridge, and on the southern edge of the Iceland Faroe Ridge, qual-
 1023 itatively consistent with observation-based estimates (Petit et al., 2020). In the Labrador
 1024 Sea, transformations are concentrated along the northwestern continental slope, also qual-
 1025 itatively consistent with observation-based estimates (Zou et al., 2024).

1026 As discussed in Section 6.3, the deep water export across OSNAP-West is unre-
 1027 realistically strong in both CM4X-p25 and CM4X-p125. Our water mass analysis suggests
 1028 this result is a direct result of too-high surface-forced water mass transformations, sup-
 1029 porting the previous section’s hypothesis that this is related to a bias in dense layer out-
 1030 crop areas or mixed-layer depths. Furthermore, our analysis suggests that the light and
 1031 shallow biases of the CM4X AMOC is in part attributable to spurious numerical mix-
 1032 ing, which transforms a few Sv of inflowing dense Nordic waters (with $36.8 \text{ kg/m}^3 \leq \sigma_2 \leq$
 1033 37.2 kg/m^3) towards lighter density classes.

1034 6.5 Conclusions regarding the North Atlantic simulations

1035 While representation of the deep western boundary current is expected to play a
 1036 role in altering Gulf Stream vertical structure, Ezer (2016), Schoonover et al. (2017) and
 1037 Debreu et al. (2022) stress the importance of realistically resolving a smooth continen-
 1038 tal slope so to allow for realistic flow-topography interactions. Resolving flow-topography

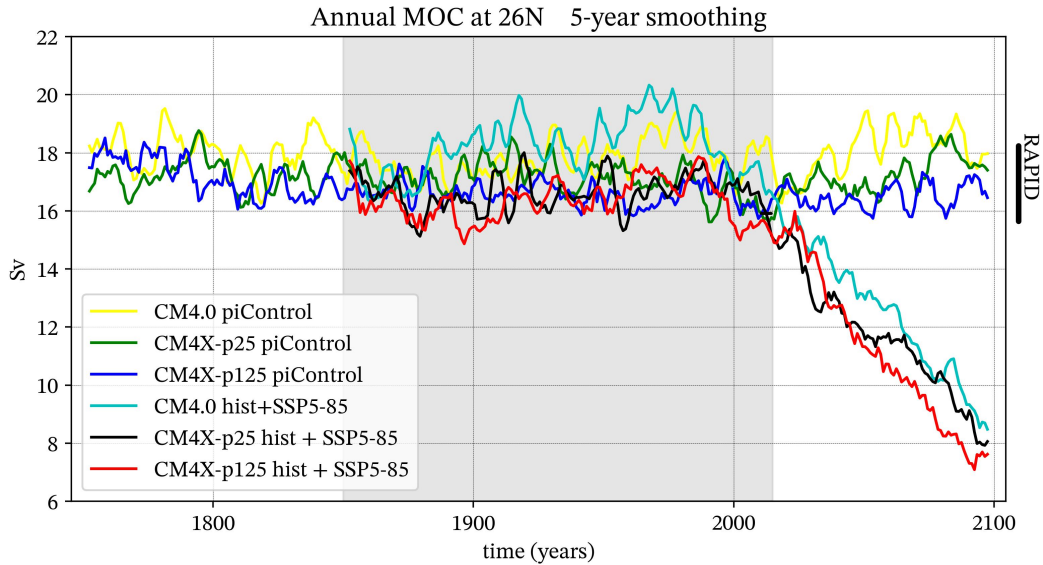


Figure 34. Time series from CM4.0, CM4X-p25, and CM4X-p125 of the maximum annual mean AMOC strength across the RAPID section (26.5°N) for the piControl, historical over years 1850-2014 (shaded region), and the SSP5-8.5 scenario experiment from 2014-2100. The time series are smoothed with a 5-year running mean. The dark line on the right depicts the range (mean \pm one standard deviation of annual mean) of the observed maximum annual mean AMOC strength across the RAPID section over the period of 2004-2022 for comparison.

1039 interactions is a function of model horizontal and vertical grid spacing. Likely the re-
 1040 sult of improvements on many fronts, Chassignet and Xu (2017) conclude that a tran-
 1041 sition from unrealistic to realistic representation of the Gulf Stream and offshore mesoscale
 1042 turbulence should be expected once reaching $1/12^{\circ}$ and finer. Hence, we withhold ex-
 1043 pectation that the Gulf Stream in CM4X should match that in Todd (2021), with the
 1044 slight improvements in CM4X-p125 relative to CM4X-p25 suggesting a trend in the right
 1045 direction.

1046 When compared to CM4.0, the CM4X simulations generally have a better repre-
 1047 sentation of the maximum AMOC strength across both the subpolar and the subtropi-
 1048 cal sections, and multidecadal AMOC changes in the CM4X historical simulations are
 1049 also improved. Comparing CM4X-p125 and CM4X-p25, the refined grid spacing in CM4X-
 1050 p125 leads to a slightly better AMOC representation across the OSNAP section, espe-
 1051 cially across the OSNAP West subsection enclosing the Labrador Sea with improved (re-
 1052 duced) density contrast between the Labrador Sea boundary outflow and inflow. A lin-
 1053 ear relationship between subpolar gyre strength and the maximum subpolar overturn-
 1054 ing strength is generally observed in many climate models (Meccia et al., 2021). Thus,
 1055 the relatively weaker subpolar gyre in CM4X-p125 compared to CM4X-p25 is consistent
 1056 with the reduction in the maximum AMOC strength across the OSNAP section.

1057 Many North Atlantic modeling biases in CM4.0 also exist in CM4X, such as the
 1058 overestimation of winter deep convection in the Labrador Sea, the missing of winter deep
 1059 convection in the Greenland Sea, the underestimation of the strength of the dense Nordic
 1060 Sea overflows across the OSNAP section, the shallow AMOC depth, and the weak low-
 1061 frequency AMOC variability in the control simulation. These long-standing modeling
 1062 biases in the North Atlantic, which often appear in coupled climate models, are key ar-
 1063 eas for future improvements and more experiments are needed to address the processes

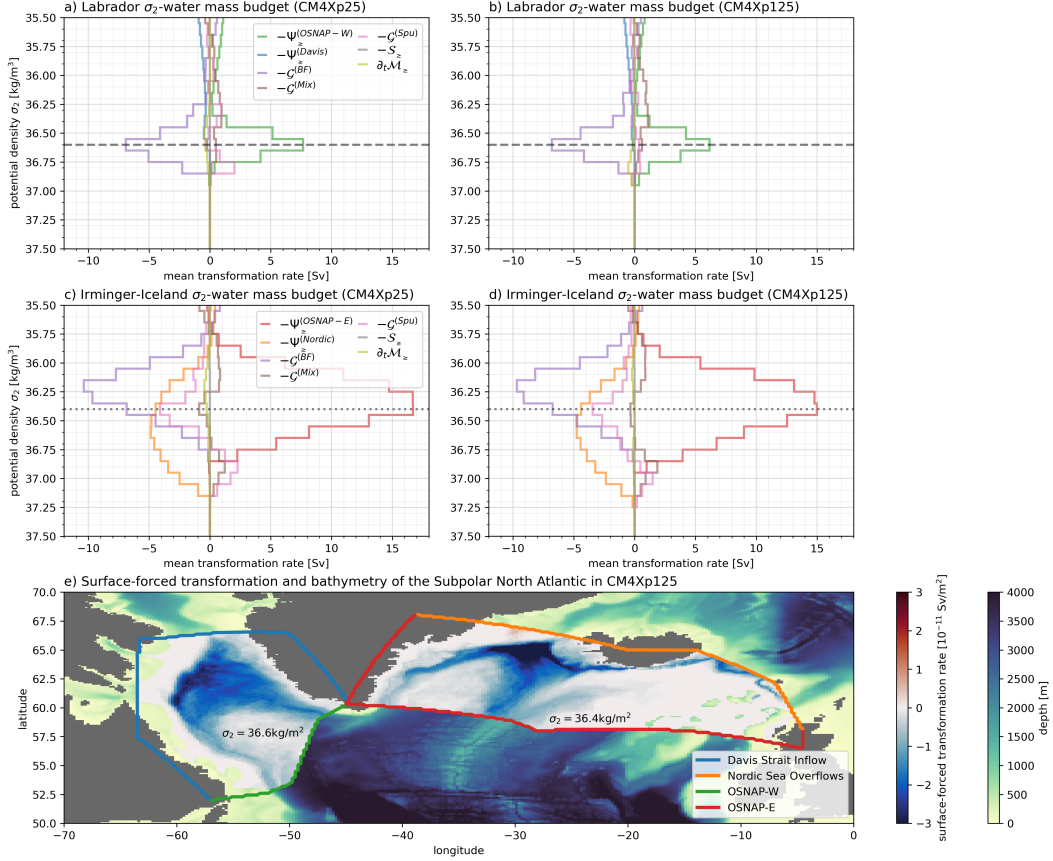


Figure 35. Water mass budgets in potential density (σ_2) coordinates in in CM4Xp25 (a,c) and CM4Xp125 (b,d,e) for a Labrador Sea region (a,b) and a Irminger Sea and Iceland Basin region (c,d). In panel (e), the Labrador region is bounded to the northwest by a Davis Strait section (blue) and to the southeast by the OSNAP-West section (green; see Fu et al. (2023)) while the Irminger-Iceland region is bounded to the northeast by the Greenland-Scotland Ridge (orange) and the to south by the OSNAP-East section (red). Within the two regions, colors represent the rates of water mass transformation per unit area across the isopycnal of peak transport across the OSNAP array (grey lines in a-d) due to boundary fluxes (i.e. the integrand of $\mathcal{G}^{(\text{BF})}$, which is dominated by air-sea heat and freshwater fluxes) Outside of the two regions, colors represent seafloor depth. All terms in the water mass budget are computed following Drake et al. (2024) and represent the 2010-2024 time-mean of monthly-mean transformation rates diagnosed from the forced (historical + SSP5-8.5) scenarios. [Overturning transport values differ from those reported in Section 6.3 because we use different density coordinates, averaging intervals, and forcing scenarios.]

1064 involved in reducing these biases. In particular, future improvements in the strength of
 1065 the dense Nordic Sea overflows (including both the Denmark Strait overflow and the Iceland-
 1066 Scotland overflow) across the subpolar section will enhance the vertical stratification in
 1067 the Labrador Sea and thus reduce the Labrador Sea winter deep convection strength,
 1068 as well as deepen the downstream AMOC. Future improvements in the Arctic dense wa-
 1069 ter formation might also contribute to the improvement of the dense Nordic Sea over-
 1070 flows and the downstream AMOC.

1071 7 Strategies for ocean climate model development

1072 CM4X exemplifies the value of a hierarchy of coupled climate models where the only
 1073 difference is the grid spacing. Such hierarchies provide a means to expose the importance,
 1074 or lack thereof, for the enhanced representation of dynamical processes. Having two or
 1075 more model configurations among a hierarchy provokes questions that go unasked with
 1076 a single model. We propose that the expansion of model phase space to include carefully
 1077 built hierarchies, such as the CM4X whose members represent a vigorous ocean mesoscale,
 1078 is a useful, if not necessary, step to furthering the science going into climate models and
 1079 the science emerging from simulations.

1080 Although CM4X-p125 reaches thermal equilibrium in a remarkably short time (see
 1081 the Part I analysis in Griffies et al. (2024)), the analysis in this paper revealed that there
 1082 remain many familiar biases in need of being addressed in future development projects.
 1083 Particular biases revealed in our analysis include: weak interannual variability in the trop-
 1084 ics, as revealed by the skewness of the sea level (Figure 3 in Section 2.2); a poor repre-
 1085 sentation of the eastern boundary upwelling zones, in part due to under-resolved ocean
 1086 and atmosphere dynamics as well as the representation of low level clouds (Section 3);
 1087 biases in the sea ice seasonal cycle, reflecting a number of possible process biases (Sec-
 1088 tion 4); overly strong ventilation properties of mode and intermediate waters of the South-
 1089 ern Ocean, likely related to under-resolved mesoscale eddy processes at the high latitudes
 1090 (Figure 9 of Part I); an overly diffuse Gulf Stream as it leaves the American coast, pos-
 1091 sibly due to over-dissipation (Sections 2.2 and 6.1); overly shallow overflows in the North
 1092 Atlantic (Figure 27) and overly deep mixed layers in the Labrador Sea (Figure 28), likely
 1093 due to under-resolved mesoscale processes and too much entrainment in the deep over-
 1094 flows. Even with these remaining issues, each of the biases are generally reduced in CM4X-
 1095 p125 relative to CM4X-p25. From an oceanographic perspective, the key advantage of
 1096 rapid thermal equilibration is that it allows one to examine ocean properties within a
 1097 thermally equilibrated climate model, with those properties not having drastically drifted
 1098 outside their physically sensible range. So although CM4X-p125 has many biases in need
 1099 of further reduction, we propose that it provides a powerful venue for studying climate
 1100 dynamics.

1101 There are compelling arguments that, for purposes of centennial climate studies
 1102 and climate change projections, the community should prioritize advances in numerical
 1103 and computational methods to facilitate the direct simulation of the ocean mesoscale (Silvestri
 1104 et al., 2024). The order of magnitude reduction in thermal equilibration time found in
 1105 the CM4X-p125 simulation, relative to CM4X-p25, bolsters that argument. That is, the
 1106 finer ocean grid used in CM4X-p125 has four times the number of grid points and uses
 1107 half the time step; however, this factor of eight added expense for CM4X-p125 is offset
 1108 by its factor of ten shorter thermal equilibration time. Advances signaled by CM4X-p125
 1109 were supported by advances in the numerical methods related to the MOM6 vertical La-
 1110 grangian dynamical core (Griffies et al., 2020). In particular, the quasi-isopycnal verti-
 1111 cal coordinate used in the ocean interior greatly reduces spurious diapycnal mixing rel-
 1112 ative to a geopotential-like coordinate (Adcroft et al., 2019). Spurious numerical mix-
 1113 ing is very difficult to minimize using standard Eulerian based numerical methods in the
 1114 presence of a strong downscale cascade of tracer variance enabled by mesoscale eddies
 1115 (Griffies et al., 2000). Developments leading to the MOM6 dynamical core were partly
 1116 motivated to address this difficulty, particularly when confronted with the hundreds to
 1117 thousands of mesoscale eddy turnover timescales accessed by climate simulations, thus
 1118 allowing for seemingly small numerical errors to accumulate to have nontrivial detrimen-
 1119 tal impacts on stratification. Coupling advances in numerical methods to advances in
 1120 computational hardware and software could render CM4X-p125 the coarsest, not the finest,
 1121 member of a future climate model hierarchy.

1122 8 Open Research

1123 Software comprising the model as well as the software used for creating the figures
1124 will be placed on Zenodo at the revision stage of this work.

1125 Observation-based datasets used in this paper are cited locally. We are indebted
1126 to the many efforts of the various programs providing observational-based data used to
1127 help evaluate these simulations, including the following.

- 1128 • The Argo program provides data that were collected and made freely available by
1129 the International Argo Program and the national programs that contribute to it,
1130 with access available from

1131 <http://www.argo.ucsd.edu> and <http://argo.jcommops.org>

1132 The Argo Program is part of the Global Ocean Observing System.

- 1133 • OSNAP data were collected and made freely available by the OSNAP (Overturn-
1134 ing in the Subpolar North Atlantic Program) project and all the national programs
1135 that contribute to it (www.o-snap.org). The DOI for this data set is

1136 <https://doi.org/10.35090/gatech/70342>

1137 Acknowledgments

1138 This project started in May 2020, during the early stages of the Covid-19 pandemic shut-
1139 down. We are grateful to the GFDL computer operations team for keeping the compu-
1140 tational resources reliable during the shutdown. We thank the GFDL management for
1141 providing the computer resources needed for the development and analysis documented
1142 here. We thank John Dunne and Matthew Harrison for very helpful comments on early
1143 drafts of this manuscript. Krista Dunne, Sergey Malyshev and Chris Milly kindly pro-
1144 vided expertise in helping to update the rivers and lakes for use with the C192 atmo-
1145 sphere coupled to the p125 ocean. The statements, findings, conclusions, and recommen-
1146 dations are those of the author(s) and do not necessarily reflect the views of the National
1147 Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, or the U.S. Department of Commerce.

- 1148 • The statements, findings, conclusions, and recommendations are those of the au-
1149 thor(s) and do not necessarily reflect the views of the National Oceanic and At-
1150 mospheric Administration, or the U.S. Department of Commerce.
- 1151 • A.A. was supported by Award NA18OAR4320123 from the National Oceanic and
1152 Atmospheric Administration, U.S. Department of Commerce.
- 1153 • R.B. was supported under NSF Division of Polar Programs Grant NSF2319828.
- 1154 • C.Y.C. was supported by Award NA19OAR4310365 from the National Oceanic
1155 and Atmospheric Administration, U.S. Department of Commerce.
- 1156 • H.F.D. was supported by the NOAA Climate and Global Change Postdoctoral Fel-
1157 lowship Program, administered by UCAR's Cooperative Programs for the Advance-
1158 ment of Earth System Science (CPAESS) under Award NA18NWS4620043B.
- 1159 • H.K. acknowledges the support from Natural Environment Research Council grants
1160 NE/T013494/1 and NE/W001543/1.
- 1161 • M.L. was supported by award NA18OAR4320123 and NA23OAR4320198 from the
1162 National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, U.S. Department of Commerce.
- 1163 • G.A.M was supported by NSF (PLR-1425989) and UKRI (MR/W013835/1).
- 1164 • A.S. was supported by Schmidt Sciences, LLC under the M²LInES project.
- 1165 • K.E.T acknowledges support from the Southern Ocean Carbon and Climate Ob-
1166 servations and Modeling (SOCCOM) Project under NSF Awards PLR-1425989
1167 and OPP-1936222 and 2332379.
- 1168 • L.Z. was supported by Schmidt Sciences, LLC under the M²LInES project, NSF
1169 grant OCE 1912357 and NOAA CVP NA19OAR4310364.

- 1170 • W.Z. was supported by the National Science Foundation under Grant Number F1240-
 1171 01(NSF OCE 1912357). Any opinions, findings, and conclusions or recommenda-
 1172 tions expressed in this material are those of the author(s) and do not necessar-
 1173 ily reflect the views of the National Science Foundation.

1174 References

- 1175 Adcroft, A., Anderson, W., Blanton, C., Bushuk, M., Dufour, C. O., Dunne, J. P.,
 1176 ... Zhang, R. (2019). The GFDL global ocean and sea ice model OM4.0:
 1177 Model description and simulation features. *Journal of Advances in Modeling*
 1178 *the Earth System, JAMES*. doi: 10.1029/2019MS001726
- 1179 Albert, A., Echevin, V., Lévy, M., & Aumont, O. (2010). Impact of nearshore
 1180 wind stress curl on coastal circulation and primary productivity in the Peru
 1181 upwelling system. *Journal of Geophysical Research: Oceans*, 115(C12).
 1182 Retrieved from [https://agupubs.onlinelibrary.wiley.com/doi/abs/](https://agupubs.onlinelibrary.wiley.com/doi/abs/10.1029/2010JC006569)
 1183 10.1029/2010JC006569 doi: <https://doi.org/10.1029/2010JC006569>
- 1184 Andrews, T., Gregory, J. M., Paynter, D., Silvers, L. G., Zhou, C., Mauritsen, T., ...
 1185 Titchner, H. (2018). Accounting for changing temperature patterns increases
 1186 historical estimates of climate sensitivity. *Geophysical Research Letters*, 45,
 1187 8490–8499. doi: 10.1029/2018GL078887
- 1188 Argo. (2023). *Argo float data and metadata from Global Data Assembly Centre*
 1189 *(Argo GDAC)* [dataset]. SEANOE. Retrieved from [https://www.seanoe.org/](https://www.seanoe.org/data/00311/42182/)
 1190 [data/00311/42182/](https://www.seanoe.org/data/00311/42182/) doi: 10.17882/42182
- 1191 Armour, K. C., Bitz, C. M., & Roe, G. H. (2013). Time-varying climate sensitiv-
 1192 ity from regional feedbacks. *Journal of Climate*, 26, 4518–4534. doi: 10.1175/
 1193 JCLI-D-12-00544.1
- 1194 Bakun, A., Black, B. A., Bograd, S. J., Garcia-Reyes, M., Miller, A. J., Rykaczewski,
 1195 R. R., & Sydeman, W. J. (2015). Anticipated effects of climate change on
 1196 coastal upwelling ecosystems. *Current Climate Change Reports*, 1, 85–93.
- 1197 Beadling, R. L. (2023). Global consequences of regional connectivity along the
 1198 Antarctic margin. *Journal of Geophysical Research: Oceans*, 128. doi: 10
 1199 .1029/2023JC019908
- 1200 Beadling, R. L., Krasting, J. P., Griffies, S. M., Hurlin, W. J., Bronselear, B., Rus-
 1201 sell, J. L., ... Winton, M. (2022). Importance of the Antarctic Slope Current
 1202 in the Southern Ocean response to ice sheet melt and wind stress change.
 1203 *Journal of Geophysical Research - Oceans*, 127. doi: 10.1029/2021jc017608
- 1204 Beadling, R. L., Russell, J. L., Stouffer, R. J., Mazloff, M., Talley, L. D., Goodman,
 1205 P. J., ... Pandde, A. (2020). Representation of Southern Ocean properties
 1206 across coupled model intercomparison project generations: CMIP3 to CMIP6.
 1207 *Journal of Climate*, 33, 6555–6581. doi: 10.1175/JCLI-D-19-0970.1
- 1208 Bograd, S. J., Jacox, M. G., Hazen, E., Lovecchio, E., Montes, I., Buil, P. M., ...
 1209 Rykaczewski, R. R. (2023). Climate change impacts on eastern boundary up-
 1210 welling systems. *Annual Review of Marine Science*, 15(1), 303–328. Retrieved
 1211 from <https://doi.org/10.1146/annurev-marine-032122-021945> (PMID:
 1212 35850490) doi: 10.1146/annurev-marine-032122-021945
- 1213 Bronselaer, B., Winton, M., Griffies, S. M., Hurlin, W. J., Rodgers, K. B., Sergienko,
 1214 O. V., ... Russell, J. L. (2018). Change in future climate due to Antarctic
 1215 meltwater. *Nature*, 564(7734), 53.
- 1216 Bushuk, M., Zhang, Y., Winton, M., Hurlin, B., Delworth, T., Lu, F., ... others
 1217 (2022). Mechanisms of regional Arctic sea ice predictability in two dynamical
 1218 seasonal forecast systems. *J. Climate*, 35(13), 4207–4231.
- 1219 Ceppi, P., Myers, T. A., Nowack, P., Wall, C. J., & Zelinka, M. D. (2024). Implica-
 1220 tions of a pervasive climate model bias for low-cloud feedback. *Geophysical Re-*
 1221 *search Letters*, 51. doi: 10.1029/2024GL110525
- 1222 Chassignet, E. P., & Marshall, D. P. (2008). Gulf Stream separation in numerical

- 1223 ocean models. *Geophysical Monograph Series*, 177. doi: <https://doi.org/10>
 1224 .1029/177GM05
- 1225 Chassignet, E. P., & Xu, X. (2017). Impact of horizontal resolution (1/12° to 1/50°)
 1226 on Gulf Stream separation, penetration, and variability. *Journal of Physical*
 1227 *Oceanography*, 47(10), 1999–2021. doi: 10.1175/JPO-D-17-0031.1
- 1228 Cheng, L., Trenberth, K. E., Fasullo, J., Boyer, T., Abraham, J., & Zhu, J. (2017).
 1229 Improved estimates of ocean heat content from 1960 to 2015. *Science Ad-*
 1230 *vances*, 3(3), e1601545. doi: 10.1126/sciadv.1601545
- 1231 Cunningham, S. A., Kanzow, T., Rayner, D., Baringer, M. O., Johns, W. E.,
 1232 Marotzke, J., ... Bryden, H. L. (2007). Temporal variability of the At-
 1233 lantic meridional overturning circulation at 26.5° n. *Science*, 317. doi:
 1234 10.1126/science.1141304
- 1235 Danabasoglu, G., Large, W., & Briegleb, B. (2010). Climate impacts of parameter-
 1236 ized Nordic Sea overflows. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, 115, C11005. doi:
 1237 10.1029/2010JC006243
- 1238 Danabasoglu, G., Yeager, S. G., Bailey, D., Behrens, E., Bentsen, M., Bi, D., ...
 1239 Wang, Q. (2014). North Atlantic simulations in Coordinated Ocean-ice Refer-
 1240 ence Experiments phase II (CORE-II). Part I: Mean states. *Ocean Modelling*,
 1241 73(0), 76–107. Retrieved from [http://www.sciencedirect.com/science/](http://www.sciencedirect.com/science/article/pii/S1463500313001868)
 1242 [article/pii/S1463500313001868](http://www.sciencedirect.com/science/article/pii/S1463500313001868) doi: 10.1016/j.ocemod.2013.10.005
- 1243 Dangendorf, S., Hay, C., Calafat, F. M., Marcos, M., Piecuch, C. G., Berk, K., &
 1244 Jensen, J. (2019). Steric sea level rise in GFDL CM4 and ESM4: Insights
 1245 into model drift and water mass representation. *Nature Climate Change*, 9,
 1246 705–710. doi: 10.1038/s41558-019-0531-8
- 1247 Debreu, L., Kevlahan, N., & Marchesiello, P. (2022). Improved Gulf Stream sepa-
 1248 ration through Brinkman penalization. *Ocean Modeling*, 179. doi: [https://doi](https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ocemod.2022.102121)
 1249 [.org/10.1016/j.ocemod.2022.102121](https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ocemod.2022.102121)
- 1250 Delworth, T. L., Broccoli, A. J., Rosati, A., Stouffer, R. J., Bala, J., Beesley, J. A.,
 1251 ... Zhang, R. (2006). GFDL’s CM2 global coupled climate models - Part 1:
 1252 Formulation and simulation characteristics. *Journal of Climate*, 19, 643–674.
 1253 doi: 10.1175/JCLI3629.1
- 1254 DeRepentigny, P., Jahn, A., Holland, M. M., & Smith, A. (2020). Arctic sea ice in
 1255 two configurations of the CESM2 during the 20th and 21st centuries. *J. Geo-*
 1256 *phys. Res.: Oceans*, 125(9), e2020JC016133.
- 1257 DeVries, T., Le Quéré, C., Berthet, S., Hauck, J., Ilyina, T., Landschützer, P.,
 1258 ... Séférian, R. (2019). Decadal trends in the ocean carbon sink. *Pro-*
 1259 *ceedings of the National Academy of Sciences*, 116, 11646–11651. doi:
 1260 10.1073/pnas.1900371116
- 1261 Donner, L. J., O’Brien, T. A., Rieger, D., Vogel, B., & Cooke, W. F. (2016). Are at-
 1262 mospheric updrafts a key to unlocking climate forcing and sensitivity? *Atmo-*
 1263 *spheric Chemistry and Physics*, 16. doi: 10.5194/acp-16-12983-2016
- 1264 Donohue, K. A., Tracey, K. L., Watts, D. R., Chidichimo, M. P., & Chereskin,
 1265 T. K. (2016). Mean Antarctic Circumpolar Current transport measured
 1266 in Drake Passage. *Geophysical Research Letters*, 43, 11,760–11,767. doi:
 1267 10.1002/2016GL070319
- 1268 Drake, H. F., Bailey, S., Dussin, R., Griffies, S. M., Krasting, J. P., MacGilchrist,
 1269 G. A., ... Zika, J. D. (2024, April). *Water mass transformation bud-*
 1270 *gets in finite-volume generalized vertical coordinate ocean models*. Re-
 1271 trieved 2024-05-31, from [https://essopenarchive.org/users/242115/](https://essopenarchive.org/users/242115/articles/788549-water-mass-transformation-budgets-in-finite-volume-generalized-vertical-coordinate-ocean-models?commit=e6178873ac99d67c98963b54ba60699d57b7703f)
 1272 [articles/788549-water-mass-transformation-budgets-in-finite](https://essopenarchive.org/users/242115/articles/788549-water-mass-transformation-budgets-in-finite-volume-generalized-vertical-coordinate-ocean-models?commit=e6178873ac99d67c98963b54ba60699d57b7703f)
 1273 [-volume-generalized-vertical-coordinate-ocean-models?commit=](https://essopenarchive.org/users/242115/articles/788549-water-mass-transformation-budgets-in-finite-volume-generalized-vertical-coordinate-ocean-models?commit=e6178873ac99d67c98963b54ba60699d57b7703f)
 1274 [e6178873ac99d67c98963b54ba60699d57b7703f](https://essopenarchive.org/users/242115/articles/788549-water-mass-transformation-budgets-in-finite-volume-generalized-vertical-coordinate-ocean-models?commit=e6178873ac99d67c98963b54ba60699d57b7703f) doi: 10.22541/essoar
 1275 .171284935.57181910/v1
- 1276 Dunne, J. P., Horowitz, L. W., Adcroft, A., Ginoux, P., Held, I. M., John, J. G., ...
 1277 Zhao, M. (2020). The GFDL Earth system model version 4.1 (GFDL-ESM4.1):

- 1278 Model description and simulation characteristics. *Journal of Advances in Mod-*
 1279 *eling Earth Systems*, 12. doi: 10.1029/2019MS002015
- 1280 Dunne, J. P., John, J. G., Hallberg, R. W., Griffies, S. M., Shevliakova, E. N.,
 1281 Stouffer, R. J., . . . Zadeh, N. (2012). GFDL’s ESM2 global coupled
 1282 climate-carbon Earth System Models Part I: Physical formulation and base-
 1283 line simulation characteristics. *Journal of Climate*, 25, 6646–6665. doi:
 1284 10.1175/JCLI-D-11-00560.1
- 1285 Enriquez, A. G., & Friehe, C. A. (1995). Effects of wind stress and wind stress
 1286 curl variability on coastal upwelling. *Journal of Physical Oceanography*,
 1287 25(7), 1651 - 1671. Retrieved from [https://journals.ametsoc.org/view/
 1288 journals/phoc/25/7/1520-0485_1995_025_1651_eowsaw_2_0_co_2.xml](https://journals.ametsoc.org/view/journals/phoc/25/7/1520-0485_1995_025_1651_eowsaw_2_0_co_2.xml) doi:
 1289 [https://doi.org/10.1175/1520-0485\(1995\)025<1651:EOWSAW>2.0.CO;2](https://doi.org/10.1175/1520-0485(1995)025<1651:EOWSAW>2.0.CO;2)
- 1290 Evans, D. G., Holliday, N. P., Bacon, S., & Le Bras, I. (2023, June). Mixing and
 1291 air–sea buoyancy fluxes set the time-mean overturning circulation in the sub-
 1292 polar North Atlantic and Nordic Seas. *Ocean Science*, 19(3), 745–768. Re-
 1293 trieved 2023-09-18, from [https://os.copernicus.org/articles/19/745/
 1294 2023/](https://os.copernicus.org/articles/19/745/2023/) (Publisher: Copernicus GmbH) doi: 10.5194/os-19-745-2023
- 1295 Eyring, V., Bony, S., Meehl, J. A., Senior, C., Stevens, B., Stouffer, R. J., & Taylor,
 1296 K. E. (2016). Overview of the Coupled Model Intercomparison Project Phase
 1297 6 (CMIP6) experimental design and organisation. *Geoscientific Model Develop-*
 1298 *ment*, 9, 1937–1958. Retrieved from [http://www.geosci-model-dev.net/9/
 1299 1937/2016/](http://www.geosci-model-dev.net/9/1937/2016/) doi: 10.5194/gmd-9-1937-2016
- 1300 Ezer, T. (2016). Revisiting the problem of the Gulf Stream separation: on the rep-
 1301 resenation of topography in ocean models with different types of vertical grids.
 1302 *Ocean Modelling*, 104. doi: <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ocemod.2016.05.008>
- 1303 Feltham, D. L. (2008). Sea ice rheology. *Annu. Rev. Fluid Mech.*, 40, 91–112.
- 1304 FRAM Group. (1991). An eddy-resolving model of the Southern Ocean. *EOS*
 1305 *Transactions of the American Geophysical Union*, 72, 169–175. doi: 10.1029/
 1306 90EO00128
- 1307 Fraser, A., Wongpan, P., Langhorne, P., Klekociuk, A., Kusahara, K., Lannuzel,
 1308 D., . . . others (2023). Antarctic landfast sea ice: A review of its physics,
 1309 biogeochemistry and ecology. *Reviews of Geophysics*, 61(2), e2022RG000770.
- 1310 Frederikse, T., Landerer, F., Caron, L., Adhikari, S., Parkes, D., Humphrey, V. W.,
 1311 . . . Wu, Y.-H. (2020). The causes of sea-level rise since 1900. *Nature*,
 1312 584(7821), 393–397. doi: 10.1038/s41586-020-2591-3
- 1313 Frölicher, T. L., Sarmiento, J. L., Paynter, D. J., Dunne, J. P., Krasting, J. P., &
 1314 Winton, M. (2015). Dominance of the Southern Ocean in anthropogenic car-
 1315 bon and heat uptake in CMIP5 models. *Journal of Climate*, 28, 862–886. doi:
 1316 10.1175/JCLI-D-14-00117.1
- 1317 Fu, Y., Lozier, M. S., Biló, T. C., Bower, A. S., Cunningham, S. A., Cyr, F., . . .
 1318 Yashayaev, I. (2023). Seasonality of the meridional overturning circulation in
 1319 the subpolar north atlantic [dataset]. *Communications Earth & Environment*,
 1320 4(1), 181.
- 1321 Gent, P. R., Yeager, S. G., Neale, R. B., Levis, S., & Bailey, D. A. (2010). Improve-
 1322 ments in a half degree atmosphere/land version of the ccsm. *Climate Dynam-*
 1323 *ics*, 34, 819–833.
- 1324 Goddard, P., Dufour, C., Yin, J., Griffies, S. M., & Winton, M. (2017). CO2-
 1325 induced ocean warming of the Antarctic continental shelf in an eddying
 1326 global climate model. *Journal of Geophysical Research - Oceans*, 122. doi:
 1327 10.1002/2017JC012849
- 1328 Gordon, C., Rosati, A., & Gudgel, R. (2000). Tropical sensitivity of a coupled model
 1329 to specified isccp low clouds. *Journal of Climate*, 13(13), 2239–2260.
- 1330 Griffies, S. M., Adcroft, A., Alberty, M. S., Beadling, R. L., Bushuk, M., Chang,
 1331 C.-Y., . . . Zika, J. D. (2024). The GFDL-CM4X climate model hierarchy,
 1332 Part I: thermal properties and the mesoscale dominance hypothesis. *Journal of*

- 1333 *Advances in Modeling Earth Systems*.
- 1334 Griffies, S. M., Adcroft, A., & Hallberg, R. W. (2020). A primer on the vertical
1335 Lagrangian-remap method in ocean models based on finite volume generalized
1336 vertical coordinates. *Journal of Advances in Modeling Earth Systems*, *12*. doi:
1337 10.1029/2019MS001954
- 1338 Griffies, S. M., Danabasoglu, G., Durack, P. J., Adcroft, A. J., Balaji, V., Böning,
1339 C. W., ... Yeager, S. G. (2016). OMIP contribution to CMIP6: experimental
1340 and diagnostic protocol for the physical component of the ocean model inter-
1341 comparison project. *Geoscientific Model Development*, *9*, 3231–3296. doi:
1342 10.5194/gmd-9-3231-2016
- 1343 Griffies, S. M., Pacanowski, R. C., & Hallberg, R. W. (2000). Spurious diapycnal
1344 mixing associated with advection in a z -coordinate ocean model. *Monthly*
1345 *Weather Review*, *128*, 538–564. doi: 10.1175/1520-0493(2000)128<0538:
1346 SDMAWA>2.0.CO;2
- 1347 Griffies, S. M., Winton, M., Anderson, W. G., Benson, R., Delworth, T. L., Dufour,
1348 C., ... Zhang, R. (2015). Impacts on ocean heat from transient mesoscale
1349 eddies in a hierarchy of climate models. *Journal of Climate*, *28*, 952–977. doi:
1350 10.1175/JCLI-D-14-00353.1
- 1351 Griffies, S. M., Winton, M., Donner, L. J., Horowitz, L. W., Downes, S. M., Farneti,
1352 R., ... others (2011). The GFDL CM3 coupled climate model: Characteristics
1353 of the ocean and sea ice simulations. *J. Climate*, *24*(13), 3520–3544.
- 1354 Hallberg, R. W. (2013). Using a resolution function to regulate parameterizations
1355 of oceanic mesoscale eddy effects. *Ocean Modelling*, *72*, 92–103. doi: 10.1016/
1356 j.ocemod.2013.08.007
- 1357 Hallberg, R. W., Adcroft, A. J., Dunne, J. P., Krasting, J. P., & Stouffer, R.
1358 (2013). Sensitivity of twenty-first-century global-mean steric sea level rise
1359 to ocean model formulation. *Journal of Climate*, *26*, 2947–2956. doi:
1360 10.1175/JCLI-D-12-00506.1
- 1361 Hallberg, R. W., & Gnanadesikan, A. (2006). On the role of eddies in deter-
1362 mining the structure and response of the wind-driven southern hemisphere
1363 overturning: Results from the Modeling Eddies in the Southern Ocean
1364 (MESO) project. *Journal of Physical Oceanography*, *36*, 2232–2252. doi:
1365 10.1175/JPO2980.1
- 1366 Held, I. M., Guo, H., Adcroft, A., Dunne, J. P., Horowitz, L. W., Krasting, J., ...
1367 Zadeh, N. (2019). Structure and performance of GFDL’s CM4.0 climate
1368 model. *Journal of Advances in Modeling the Earth System*, *11*, 3691–3726. doi:
1369 10.1029/2019MS001829
- 1370 Heuzé, C. (2021). Antarctic Bottom Water and North Atlantic Deep Water in
1371 CMIP6 models. *Ocean Science*, *17*. doi: 10.5194/os-17-59-2021
- 1372 Holland, W. R. (1967). On the wind-driven circulation in an ocean with bottom to-
1373 pography. *Tellus*, *19*(4), 582–600. doi: 10.3402/tellusa.v19i4.9825
- 1374 Horvat, C. (2021). Marginal ice zone fraction benchmarks sea ice and climate model
1375 skill. *Nature Communications*, *12*(1), 2221.
- 1376 Huang, B., Liu, C., Banzon, V., Freeman, E., Graham, G., Hankins, B., ... Zhang,
1377 H.-M. (2020). Improvements of the daily optimum interpolation sea surface
1378 temperature (DOISST) Version 2.1. *Journal of Climate*, *34*, 2923–2939. doi:
1379 10.1175/JCLI-D-20-0166.1
- 1380 Hughes, C. W., & De Cuevas, B. A. (2001). Why western boundary currents in
1381 realistic oceans are inviscid: A link between form stress and bottom pres-
1382 sure torques. *Journal of Physical Oceanography*, *31*(10), 2871–2885. doi:
1383 10.1175/1520-0485(2001)031<2871:WWBCIR>2.0.CO;2
- 1384 Hughes, C. W., Thompson, A. F., & Wilson, C. (2010). Identification of jets and
1385 mixing barriers from sea level and vorticity measurements using simple statis-
1386 tics. *Ocean Modelling*, *32*, 44–57. doi: 10.1016/j.ocemod.2009.10.004
- 1387 Huneke, W. G. C., Morrison, A. K., & Hogg, A. M. (2022). Spatial and subannual

- 1388 variability of the Antarctic Slope Current in an eddying ocean sea ice model.
 1389 *Journal of Physical Oceanography*, 52, 347–361. doi: 10.1175/jpo-d-21-0143.1
- 1390 Hurlburt, H. E., & Hogan, P. J. (2000). Impact of 1/8 to 1/64 resolution
 1391 on Gulf Stream model-data comparisons in basin-scale subtropical at-
 1392 lantic ocean models. *Dynamics of Atmospheres and Oceans*, 32. doi:
 1393 [https://doi.org/10.1016/S0377-0265\(00\)00050-6](https://doi.org/10.1016/S0377-0265(00)00050-6)
- 1394 Hutter, N., Losch, M., & Menemenlis, D. (2018). Scaling properties of Arctic sea ice
 1395 deformation in a high-resolution viscous-plastic sea ice model and in satellite
 1396 observations. *Journal of Geophysical Research: Oceans*, 123(1), 672–687.
- 1397 Ishii, M., Fukuda, Y., Hirahara, S., Yasui, S., Suzuki, T., & Sato, K. (2017). Ac-
 1398 curacy of global upper ocean heat content estimation expected from present
 1399 observational data sets. *SOLA*, 13(0), 163–167. doi: 10.2151/sola.2017-030
- 1400 Jacobs, S. S. (2004). Bottom water production and its links with the ther-
 1401 mohaline circulation. *Antarctic Science*, 16(4), 427–437. doi: 10.1017/
 1402 S095410200400224X
- 1403 Jacox, M. G., & Edwards, C. A. (2012). Upwelling source depth in the presence of
 1404 nearshore wind stress curl. *Journal of Geophysical Research: Oceans*, 117(C5).
 1405 Retrieved from [https://agupubs.onlinelibrary.wiley.com/doi/abs/](https://agupubs.onlinelibrary.wiley.com/doi/abs/10.1029/2011JC007856)
 1406 [10.1029/2011JC007856](https://doi.org/10.1029/2011JC007856) doi: <https://doi.org/10.1029/2011JC007856>
- 1407 Jahn, A., Holland, M. M., & Kay, J. E. (2024). Projections of an ice-free Arctic
 1408 Ocean. *Nature Reviews Earth & Environment*, 1–13.
- 1409 Jahn, A., Kay, J. E., Holland, M. M., & Hall, D. M. (2016). How predictable is the
 1410 timing of a summer ice-free Arctic? *Geophys. Res. Lett.*, 43(17), 9113–9120.
- 1411 Jevrejeva, S., H, P., & Jackson, L. P. (2021). Global mean thermosteric sea level
 1412 projections by 2100 in CMIP6 climate models. *Environmental Research Let-*
 1413 *ters*, 16(1), 705–710. doi: 10.1088/1748-9326/abceea
- 1414 Junker, T., Schmidt, M., & Mohrholz, V. (2015). The relation of wind stress curl
 1415 and meridional transport in the Benguela upwelling system. *Journal of Ma-*
 1416 *rine Systems*, 143, 1-6. Retrieved from [https://www.sciencedirect.com/](https://www.sciencedirect.com/science/article/pii/S0924796314002425)
 1417 [science/article/pii/S0924796314002425](https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jmarsys.2014.10.006) doi: [https://doi.org/10.1016/](https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jmarsys.2014.10.006)
- 1418 [j.jmarsys.2014.10.006](https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jmarsys.2014.10.006)
- 1419 Kaspar, F., Hollmann, R., Lockhoff, M., Karlsson, K.-G., Dybbroe, A., Fuchs, P.,
 1420 ... Schulz, J. (2009). Operational generation of AVHRR-based cloud prod-
 1421 ucts for Europe and the Arctic at EUMETSAT’s Satellite Application Facility
 1422 on Climate Monitoring (CM-SAF). *Advances in Science and Research*, 3(1),
 1423 45–51.
- 1424 Kay, J. E., Wall, C., Yettella, V., Medeiros, B., Hannay, C., Caldwell, P., & Bitz,
 1425 C. (2016). Global climate impacts of fixing the Southern Ocean shortwave
 1426 radiation bias in the Community Earth System Model (CESM). *Journal of*
 1427 *Climate*, 29(12), 4617–4636.
- 1428 Keen, A., Blockley, E., Bailey, D., Debernard, J. B., Bushuk, M., Delhaye, S., ...
 1429 Wyser, K. (2021). An inter-comparison of the mass budget of the Arctic sea
 1430 ice in CMIP6 models. *The Cryosphere*, 15(2), 951–982.
- 1431 Khatri, H., Griffies, S. M., Storer, B. A., Buzzicotti, M., Aluie, H., Sonnewald, M.,
 1432 ... Shao, A. (2024). A scale-dependent analysis of the barotropic vorticity
 1433 budget in a global ocean simulation. *Journal of Advances in Modeling Earth*
 1434 *Systems*, 16(6), e2023MS003813. doi: 10.1029/2023MS003813
- 1435 Krasting, J. P., Griffies, S. M., Tesdal, J.-E., MacGilchrist, G., Beadling, R. L., &
 1436 Little, C. M. (2024). Steric sea level rise and relationships with model drift
 1437 and water mass representation in GFDL CM4 and ESM4. *Journal of Climate*,
 1438 *accepted*.
- 1439 LaCasce, J. (2017). The prevalence of oceanic surface modes. *Geophysical Research*
 1440 *Letters*, 44, 11,097–11,105. doi: 10.1002/2017GL075430
- 1441 Landy, J. C., Dawson, G. J., Tsamados, M., Bushuk, M., Stroeve, J. C., Howell,
 1442 S. E., ... others (2022). A year-round satellite sea-ice thickness record from

- 1443 CryoSat-2. *Nature*, 609(7927), 517–522.
- 1444 Lavergne, T., Eastwood, S., Teffah, Z., Schyberg, H., & Breivik, L.-A. (2010). Sea
1445 ice motion from low-resolution satellite sensors: An alternative method and its
1446 validation in the Arctic. *J. Geophys. Res.: Oceans*, 115(C10).
- 1447 Lellouche, J.-M., Greiner, E., Bourdallé-Badie, R., Garric, G., Melet, A., Drévillon,
1448 M., ... Le Traon, P.-Y. (2021). The Copernicus global 1/12° oceanic
1449 and sea ice GLORYS12 reanalysis. *Frontiers in Earth Science*, 9. doi:
1450 10.3389/feart.2021.698876
- 1451 Levitus, S., Antonov, J. I., Boyer, T. P., Baranova, O. K., Garcia, H. E., Locarnini,
1452 R. A., ... Zweng, M. M. (2012, 05). World ocean heat content and ther-
1453 mosteric sea level change (0-2000 m), 1955-2010. *Geophysical Research Letters*,
1454 39(10), n/a – n/a. doi: 10.1029/2012gl051106
- 1455 Li, F., Lozier, M. S., Bacon, S., Bower, A. S., Cunningham, S. A., de Jong, M. F.,
1456 ... Zhou, C. (2021). Subpolar North Atlantic western boundary density
1457 anomalies and the meridional overturning circulation. *Nature Communica-*
1458 *tions*, 12. doi: 10.1038/s41467-021-23350-2
- 1459 Lim, F., Lozier, M. S., Danagasoglu, G., Holliday, N. P., Kwon, Y.-O., Romanou, A.,
1460 ... Zhang, R. (2019). Local and downstream relationships between Labrador
1461 Sea Water volume and North Atlantic meridional overturning circulation vari-
1462 ability. *Journal of Climate*, 32, 3883-3898. doi: 10.1175/JCLI-D-18-0735.1
- 1463 Lockwood, J. W., Griffies, C. O. D. S. M., & Winton, M. (2021). On the
1464 role of the Antarctic Slope Front on the occurrence of the Weddell Sea
1465 polynya under climate change. *Journal of Climate*, 34, 2529–2548. doi:
1466 10.1175/JCLI-D-20-0069.1
- 1467 Loose, N., Abernathey, R., Grooms, I., Busecke, J., Guillaumin, A., Yankovsky, E.,
1468 ... others (2022). GCM-filters: A Python package for diffusion-based spatial
1469 filtering of gridded data. *Journal of Open Source Software*, 7(70).
- 1470 Lozier, M. S., Li, F., Bacon, S., Bahr, F., Bower, A. S., Cunningham, S. A., ...
1471 Zhao, J. (2019). A sea change in our view of overturning in the sub-
1472 polar North Atlantic. *Science*, 363(6426), 516-521. Retrieved from
1473 <https://www.science.org/doi/abs/10.1126/science.aau6592> doi:
1474 10.1126/science.aau6592
- 1475 McCarthy, G. D., Smeed, D. A., Johns, W. E., Frajka-Williams, E., Moat, B. I.,
1476 Rayner, D., ... Bryden, H. L. (2015). Measuring the Atlantic meridional
1477 overturning circulation at 26°N. *Progress in Oceanography*, 130, 91-111. doi:
1478 10.1016/j.pocean.2014.10.006
- 1479 Meccia, V. L., Iovino, D., & Bellucci, A. (2021). North Atlantic gyre circulation in
1480 PRIMAVERA models. *Climate Dynamics*, 56(11), 4075–4090. doi: 10.1007/
1481 s00382-021-05686-z
- 1482 Meehl, G. A., Arblaster, J. M., Bitz, C. M., Chung, C. T., & Teng, H. (2016).
1483 Antarctic sea-ice expansion between 2000 and 2014 driven by tropical Pacific
1484 decadal climate variability. *Nat. Geosci.*, 9(8), 590–595.
- 1485 Meier, W. N., Fetterer, F., Windnagel, A. K., & Stewart, S. (2021). *NOAA/NSIDC*
1486 *climate data record of passive microwave sea ice concentration, version 4*. Na-
1487 tional Snow and Ice Data Center. Retrieved from [https://nsidc.org/data/](https://nsidc.org/data/g02202)
1488 [g02202](https://nsidc.org/data/g02202) doi: 10.7265/efmz-2t65
- 1489 Menary, M. B., Robson, J., Allan, R. P., Booth, B. B. B., Cassou, C., Gastineau,
1490 G., ... Zhang, R. (2020). Aerosol-forced AMOC changes in CMIP6 historical
1491 simulations. *Geophysical Research Letters*, 47. doi: 10.1029/2020GL088166
- 1492 Moorman, R., Morrison, A. K., & Hogg, A. M. C. (2020). Thermal responses to
1493 Antarctic ice shelf melt in an eddy-rich global ocean-sea ice model. *Journal of*
1494 *Climate*, 33. doi: 10.1175/jcli-d-19-0846.1
- 1495 Morrison, A. K., Waugh, D. W., Hogg, A. M., Jones, D. C., & Abernathey, R. P.
1496 (2022). Ventilation of the Southern Ocean pycnocline. *Annual Review of*
1497 *Marine Science*, 14, 15.1–15.26. doi: 10.1146/annurev-marine-010419-011012

- 1498 Paolo, F. S., Fricker, H. A., & Padman, L. (2015). Volume loss from Antarctic ice
1499 shelves is accelerating. *Science*, *348*, 327–331. doi: 10.1126/science.aaa0940
- 1500 Parsons, A. (2006). A two-layer model of Gulf Stream separation. *Journal of Fluid*
1501 *Mechanics*, *39*. doi: <https://doi.org/10.1017/S0022112069002308>
- 1502 Petit, T., Lozier, M. S., Josey, S. A., & Cunningham, S. A. (2020). At-
1503 lantic Deep Water Formation Occurs Primarily in the Iceland Basin and
1504 Irminger Sea by Local Buoyancy Forcing. *Geophysical Research Let-*
1505 *ters*, *47*(22), e2020GL091028. Retrieved 2024-07-03, from [https://](https://onlinelibrary.wiley.com/doi/abs/10.1029/2020GL091028)
1506 onlinelibrary.wiley.com/doi/abs/10.1029/2020GL091028 (eprint:
1507 <https://onlinelibrary.wiley.com/doi/pdf/10.1029/2020GL091028>) doi:
1508 10.1029/2020GL091028
- 1509 Pickett, M. H., & Paduan, J. D. (2003). Ekman transport and pumping in the
1510 California Current based on the U.S. Navy’s high-resolution atmospheric
1511 model (COAMPS). *Journal of Geophysical Research: Oceans*, *108*(C10).
1512 Retrieved from [https://agupubs.onlinelibrary.wiley.com/doi/abs/](https://agupubs.onlinelibrary.wiley.com/doi/abs/10.1029/2003JC001902)
1513 [10.1029/2003JC001902](https://doi.org/10.1029/2003JC001902) doi: <https://doi.org/10.1029/2003JC001902>
- 1514 Purich, A., Cai, W., England, M. H., & Cowan, T. (2016). Evidence for link be-
1515 tween modelled trends in Antarctic sea ice and underestimated westerly wind
1516 changes. *Nat. Comms.*, *7*, 10409.
- 1517 Purich, A., & England, M. H. (2021). Historical and future projected warming
1518 of Antarctic Shelf Bottom Water in CMIP6 models. *Geophysical Research Let-*
1519 *ters*, *48*. doi: 10.1029/2021GL092752
- 1520 Rackow, T., Danilov, S., Goessling, H. F., Hellmer, H. H., Sein, D. V., Semmler,
1521 T., . . . Jung, T. (2022). Delayed Antarctic sea-ice decline in high-resolution
1522 climate change simulations. *Nature communications*, *13*(1), 637.
- 1523 Richter, I. (2015). Climate model biases in the eastern tropical oceans: Causes,
1524 impacts and ways forward. *Wiley Interdisciplinary Reviews: Climate Change*,
1525 *6*(3), 345–358.
- 1526 Ricker, R., Hendricks, S., Helm, V., Skourup, H., & Davidson, M. (2014). Sensi-
1527 tivity of CryoSat-2 Arctic sea-ice freeboard and thickness on radar-waveform
1528 interpretation. *The Cryosphere*, *8*(4), 1607–1622.
- 1529 Rintoul, S. R. (2018). The global influence of localized dynamics in the Southern
1530 Ocean. *Nature*, *558*, 209–218. doi: 10.1038/s41586-018-0182-3
- 1531 Rintoul, S. R., Hughes, C. W., & Olbers, D. (2001). The Antarctic Circumpolar
1532 Current system. In G. Siedler, J. Gould, & J. Church (Eds.), *Ocean circulation*
1533 *and climate, 1st edition* (Vol. 77, pp. 271–301). Academic Press.
- 1534 Rintoul, S. R., & Naveira Garabato, A. C. (2013). Dynamics of the Southern Ocean
1535 circulation. In G. Siedler, S. M. Griffies, J. Gould, & J. Church (Eds.), *Ocean*
1536 *circulation and climate, 2nd edition: A 21st century perspective* (Vol. 103, pp.
1537 471–492). Academic Press. doi: 10.1016/B978-0-12-391851-2.00018-0
- 1538 Risien, C. M., & Chelton, D. B. (2008). A global climatology of surface wind and
1539 wind stress fields from eight years of QuikSCAT scatterometer data. *Jour-*
1540 *nal of Physical Oceanography*, *38*(11), 2379 - 2413. Retrieved from [https://](https://journals.ametsoc.org/view/journals/phoc/38/11/2008jpo3881.1.xml)
1541 journals.ametsoc.org/view/journals/phoc/38/11/2008jpo3881.1.xml
1542 doi: <https://doi.org/10.1175/2008JPO3881.1>
- 1543 Roach, L. A., Dörr, J., Holmes, C. R., Massonnet, F., Blockley, E. W., Notz, D., . . .
1544 others (2020). Antarctic sea ice area in CMIP6. *Geophys. Res. Lett.*, *47*(9),
1545 e2019GL086729.
- 1546 Robson, J., Menary, M. B., Sutton, R. T., Mecking, J., Gregory, J. M., Jones, C.,
1547 . . . Wilcox, L. J. (2022). The role of anthropogenic aerosol forcing in the
1548 1850–1985 strengthening of the AMOC in CMIP6 historical simulations. *Jour-*
1549 *nal of Climate*, *35*, 6843–6863. doi: 10.1175/JCLI-D-22-0124.1
- 1550 Roemmich, D., Church, J., Gilson, J., Monselesan, D., Sutton, P., & Wijffels, S.
1551 (2015). Unabated planetary warming and its ocean structure since 2006.
1552 *Nature Climate Change*, *5*, 240–245. doi: 10.1038/nclimate2513

- 1553 Ross, A. C., Stock, C. A., Adcroft, A., Curchitser, E., Hallberg, R., Harrison, M. J.,
1554 ... Simkins, J. (2023). A high-resolution physical-biogeochemical model for
1555 marine resource applications in the northwest atlantic (mom6-cobalt-nwa12
1556 v1.0). *Geoscientific Model Development*, 16. doi: [https://doi.org/10.5194/
1557 gmd-16-6943-2023](https://doi.org/10.5194/gmd-16-6943-2023)
- 1558 Rykaczewski, R. R., Dunne, J. P., Sydeman, W. J., García-Reyes, M., Black, B. A.,
1559 & Bograd, S. J. (2015). Poleward displacement of coastal upwelling-favorable
1560 winds in the ocean's eastern boundary currents through the 21st century.
1561 *Geophysical Research Letters*, 42(15), 6424-6431. Retrieved from [https://
1562 agupubs.onlinelibrary.wiley.com/doi/abs/10.1002/2015GL064694](https://agupubs.onlinelibrary.wiley.com/doi/abs/10.1002/2015GL064694) doi:
1563 <https://doi.org/10.1002/2015GL064694>
- 1564 Sato, Y., Goto, D., Michibata, T., Suzuki, K., Takemura, T., Tomita, H., & Naka-
1565 jima, T. M. (2018). Aerosol effects on cloud water amounts were successfully
1566 simulated by a global cloud-system resolving model. *Nature Communications*,
1567 9. doi: 10.1038/s41467-018-03379-6
- 1568 Schmidt, G. A., Romanou, A., Roach, L. A., Mankoff, K. D., Li, Q., Rye, C. D., ...
1569 Busecke, J. J. (2023). Anomalous meltwater from ice sheets and ice shelves is
1570 a historical forcing. *Geophys. Res. Lett.*, 50(24), e2023GL106530.
- 1571 Schmidtko, S., Heywood, K. J., Thompson, A. F., & Aoki, S. (2014). Multidecadal
1572 warming of Antarctic waters. *Science*, 346, 1227–1231. doi: 10.1126/science
1573 .1256117
- 1574 Schoonover, J., Dewar, W. K., Wienders, N., & Deremble, B. (2017). Local sensitivi-
1575 ties of the Gulf Stream separation. *Journal of Physical Oceanography*, 47. doi:
1576 <https://doi.org/10.1175/JPO-D-16-0195.1>
- 1577 Shu, Q., Song, Z., & Qiao, F. (2015). Assessment of sea ice simulations in the
1578 CMIP5 models. *The Cryosphere*, 9(1), 399–409.
- 1579 Silvano, A., Purkey, S., Gordon, A. L., Castagno, P., Stewart, A. L., & S. R. Rin-
1580 toul, e. a. (2023). Observing Antarctic Bottom Water in the Southern Ocean.
1581 *Frontiers in Marine Science*, 10. doi: 10.3389/fmars.2023.1221701
- 1582 Silvestri, S., Wagner, G. L., Campin, J.-M., Constantinou, N. C., Hill, C. N., Souza,
1583 A., & Ferrari, R. (2024). A new WENO-based momentum advection scheme
1584 for simulations of ocean mesoscale turbulence. *Journal of Climate*, 16. doi:
1585 10.1029/2023MS004130
- 1586 SIMIP Community, T. (2020). Arctic sea ice in CMIP6. *Geophys. Res. Lett.*, 47(10),
1587 e2019GL086749.
- 1588 Small, R. J., Curchitser, E., Hedstrom, K., Kauffman, B., & Large, W. G. (2015).
1589 The benguela upwelling system: Quantifying the sensitivity to resolution and
1590 coastal wind representation in a global climate model. *Journal of Climate*,
1591 28(23), 9409 - 9432. Retrieved from [https://journals.ametsoc.org/view/
1592 journals/clim/28/23/jcli-d-15-0192.1.xml](https://journals.ametsoc.org/view/journals/clim/28/23/jcli-d-15-0192.1.xml) doi: [https://doi.org/10.1175/
1593 JCLI-D-15-0192.1](https://doi.org/10.1175/JCLI-D-15-0192.1)
- 1594 Smeed, D. A., Josey, S. A., Beaulieu, C., Johns, W. E., & amd E. Frajka-Williams.,
1595 B. I. M. (2018). The North Atlantic Ocean is in a state of reduced overturning.
1596 *Geophysical Research Letters*, 45, 1527–1533. doi: 10.1002/2017GL076350
- 1597 Smith, R. L. (1968). Upwelling. *Oceanography and Marine Biology: an Annual Re-
1598 view*, 6, 11–46.
- 1599 Solodoch, A., Stewart, A. L., Hogg, A. M., Morrison, A. K., Kiss, A. E., Thomp-
1600 son, A. F., ... Cimoli, L. (2022). How does Antarctic Bottom Wa-
1601 ter cross the Southern Ocean? *Geophysical Research Letters*, 49. doi:
1602 10.1029/2021gl097211
- 1603 Stewart, A., Klocker, A., & Menemenlis, D. (2018). Circum-Antarctic shoreward
1604 heat transport derived from an eddy- and tide-resolving simulation. *Geophys-
1605 ical Research Letters*, 45. doi: 10.1002/2017GL075677
- 1606 Stewart, A., Klocker, A., & Menemenlis, D. (2019). Acceleration and overturning
1607 of the Antarctic Slope Current by winds, eddies, and tides. *Journal of Physical*

- 1608 *Oceanograph*, 49, 2043–2074. doi: 10.1175/JPO-D-18-0221.1
- 1609 Stommel, H. (1948). The westward intensification of wind-driven ocean cur-
 1610 rents. *EOS, Transactions American Geophysical Union*, 29(2), 202–206.
 1611 doi: 10.1029/TR029i002p00202
- 1612 Strub, P. T., Combes, V., Shillington, F. A., & Pizarro, O. (2013). Currents
 1613 and processes along the eastern boundaries. In G. Siedler, S. M. Griffies,
 1614 J. Gould, & J. Church (Eds.), *Ocean circulation and climate, 2nd edition:
 1615 A 21st century perspective* (Vol. 103, pp. 339–384). Academic Press. doi:
 1616 10.1016/B978-0-12-391851-2.00014-3
- 1617 Sylla, A., Sanchez Gomez, E., Mignot, J., & López-Parages, J. (2022). Impact of
 1618 increased resolution on the representation of the Canary upwelling system in
 1619 climate models. *Geoscientific Model Development*, 15(22), 8245–8267. Re-
 1620 trieved from <https://gmd.copernicus.org/articles/15/8245/2022/> doi:
 1621 10.5194/gmd-15-8245-2022
- 1622 Taboada, F. G., Stock, C. A., Griffies, S. M., Dunne, J., John, J. G., Small, R. J.,
 1623 & Tsujino, H. (2018). Surface winds from atmospheric reanalysis lead to con-
 1624 trasting oceanic forcing and coastal upwelling patterns. *Ocean Modelling*, 133,
 1625 79–111. doi: 10.1016/j.ocemod.2018.11.003
- 1626 Tagklis, F., Bracco, A., Ito, T., & Castelao, R. M. (2020). Submesoscale modulation
 1627 of deep water formation in the Labrador Sea. *Scientific Reports*, 10. doi: 10
 1628 .1038/s41598-020-74345-w
- 1629 Tesdal, J.-E., MacGilchrist, G. A., Beadling, R. L., Griffies, S. M., Krasting, J. P., &
 1630 Durack, P. J. (2023). Revisiting interior water mass responses to surface forc-
 1631 ing changes and the subsequent effects on overturning in the Southern Ocean.
 1632 *Journal of Geophysical Research - Oceans*, 128. doi: 10.1029/2022JC019105
- 1633 Thomas, M. D., Tréguier, A. M., Blanke, B., Deshayes, J., & Voltaire, A. A. (2015).
 1634 A Lagrangian method to isolate the impacts of mixed layer subduction on the
 1635 meridional overturning circulation in a numerical model. *Journal of Climate*,
 1636 28, 7503–7517. doi: 10.1175/JCLI-D-14-00631.1
- 1637 Thompson, A. F., Stewart, A. L., Spence, P., & Heywood, K. J. (2018). The Antarc-
 1638 tic Slope Current in a changing climate. *Reviews of Geophysics*, 56, 741–770.
- 1639 Thompson, K. R., & Demirov, E. (2006). Skewness of sea level variability of the
 1640 world’s oceans. *Journal of Geophysical Research: Oceans*, 111. doi: 10.1029/
 1641 2004JC002839
- 1642 Todd, R. E. (2021). Gulf Stream mean and eddy kinetic energy: Three-dimensional
 1643 estimates from underwater glider observations. *Geophysical Research Letters*,
 1644 48. doi: <https://doi.org/10.1029/2020GL090281>
- 1645 Varela, R., DeCastro, M., Rodriguez-Diaz, L., Dias, J. M., & Gómez-Gesteira, M.
 1646 (2022). Examining the ability of CMIP6 models to reproduce the upwelling
 1647 SST imprint in the Eastern Boundary Upwelling Systems. *Journal of Marine
 1648 Science and Engineering*, 10(12). Retrieved from [https://www.mdpi.com/
 1649 2077-1312/10/12/1970](https://www.mdpi.com/2077-1312/10/12/1970) doi: 10.3390/jmse10121970
- 1650 Verdy, A., & Mazloff, M. R. (2017). A data assimilating model for estimating South-
 1651 ern Ocean biogeochemistry. *Journal of Geophysical Research: Oceans*, 122,
 1652 6968–6988. doi: 10.1002/2016JC012650
- 1653 Waldman, R., & Giordani, H. (2023). Ocean barotropic vorticity balances: theory
 1654 and application to numerical models. *Journal of Advances in Modeling Earth
 1655 Systems*, 15(4), e2022MS003276. doi: 10.1029/2022MS003276
- 1656 Wang, C., Zhang, L., Lee, S.-K., Wu, L., & Mechoso, C. R. (2014). A global per-
 1657 spective on CMIP5 climate model biases. *Nature Climate Change*, 4. doi: 10
 1658 .1038/NCLIMATE2118
- 1659 Wang, H., Legg, S. A., & Hallberg, R. W. (2015). Representations of the Nordic
 1660 Seas overflows and their large scale climate impact in coupled models. *Ocean
 1661 Modelling*, 86, 76–92. doi: 10.1016/j.ocemod.2014.12.005
- 1662 Wang, X., Key, J., Kwok, R., & Zhang, J. (2016). Comparison of Arctic sea ice

- 1663 thickness from satellites, aircraft, and PIOMAS data. *Remote Sensing*, 8(9),
1664 713.
- 1665 Winton, M., Adcroft, A., Dunne, J. P., Held, I. M., Shevliakova, E., Zhao, M., ...
1666 Zhang, R. (2020). Climate sensitivity of GFDL's CM4.0. *Journal of Advances*
1667 *in Modeling the Earth System*, 12. doi: 10.1029/2019MS001838
- 1668 Xu, X., Chassignet, E. P., Firing, Y. L., & Donohue, K. (2020). Antarctic Cir-
1669 cumpolar Current transport through Drake Passage: What can we learn from
1670 comparing high-resolution model results to observations? *Journal of Geophysi-
1671 cal Research: Oceans*, 125. doi: 10.1029/2020jc016365
- 1672 Xu, X., Hurlburt, H., Schmitz Jr, W., Zantopp, R., Fischer, J., & Hogan, P. (2013).
1673 On the currents and transports connected with the Atlantic meridional over-
1674 turning circulation in the subpolar North Atlantic. *Journal of Geophysical*
1675 *Research: Oceans*, 118(1), 502–516. doi: 10.1002/jgrc.20065
- 1676 Yan, X., Zhang, R., & Knutson, T. R. (2018). Underestimated AMOC variability
1677 and implications for AMV and predictability in CMIP models. *Geophysical Re-
1678 search Letters*, 45. doi: 10.1029/2018GL077378
- 1679 Yan, X., Zhang, R., & Knutson, T. R. (2019). A multivariate AMV index and asso-
1680 ciated discrepancies between observed and CMIP5 externally forced amv. *Geo-
1681 physical Research Letters*, 46. doi: 10.1029/2019GL082787
- 1682 Yeager, S. (2015). Topographic coupling of the Atlantic overturning and gyre cir-
1683 culations. *Journal of Physical Oceanography*, 45(5), 1258–1284. doi: 10.1175/
1684 JPO-D-14-0100.1
- 1685 Yeager, S., Castruccio, F., Chang, P., Danabasoglu, G., Maroon, E., Small, J., ...
1686 Zhang, S. (2021). An oversized role for the Labrador Sea in the multidecadal
1687 variability of the Atlantic overturning circulation. *Science Advances*, 7. doi:
1688 10.1126/sciadv.abh3592
- 1689 Zanna, L., Khatiwala, S., Gregory, J., Ison, J., & Heimbach, P. (2019). Global recon-
1690 struction of historical ocean heat storage and transport. *Proceedings of the Na-
1691 tional Academy of Science*. doi: 10.1073/pnas.1808838115
- 1692 Zhang, J., & Rothrock, D. (2003). Modeling global sea ice with a thickness and
1693 enthalpy distribution model in generalized curvilinear coordinates. *Mon. Wea.*
1694 *Rev.*, 131(5), 845–861.
- 1695 Zhang, L., Delworth, T. L., Cooke, W., Goosse, H., Bushuk, M., Morioka, Y., &
1696 Yang, X. (2021). The dependence of internal multidecadal variability in the
1697 Southern Ocean on the ocean background mean state. *Journal of Climate*,
1698 34(3), 1061–1080. doi: 0.1175/JCLI-D-20-0049.1
- 1699 Zhang, L., Delworth, T. L., Cooke, W., & Yang, X. (2019). Natural variability of
1700 Southern Ocean convection as a driver of observed climate trends. *Nature Cli-
1701 mate Change*, 9(1), 59–65.
- 1702 Zhang, R., Delworth, T. L., Rosati, A., Anderson, W. G., Dixon, K. W., Lee, H.-
1703 C., & Zeng, F. (2011). Sensitivity of the North Atlantic Ocean circula-
1704 tion to an abrupt change in the Nordic Sea overflow in a high resolution
1705 global coupled climate model. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, 116. doi:
1706 10.1029/2011JC007240
- 1707 Zhang, R., & Thomas, M. (2021). Horizontal circulation across density surfaces
1708 contributes substantially to the long-term mean northern Atlantic meridional
1709 overturning circulation. *Communications Earth & Environment*, 2. doi:
1710 10.1038/s43247-021-00182-y
- 1711 Zhang, R., & Vallis, G. K. (2007). The role of bottom vortex stretching on the
1712 path of the North Atlantic Western Boundary Current and on the Northern
1713 Recirculation Gyre. *Journal of Physical Oceanography*, 37, 2053–2080. doi:
1714 10.1175/JPO3102.1
- 1715 Zhao, M. (2020). Simulations of atmospheric rivers, their variability, and response to
1716 global warming using GFDL's new high-resolution general circulation model.
1717 *Journal of Climate*, 33, 10287–10303. doi: 10.1175/JCLI-D-20-0241.1

- 1718 Zhao, M., Golaz, J.-C., Held, I. M., Guo, H., Balaji, V., Benson, R., . . . Xiang, B.
1719 (2018a). The GFDL Global Atmosphere and Land Model AM4.0/LM4.0 - Part
1720 II: Model Description, Sensitivity Studies, and Tuning Strategies. *Journal of*
1721 *Advances in Modeling Earth Systems*, 10. doi: 10.1002/2017MS001209
- 1722 Zhao, M., Golaz, J.-C., Held, I. M., Guo, H., Balaji, V., Benson, R., . . . Xiang, B.
1723 (2018b). The GFDL Global Atmosphere and Land Model AM4.0/LM4.0 - Part
1724 I: Simulation Characteristics with Prescribed SSTs. *Journal of Advances in*
1725 *Modeling Earth Systems*, 10. doi: 10.1002/2017MS001208
- 1726 Zou, S., Petit, T., Li, F., & Lozier, M. S. (2024, April). Observation-based es-
1727 timates of water mass transformation and formation in the Labrador Sea.
1728 *Journal of Physical Oceanography*, -1(aop). Retrieved 2024-04-28, from
1729 <https://journals.ametsoc.org/view/journals/phoc/aop/JPO-D-23-0235>
1730 [.1/JPO-D-23-0235.1.xml](https://journals.ametsoc.org/view/journals/phoc/aop/JPO-D-23-0235.1.xml) (Publisher: American Meteorological Society
1731 Section: Journal of Physical Oceanography) doi: 10.1175/JPO-D-23-0235.1